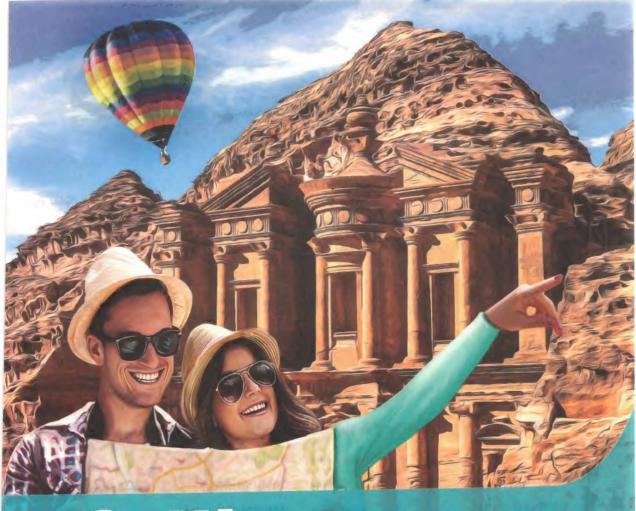




· Contents ·

Unit a	Getting away	7
U	Al-Adwaa Test 1	51
	Supporting the community	54
Unit 2	Al-Adwaa Test 2	94
	Units 1&2 Al-Adwaa Test	
Unit @	Improving lives	100
3	Al-Adwaa Test 3	139
25.00	Making new friends	142
Unit 4	Al-Adwaa Test 4	186
	Units 3&4 Al-Adwaa Test	189
Unit 👝	Communication	192
5	Al-Adwaa Test 5	230
Unit	Learning from literature	233
6	Al-Adwaa Test 6	270
Treasure Is	sland	
Chapter 1		274
Chapter 3		278
Chapter 4		280
Chapter 5	,	282
Chapter 6		284
	Exercises	
Advanced General	Exercises Answers	299



Getting away

Unit 1

Objectives

Reading : An article about ecotourism; two blogs about the summer holidays

Writing : An essay on ecotourism

Listening: A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong

Speaking : Describe an event

Language: Past simple and past continuous

Life Skills : Collaboration



استفيد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقــمى



Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

conservationist (n)	الشخص المحافظ على البيلة
ecotourism (n)	السياحة البيئية
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض/معرض للخطر
environment (n)	البيئة
impact (n)	تأثير
isolated (adj)	معزول
lean (v) – ed	يميل/يتكأ

materials (n)	مواد (خام)
spicy (adj)	حريف/حار المذاق
sustainable (adj)	مستدام
swell up (v) - ed	يتورم
trek (v) – ked (n)	يترجل/رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام
unique (adj)	مميز/فريد من نوعه

Write the word for several times to memorise it.



لقراءة نصوص الاستهاع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

alone (adj) (adv)	وحيد/وحيدًا	design (v) – ed (n)	يصمم/تصميم
along (adv)	بمحاذاة	destination (n)	جهة الوصول/وجهة السفر
annoyed (adj)	مضجر/منزعج	develop (v) – ed	ینمی/یطور
avoid (v) – ed	يتجنب	disaster (n)	كارثة
beach (n)	شاطئ (بلاج)	dive (v) - d	يغطس
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	dragon (n)	تنین (حیوان أسطوری)
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	drop (v) – ped	يكسقط
bite (v)	يلدغ	ecosystem (n)	" نظام بیئی
book (v) – ed	يحجز	educate (v) – d	يعلم/يدرس
centre (n)	مركز	exist (v) – ed	يوجد/يتواجد/يعيش
coast (n)	ساحل	feed (v)	يطعم
cook (n)	طباخ	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية	fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء في الأكل
damage (v) – d (n)	يتلف/تلف/ضرر	giant (adj) (n)	عملاق

guide (n)	مرشد (سیاحی)	properly (adv)	بشكل مناسب
hill (n)	تل/هضبة	protect (v) - ed	يحمى
including (prep)	مشتملًا على	provide (v) – d	يمد/يزود
insects (n)	حشرات	rainforests (n)	الغابات المطيرة
internal flight (n)	رحلة طيران داخلية	rebuild (v)	يعيد بناء
island (n)	جزيرة	remote (adj)	بتقن
lemur (n)	الليمور (حيوان يشبه القرود)	safe (adj)	آمن
limited (adj)	مُغَيَّد/محدود	sound (v) – ed	يبدو
local (adj) (n)	محلى/أحد السكان المحليين	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
luggage (n)	أمتعة السفر	spider (n)	عنكبوت
mainly (adv)	بشكل رئيسى/أساسي	summarise (v) – d	يلخص
natural (adj)	طبيعى	teach (v)	يندرس
observe (v) – d	يراقب/يرصد	tourism (n)	سياحة
orangutan (n)	إنسان الغاب	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
path (n)	مسار/ممر/طريق	volunteer (n) (v) – ed	متطوع/يتطوع
pet (n)	حيوان أليف	wall (n)	سور/حائط
pink (adj)	وردى اللون	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
Workbook Vo	ocabulary		
activity (n)	نشاط	plaza (n)	ميدان/ساحة
advantages (n)	مزايا	population (n)	السكان/التعداد السكاني
attractions (n)	عوامل/مناطق جذب (سیاحی)	repeat (v) – ed	يكرر/يعيد
carnival (n)	مهرجان/كرنفال	residents (n)	سكان/مقيمون
council (n)	مجلس	special (adj)	خاص/مخصوص
cruise ships (n)	سفن رحلات سياحية	sunbathe (v) – d	يأخذ حمام شمس
effect (n)	تأثير	type (n)	نوع/نمط

victim (n)

encourage (v) – d

Vocabulary Check point

 Our teache 	r is so friendly and alv	ways gives us a	treatment.
a) cruel			
2 I was so pro			
in Egypt.			
a) tiny	b) ordinary	c) trivial	d) giant
c) Wildlife			
His style in	playing football is so		him.
c) adaptable	9		
There are a	lot of of usin		
			d) tourists
It is a fact th			tourists
a) exist		b) vanish	
c) sit		d) depart	
is t	he natural world arou	nd us in which people,	animals and plants live.
		b) Conservation	
c) Coral reef		d) Destination	
A/An	is someone who wo	orks to protect animals,	plants, etc. or to protect
a) ecotourist		b) tourist	
c) conservati	onist	d) local	
The explorer	s spent the day	through forests and	over mountains.
a) diving			
c) developing	g	d) racing	
Your injured	foot won'tu		
a) swallow	b) swell	c) limit	d) get
Limit 7			
	a) cruel I was so pro in Egypt. a) tiny a) Ecosyster c) Wildlife His style in a) common c) adaptable There are a a) bites It is a fact th a) exist c) sit a) Environm c) Coral reef A/An old building a) ecotourist c) conservati The explorer a) diving c) developing Your injured a) swallow	a) cruel b) boring I was so proud to be part of this in Egypt. a) tiny b) ordinary is the business of organ a) Ecosystem c) Wildlife His style in playing football is so a) common c) adaptable There are a lot of of usin a) bites b) activities It is a fact that fish can't a) exist c) sit is the natural world arou a) Environment c) Coral reef A/An is someone who woold buildings. a) ecotourist c) conservationist The explorers spent the day a) diving c) developing Your injured foot won't ua) swallow b) swell	I was so proud to be part of this project that with in Egypt. a) tiny b) ordinary c) trivial is the business of organising holidays to natural a) Ecosystem b) Tourism c) Wildlife d) Ecotourism His style in playing football is so No one is like a) common b) unique c) adaptable d) isolated There are a lot of of using the internet. a) bites b) activities c) advantages It is a fact that fish can't out of water. a) exist b) vanish c) sit d) depart is the natural world around us in which people, a) Environment b) Conservation c) Coral reef d) Destination A/An is someone who works to protect animals, old buildings. a) ecotourist b) tourist c) conservationist d) local The explorers spent the day through forests and a) diving b) trekking c) developing d) racing Your injured foot won't up if you put ice on it. a) swallow b) swell c) limit

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at least	على الأقل	go diving	يغطس
blow off	يـُطير (شيئًا)	go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة
catch a flight to	يركب طائرة إلى	impact on = effect on	تأثير على
disappear from	يختفي من	important for/to	مهم لـ
do damage to	یسبب ضررًا لـ	introduce to	يقدم ك
do something different نلف	يقوم بعمل شيء مخة	keep as	يحتفظ ب ک
educate about	يعلم عن	keep safe	يبقى آمنا
environmentally friendly محافظ على البيئة/صديق للبيئة		leaning out of	يميل إلى الخارج من
famous for	مشھور ب	make a meal (dinner)	يجهز وجبة
feed on	يتغذى على	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
find out about	يعرف/يكتشف عن	make sure	يتأكد
for example	على سبيل المثال	manage to	يتمكن من
from all around the world	من كل أنحاء العالم	popular with	معروف/مشهور بـ
get back	يستعيد/يعود	protect from/against	يحمى من
get to	يصل إلي	stay in	يېقى فى
give to	يعطى إلى	take (time) to	يأخذ وقتا لكى
go back to	يعود إلى	trek into	يترجل إلى/يشق طريقه بم

Derivatives

Vei	rb	Nou	n	Adjecti	ve
conserve	يحفظ	conservationism conservationist بيئة	الحفاظ على البيئة الشخص المحافظ على ال	conservative للتغيير	محافظ/مقاوم
design	يصمم	design designer	تصمیم مُصَمُّم	designed	مُصَمَّم
develop	يطور/ينمي	development developer	تطوير/تنمية مطور	developed/dev	eloping/ متطور/نامِ
educate	يعلم	education educator	تعلیم معلم	educational educated	تعلیمی متعلم

When I go to the desert, I like to trek into the mountains.

endanger	يعرض للخطر	endangerment	التعريض للخطر	endangere	معرض للانقراض d
	-	environment environmentalist	بيئة مناصر لحماية البيا	environme	ntal بيئى
isolate	يعزل	isolation	عزل	isolated	معزول
limit	يحد	limit	حد	limited	محدود
protect*	يحمى	protection protector	حماية/وقاية واقِ	protective	واق
spice	يتبل	spice	توابل/بهارات	spicy	حريف/حار المذاق
sustain	يحافظ على	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
swell	يتورم	swelling	تورم	swollen	متورم
volunteer	يتطوع	voluntourist/voluntee	متطوع r العمل التطوعي	voluntary	تطوعي

⁻ We should protect our country to stay strong.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

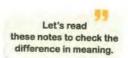
Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
avoid *	يتجنب	avert/stay away from	face/seek يواجه
develop	يطور	promote/progress/ flourish/prosper	decline/decrease يتدهور/يقل
exist	يوجد/يتواجد/يعيش	remain/stay	vanish/depart يختفي/يرحل
famous	مشهور	well-known/celebrated	غیر معروف/عادی unknown/ordinary
fortunate	لحسن الحظ الع	luckily/happily	unfortunately/unluckily
giant	عملاق	colossal/gigantic	tiny/minute ضئيل الحجم
limited	محدود	restricted/definite	unrestricted/unlimited مطلق/بلا قيود
natural	طبيعي	normal/ordinary	abnormal/unnatural غير عادي
remote	بعيد	distant/faraway	near/close قريب
sustainab	مستدام le	continual/lasting/permanent	temporary/unsustainable مؤقت
unique 4	مميز/فريد من نوع	exceptional/special	normal/ordinary عادى

⁻ The country needs our protection to stay strong.
- We should think of all the protective methods for our country.

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	My mother is th	ne best one to	meals for us. She	is my favourite cook.	
•	a) have		b) eat		
	c) repair		d) make		
2		e growth is the only	solution. The antony	m of the word	
2	"sustainable" is		•		
	a) lasting	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	b) permanent		
	c) temporary		d) continual		
2		k early as there are		mber of tickets available.	
3	a) unlimited	in carry as an energy	b) great		
	c) limited		d) huge		
А		etting on a/an	bus as I always su	ffocate اختنق.	
7	a) modern	ctang on a an an	b) crowded		
	c)empty		d) sustainable		
5		ry friendly	sport. I like it very mu	ch.	
-	a) touristic		b) environmentalist		
	b) environmen	ntal	d) environmentally		
6			w York to attend the c	onference.	
	a) catch		c) ride	d) get off	
7		ntroduce you	the manager.		
	a) for	b) at	c) to	d) in	
8	We don't usua	ally go to this mall	because it's remote. T	he antonym of the word	
	"remote" is				
	a) far	b) distant	c) close	d) nearly	
9	It will take you	u at 20 mir	nutes to get there.		
	a) less	b) lest	c) least	d) most	
10	Hassan	a note of the do	ctor's address and pho	one number.	
	a) signed	b) did	c) had	d) made	

Notes on Vocabulary



	beach	البـــلاج (الجـــزء الرملـــى عنـد حافـة البحـر)	, was an early crowded	
1	shore	شاطئ البحر أو البحيرة	The boat was about a mile from the shore when the engine suddenly stopped.	
	coast	ساحـــــل	Marina is located on the North Coast of Egypt.	
	bank	ضفة النهــر أو القنــاة	They walked home along the river bank.	
		يشمل/يتضمن (بعض المكونا المكونات - يأتى قبلها الكل و	The room price includes breakfast.	
2	يحتوى على شيء بداخله contain		The thieves stole a purse containing banknotes.	
	consist of يتكون من (كل المكونات الأساسية)		The buffet consisted of several different Indian dishes.	
	teach	يعلم (شخصنًا/شيئًا)	Mr. Redateaches us English.	
3	learn	يتعلم شيئًا	My son has learnt many languages abroad.	
	teach/learn (how) to + inf.		I have taught my children (how) to play the piano. My children learnt (how) to play the piano.	
	arrive at	يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة يصل إلى مكان صغير/محدد	 Hearrived in Alexandria yesterday. Hearrived at Alexandria airport yesterday. 	
4	reach + ol	bject يصل إلى (بدون حرث جر)	He reached the airport early yesterday.	
	get to کبیر).	يصـــل إلى (مكــان صغير أو	They got to Cairo yesterday.	

endangered (adj.) مهدد بالانقراض/معرض للخطر	Many rare animals are endangered nowadays.
فى خطر in danger	Many animals are in danger nowadays.
endanger (v) يعرض للخطر	Smoking endangers our health.
sound (v) + adjective يبنو = appear/seem + adjective	He sounds/appears/seems happy today.
مو <i>ت ا</i> ضجة <i>ا</i> حس sound (n)	I tried to open the door without sound as my father was asleep.
sound (adj.) سليم/معقول	 - I was happy to see that my mother was in a sound state of health. - He always gives me some sound advice.
drop + object - یسقط او یرمی شیئا - یخفض	 While I was walking, I dropped my mobile. The government should drop the prices. Can you drop me off here, please?
- ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات - ينسقط من قائمة/يحنف	- It was not good to drop my name from the guest list.
لا يأتي بعدها مفعول (يقع/يسقط) fall	While I was walking, I fell and broke my leg.
In the end, = Finally, في النهاية/أخيرًا (بعد طول انتظار)	In the end, the problem was solved by our great teacher.
At the end of + noun, في نماية شيء	At the end of the lesson, the teacher asked us some questions.
By the end of + noun, قبل نماية شيء	By the end of the year, we will have finished our study.
everyday + noun صفة بمعنى يومى (كلمة واحدة)	
every day فرف بمعنی کل یوم (کلمتین منفصلتین)	Students go to school every day except for Fridays.

alone (adj) (adv) He carried the luggage alone. بمفرده/منفردًا (صفة/ظرف). lonely (adj) Despite his friends, he feels lonely. وحيدًا (يشعر بالوحدة) (صفة). The lone survivor of the accident told us what lone happend. The area is extremely isolated because of the hills isolated منعزل/معزول that surround it. insulated Houses in very hot or cold areas should be well معزول (حراريـًا/عن الكهرباء) insulated.

Vocabulary Check point 3

1	Many tourists li	ke to buyw	hen they come to Egy	pt.
	a) souvenirs	b) awards	c) rewards	d) prices
2	Some rare spec	of animals aı فصائل	re	protect them.
	a) dangerous	b) in dangerous	c) endangered	d) danger
3	Take care of you	ur mobile not to	it on the floor.	,
	a) fall	b) drop	c) block	d) fill
4	Although I live	with my family, some	times I feel	-,
	a) a lone	b) only	c) lonely	d) crowded
5	My friends lives	in a/an villa	ge deep in the countr	vside.
	a) isolated	b) insulated	c) created	d) limited
6	The list of the pi	layers doesn't	my name. I am so d	isappointed.
	a) conclude	b) include	c) consist	d) consist of
7	Who can forget	what Mr Talaat	us throughout his	life?
	a) taught	b) learnt	c) taught how	d) learnt how
8	Fortunately, we	the train sta	tion in time to catch o	our train to Luxor
	a) arrived in	b) reached to	c) got to	d) arrived
9	Students should	be exposed to	English language	e not only the formal
	one.			
	a) every day	b) all days	c) everyday	d) each day
10	About 100 perso	ons attended my lecti	ure some vol	ına children
	a) containing	b) consisting	c) concluding	d) including



Vocabulary General Exercises

100	36 (114 6011 641 1411	.i fo	ad	
1	Children cry when	they eat for	ou.	d) along
	a) sweet	b) spicy	c) good	u) along
2	When I go to Shari	b) spicy m, I like tod	living every day.	d) take
	a) do	b) play	c) go	d) take
3	met and the continue of	lie an antonym for		(Longman)
		bluncommon	c) normal	d) abnormal
4	4-4	made of mater	ials. We mustn't pollu	te ont environment.
	a) friendly environ	mentally	b) environmentally d) non-environmer	triendly
	c) unfriendly enviro	onmentally	d) non-environmer	ntally friendly
5	We all know that s	staving up late has a	very bad	Odi Ilcalalii
	a) affect	h) effect	c) impact	a) Dac
6	Whata	ontribution for Dr. M	agdi Yacoub in the fi	eld of neart surgery:
	a) familiar	b) unique	c) dark	a) greedy
7	Lam very good at	studying living thing	gs so it would be wor	nderful to be
	2/20			
	a) hiologist	b) geologist	c) archaeologist	d) botanist
g	Mham Larriyad ba	me with my friend A	Ali. I him to n	ny family.
	a) produced	h) presented	c) concluded	a) Introduced
	We should all wo	rk together in order	not to our er	hylronment.
5	a) predict	h) endanger	c) protect	d) lean
4	a) predict	the eco	system everywhere.	1 100 1 11
	-) protect	h) reflect	c) defect	a) Suspect
	a) protect	e the of the	Red Sea which are so	amazing.
	a) caral roofs	h) colour reets	c) coral beels	u) moral recis
		t- aliminato tho	of oil on the	environment mit 10
	h #	h) cafaty	c) respect	a) development
	a) impact	ent for all of us to fine	solutions fo	or the problems of our
1		int for an or as to min		
	country.	h) tarrible	c) insulated	d) leaning
	a) sustainable	of the new inh is	having a respectable	salary with many
1	4 One of the	Of the new job is	That in g a coop of the	
	other benefits.	h) materials	c) productions	d) attractions
	a) disadvantages	b) materials	for most to	ourists who visit Egypt.
•	15 Luxor and Aswa	h conservation	c) location	d) destination
	a) destiny	D) Conservation	C/ TOCOLIOTT	

1	6ar	e protesting تجون	against the يد	plan to destroy p	part of the rainforests.
	a) Conversa	llions Di Conse	rvationists	Conservations	d) Ecotorinists
1	A Me Suonid	encourage child	ren to play w	ith toys made of	environmentally
	menuly hat	ural			
	a) issues	b) ingred	ients	c) materials	d) matters
1	8 Me	eans travelling to	o natural area	as with the respon	nsibility of conserving
	the environ	ment.			islamicy of conserving
	a) Ecosyster			b) Ecotourism	
	c) Biodiversi	ty		d) Medical tourism	1
19	9 My daughte	er's eyes	up as a result	of her long cry af	er her difficult over
	ar syvelled	Swallov	ved	C) extended	d) rofeach = d
20	Sinai is full o	of mountains and	d hills where	you can go	cafoly
	a) aiving	b) trekkind	0	c) developing	d) racing
2	Scientists th	ink that pollution	n has some b	ad effects on the	balance of our
	a) ecotourisi	m b) econor	nv	ecotourist	Dalarice of our
22	2 I was climbii	ng to the top of	a hill when th	e wind blew my l	u) ecosystem
	a) on	b) of		off	d) out
23	Every one of	us should try ha	ard to	something diffe	u) out
	a) make	D) (O		- had	erent in their life.
24	Experts always	ys try to ensure	that tourism	ie	u) invent
	a) temporary	b) sustaina	able () recyclable	d) nonrenewable
25	In the past, v	vomen used to d	to the washir	ng up on the	u) nonrenewable
	a) shore	b) beach	o the washii	coast	or the canal.
Ch	oose the Two	correct answe	rs of the Five	ontions	u) Dank
26	Be carefull T	he forest is full	of ainst and	options.	
	word "giant"	are	or grant snak	es and spiders. T	he synonyms of the
	a) tiny	h) minute	c) cmall		îc e) colossal
27	The teacher i	intended to hele	C/SITIALI	a) gigant	ic e) colossal
	of the word "	avoid" are	students av	old common mist	takes. The antonyms
	a) seek	b) deliver	c) foco	.45 4	
28	It is a unique	achievement as	c) race	d) depart	e) decrease
	before. The sy	nonyme of the	no one nas e	ver won the chan "are	npionship five times
	a) close	b) normal	word unique	are	
29			c) exceptio	nal d) special	e) restricted
	"remote" are .	i ciastica ili a le	mote desert	area. The antonyr	ns of the word
	a) abnormal	b) temporary	Chinknow	d) close	
30	the	police caught th	e seller who	cried to cheat the	e) near
	a) At the end	b) Finally	C) Endless	ined to cheat the	ly e) In the end
			C. E. 101633	U) Enaless	e) in the end
18	Elent T				



زمن الماضي البسيط

The past simple tense is used to talk about actions completed in certain time in the past. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث اكتملت في وقت محدد في الماضي.



Affirmative

التصريف الثاني للفعل - Subject

•I/He/They attended the party yesterday.

Negative

Subject didn't inf.

•I/He/They didn't attend the party yesterday.

Wh-word did subject inf.?

Question

·What didyou attendyesterday?

Did subject inf.? • Did he attend the party yesterday?

Passive

Object was/were P.P.

•The party was attended yesterday.

USAGE رواستغنام

For completed actions in the past: She studied all her lessons yesterday. أحداث اكتملت في الماضي.

أحداث متكررة أو عادات في الماضي. For repeated actions or habits in the past: When he was in Alexandria, he went to the beach every day.

For retelling situations or stories:

سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الملضي.

Yesterday, I went out to the café, then I ordered a cup of coffee.

Key words

yesterday	أمس	in the ancient times	فى العصور القديمة
from (2000 to 2006)		once upon a time	كان ياماكان (ذات مرة)
How long ago?		the other day	منذ فترة قريبة/تلك الليلة
ago		last	السابق
just now	تؤا/حالًا	in the past	في الماضي
once		in + (2010)	فی عام (۲۰۱۰)

late my food ten minutes ago.



Important Notes

Subject + used to + inf.

اعتاد على فعل الشيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الأن.

He used to smoke a lot, but now he doesn't.

o Subject + no longer + present simple مضارع بسيط

لم يعد

He no longer smokes a lot.

Subject + negative form + any longer/anymore

لم يعدامرة أخرى

He doesn't smoke a lot any longer/anymore.

O lt was + (someone's/صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf.

لقد كانت عادة شخص ...

it was his habit to smoke a lot.

Subject + (was/were) + in the habit of + (v-ing)

كانت لدى ... عادة ...

He was in the habit of smoking a lot.

Subject + got into the habit of + (v-ing)

لقد انخرط في عادة الـ ...

He got into the habit of smoking a lot.

Subject + (was/were/got) + used to + (v-ing)

كان معتادًا على ...

He was/got used to smoking a lot.



لم يكن معتادًا على فعل شيء ولكنه يفعله الآن.

He didn't use to get up early.

Subject + never used to + inf.

يمكن استخدام <u>never للتعبير</u> عن النفى في الماضي البسيط

He never used to sleep early. He never slept early when he was young.

(am/is/are)

معتاد على عمل شيء. (للتعبير عن عادة في الحاضر)

- تأتي Used بمعنى «يستخدم لـ» (في المبنى للمجهول).

used to + (v-ing) OR (Noun) OR (Pronoun) (get) Subject + (become)

She (is/gets/becomes) used to cleaning her house alone. I am used to the noise in my street. It is very cold here, but I am used to it.



Object + (be)

used to + inf.

used for + (v-ing)

The camera is used to take photographs. The camera is used for taking photographs.

- صيغة السؤال في used to

Did + subj. + use to + inf.?

Did you use to sleep early?

Question word + did + subj. + use to + inf.?

Where did you use to live when you were young?

لا تستخدم Used to عند تحديد وقت للحدث،

lused to visit my uncle last week. (x)

I visited my uncle last week.

(1)

(always/ usually/ often ...) + past simple يمكن استخدام ظروف التكرار مع الماضي البسيط

I always went to school early when I was a student.

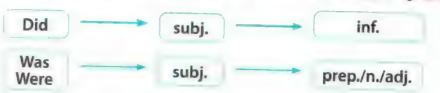
- تستخدم didn't لنفي الفعل ويأتي بعدها الـ .inf أما مع الاسم/الصفة/حرف الجر فنستخدم wasn't/weren't



I didn't sleep well yesterday.

We weren't tired, so we played again.

- نستخدم did في السؤال ومعها الـ inf، أما عند السؤال عن اسم/صفة/حرف جر فنستخدم was/were.



Was your husband ill last week?

Did he study his lessons yesterday?



- 1 Randa a call from her friend yesterday.
 a) receives
 b) is received
- - a) since
 - c) in d) for
- 3 Ayman read an interesting book
 - a) yet b) now
 - c) ago d) the other day
- 4 | on a picnic with my family two days ago.
 - a) go b) goes c) went d) was d
- 5 Kareem always first at school when he was young.
 - a) comes b) come
 - c) came d) was coming

The past continuous tense is used to talk about actions in progress in a specific time in the past.

يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث كانت مستمرة في فترة محددة في الماضي.



I/He/She/It + was + v-ing

He was playing games all day yesterday.

Affirmative They/We/You + were + v-ing

They were playing games all day yesterday.

I/He/She/It + wasn't + v-ing

I wasn't playing games all day yesterday.

Negative They/We/You + weren't + v-ing

They weren't playing games all day yesterday.

Was/Were + subject + v-ing?

Was Samy playing games all day yesterday?

 Were you playing games all day yesterday? Interrogative

Wh-word + was/were + subject + v-ing?

• Where were you playing yesterday?

Object + was/were + being + P.P. **Passive**

· Games were being played all day yesterday.

USAGE (Baland)

To show that an action was in progress at a certain time.

حدث كان مستمرًّا في وقت محدد.

At 6 o'clock yesterday, I was looking at the orangutans.

To show that a shorter action happened during another longer حدث كان مستمرًا وقطعه حدث آخر. action. (with the past simple)

I was leaning out of the boat when I dropped my camera.





Language General Exercises

DOSC the Lotter		and the second second	
1 While we	lunch, my cousin s	uddenly arrived.	d) had
a) having	b) are having	c) were naving	a) nau
2 My father trav	relled to London	2005.	A) aim so
a) while	b) when	c) in	d) since
3 I was having r	my lunch when the pho	ne	85
a) ring	h) had rung	c) was rung	d) rang
	to: Latter while his	hrothers VIGE	o games.
a) was playing	b) played	c) were playing	are playing
5 The Second V	Vorid War Iron	1 1737 10 1777.	
tast lliw /c	b) has lasted	c) had lasted	d) lasted
6 My brother	hic lossons whe	n he heard a cry in the :	street.
14 1	1. V atural dina	C) Was studying	d) had studied
= Mile levent	to my friend's house he	his room and as	sked me to neip nim.
a) painted	b) had painted	c) is painting	d) was painting
0 14/hat	when the lights went	t out last night?	
1	doing b) were you doing	a c) are you doing	d) have you done
a I aminus dispe	sing the view of the Nile	while the plane	****** *
a) lands	b) landed	c) is landing	d) was landing
10 From 10 to 1	2 last Friday, an import	ant match	
a) was watch	ning	b) had watchedd) was being watch	
	ned	d) was being watch	hed
	to stay up late at ni	ight, but now he goes t	o bed at 2 a.m.
a) didn't use	b) used	c) isn t used	d) wasn't used
12 Did your mo	other to cook th	ne tood well?	
, al	h) ucina	CIUSE	d) uses
13 While I	, a child suddenly ra	an in front of my car. Lu	ckily, he was not
injured.			(Eoriginal)
a) driving	b) drove	c) was driving	d) am driving
14 My son	watch Egyptian m	ovies, but now he does	
a) used to	b) didn't use to	c) wasn't used to	d) used to not
15 While I was	watching TV, my wife	our lunch.	1.
a) was cook	ed b) cooks	c) is cooking	d) was cooking
16 Just as Nab	il was running, he	to the ground.	D E-11
a) falls	b) fell	c) was falling	d) fall

17 When	Rana cam	e home, her sister	the dishes	
d) was	washed	b) is washing	C) Was Washing	d) bas corel
18 My fat	her	at 5 o'clock yester	rday	ar nas washed
a) was	slept	(1) sleening	5) 14100 -1	ا ا ا ا ا
19 Did yo	u see that	? The carby	the heliconter	a) had slept
a) was	chasing	D)	b) was being above	
	be chased		b) was being chase d) has been chase	ea
	I was do	ing my homework	my brother was playin	d
a) Befo	re	b) After	my brother was playin	g computer games.
21	lunch at	home yesterday?	c) During	d) While
a) Were	2 VOLL	h Did you have	- \ \ \	
22 My und	-le	as a shop assists and	c) You had	d) Do you have
a facto	rv	as a snop assistant	for ten years only. No	w, he is a worker in
- 100	· y .			
23 Nora	las	or ridu worked	c) worked	d) works
a) 11010	lly sloops	e when she was you	ng. She no longer doe	s now.
uj usua	ily sieeps		h) is used to clooning	20
C) used	to sleep		d) is usually sloopin	g
24 I Decall	ie used	up in the earl	v morning	
a) get		b) to get	c) to gotting	d) to be got
1 100	3ave	money, Now, he doe	es as he wants to hours	
a, useu	10	O) GIGNT USE to	C) LISOS to	all to the state of the state o
EO //II	III Jac	idi Arabia tor a long	time and made a let a	£
MI AAOIKI	eu	101 Has Worked	CI WAS WORKING	d)
er rouser.	51	eeps early as he	to when he was y	Olina
a) Hevel	7 is used		b) no way / was use	d
c) no lo	nger / used		b) no way / was use d) any longer / was	used
28 Solymai	n didn't us	e to sleep early. This	means	
a) he sie	eps early r	NOW	hi he doorn't clean	early now
c) he ne	ver sleeps.	now	d) he is slooning no	
9 I Mas Cal	ang my lui	ich when my father	rang the doorbell. This	moans that in it
	ppciico	****************	and door Dell, ITHS	means that ringing
a) after r	ny lunch		b) during my lunch	
c) before	my lunch		di as soon as mulum	ch finished
0 Which o	ne of the f	ollowing sentences	d) as soon as my lun	
a) She di	ant met h	er friends vesterday	h) He didn't get my	ann ail le at
c) lused	to going to	the club on Fridays	d) We didn't go out l	email last week.
1 Which of	the follow	ving isn't grammatic	ally correct?	ast night.
a) Did yo	u use to sle	ep early?	any correct!	
b) I was v	vatching th	ne match when you	Talled	
c) Did yo	u liked my	present?	Lanca.	
d) I used	to study m	y lessons at night.		
		, iessons at mynt.		
Crimit 1				

Vocabulary	المناسبة المسام على المسام على المسام على المسام على المسام	y and we think that	it is the main reason
The world	has increased rapidly	y and we timk that	TO IS CITE THE TOTAL
for many proble	ms.	- I manufaction	d) neonles
a) residents	b) development	c) population	a) peoples
There were a lot	of as a result o	if the terrible accide	ent on the highway.
A compared to the same section	havictims	c) criminais	a) supporters
Because of COV	ID-19, many people wer	en nospi	lais and their nomes.
alinsulated	b) limited	c) excited	u) isolated
My little brothe	r is aeater. He o	doesn't eat many th	ings.
alvolunteer	h) protected	c) tussy	u) gleedy
- We should prot	ect the natural environr	nent the R	ed Sea coast.
ala long	b) long	c) along	d) as long
a) a long	to interfere in the	of ot شئون affairs	her countries.
9 Me dout man	b) inside	c) internal	d) privacy
a) personner	p early if you want to	vour flight to	o London.
		c) catch	d) drop
a) miss	technology on the new	system of education	on is very clear
	r technology of the new	3936611101000000	
nowadays.	1	clerach	d) destination
a) impact	b) affection		
	ke sure that tourism in	Egypt is	our economy was
affected badly		, 9 - d	d) custainable
a) insulated	b) isolated	c) spoiled	une fantastici
10 We fo	or a week through the ra	inforest last year. It	Was lalitastic:
a) tracklead	h) relaxed	c) leant	a) Introduced
44 Thorowas a m	eeting of local	to discuss ways or	protecting animals.
altourists	b) conservationists	c) receptionists	a) Clerks
12 Lused to live in	n a small fishing village	on the of t	ne Red Sea.
-\ -aast	h) cliff	c) bank	a) leel
42 During our ho	oliday in Sharm El-Sheikl	n, we divin	g many times in the
Red Sea.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
a) played	b) went	c) did	d) had
applayed			

14 It is known th	nat a/an mind	is in a healthy body.	
a) sound	b) voice	c) noisy	d) angry
15 The lesson	me two hours	to finish.	angry
a) makes	b) takes	c) spends	d) lasta
Language		c) spends	d) lasts
16 While my son	was trying to catch th	ne bus, he hi	s nhone
a) was droppi	ng b) dropped	() has dropped	طا المام المام
17 Our lunch	while I was doin	a my school homew	was dropped
a) was prepar	ing	b) is prepared	JIK.
was being p	prepared	d) has been pror	azrod
18 While I was di	riving along this morn	ing. I about	what they be dead
a) was thinkin	g b) thought	c) had thought	what they had said.
is thevel	to play any musical	instrument as a shill	
a) was learned	b) learnt	c) have learnt	d)
20 While	dinner, a stranger kn	ocked on the door of	was learning
a) am having	b) having	c) I was baying	my flat by mistake.
21 What	at 10 p.m. yesterday?	c) I was flaving	a) had
a) were you do		b) are you doing	
	ne	d) had you doing	
22 My father alwa	ays to work by	train when he	
al has gone	b) was going	y train when he was y	oung.
23 I no longer slee	ep late as Iwi	on Lymp still -	d) is going
a) am used	b) am used to	ien i was still a young	man.
24 1 as a 1	translator for 10 years.	Now The	d) used to
a) had worked	b) work	Now, I have my own	company.
25 They	TV together all day yes	c) was worked	d) worked
a) were watchir	TV together all day yes	terday as they finishe	ed their work.
26 He to:	ng b) have watched the beach when he wa	c) had watched	d) are watching
a) is used to go	ing b) was going	as younger.	
27 My sister	ing b) was going	c) always goes	d) usually went
a) was finding	a gold ring while sl		
		c) found	d) used to find
a) was taken	orison as a result of his		
	b) took	c) was taking	d) had taken
a) visit	our grandfather v	vnen we were on holi	
	yesterday, so I cal	c) visiting	d) visited
a) stole	b) was stolen	c) steals	10.0
	-/ ************************************	r) steats	d) is stolen
exfest 1			



Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

active (adj)	نشيط	modern (adj)*	حدیث/عصری
ancient (adj)	قديم (أثرى)	new (adj)	ختتخ
beautiful (adj)	جميل	noisy (adj)	مزعج
boring (adj)	ممل	old (adj)	قديم
busy (adj)	مزدحم/مشغول	peaceful (adj)	هادئ/آمن/سِلْمي
calm (adj)	هادئ	quiet(adj) (n)	هادئ/هدوء
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	relax (v) – ed	یسترخی/یستریح
exotic (adj)	غريب	relaxing (adj)	مريح





لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قدم بمسخ الصورة عنى هاتفك



Vocabulary on Reading Texts

,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
actually (adv)	في الواقع	glad (adj)	ساليك
amazing (adj)	مدهش	grow (v)	يزرع
away (adv)	Luce	hobby (n)	هواية
awful (adj)	فظيع	lettuce (n)	نبات الخس
balcony (n)	بلكونة	resort (n)	منتجع
brilliant (adj)	راثع	steal (v)	يسرق
castle (n)	قلعة	teenager (n)	مراهق
cheap (adj)	رخيص	temple (n)	معند
cry (v) (y-ied)	يبكى	tiny (adj)	صغير الحجم (ضليل)
expect (v) – ed	يتوقع	try(v) (y-ied)	يحاول/يجرب
fascinating (adj)	ساحر/خلاب	underwater (adj) (adv)	تحت الماء
gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة	weather	الطقس

Workbook Vocabulary

break (n) مُسحة/نزهة paradise (n)	adventure (n)	مغامرة	on board (adv)	على متن (سفينة أو طائرة)
distance (n)	break (n)	فسحة/نزهة	paradise (n)	حنة
منفوط/محهد stressed (adj)	distance (n)	مسافة	stressed (adj)	مضغوط/مجهد
eco-trip (n)	eco-trip (n)	رحلة ميدانية بيثية	support (n) (v) - ed	معم/مدعم
explore (v) – d	explore (v) – d	يستكشف	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Vocabulary Check point

		,,		
,30 d	1 For me, watch	ing a match alone is	very	his very much
	a) relaxed	b) relaxing	c) noisy	
1	2 I took my stud	ents on a trip to Cai	ro and they enjoyed y	risiting thebuilt
l.	by Salah Eldee	n.	and only enjoyed v	isiding the Dulit
	a) museum		c) castle	d) bridge
3	The clock on th	ne wall of my room i	s so that I fin	d it difficult to also
	a) interesting	b) quiet	c) amazing	
4	Tourists like vis		in Hurghada a	d) noisy
	a) temples	b) seesets	In Hurghada a	and Sharm El-Sheikh.
-	,	b) resorts	c) banks	d) gardens
5	Alexandria is ai	n absolutely	city. We all like it.	
	a) amazing	b) boring	c) new	d) awful
6	My son is a very	doctor w	no has a very wonder	ful reputation
	a) brilliant	b) relaxing	c) stupid	d) fascinating
7	My grandmoth	er is over 80, but she	e is still very	a, rasemating
	a) crowded	b) active		d) away
8	Although he loo	oks 30 years old, he	is 45 years ol	d) away
	a) finally	b) musingly	c) annually	
9	The company	to complete	work in April	d) actually
	a) excepts	b) believes	c) expects	d) includes
10	Luxor and Aswa	n are our greatest hi	storic cities where the	ere are a lot of
	a) resorts	b) lakes	c) temples	d) stadiums
20				

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

(be) stuck	عالق (غير قادر على الخروج)	tired of	متعب من
have a holiday	يأخذ إجازة	take photos	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية
go away	يرحل	interested in	مهتم ب
go down	ينْخْفْض/تغرب (الشمس)	over the moon	سعید جدًا
make good use of	يستغل	walk around	يتنزه
busy with	مشغول بـ	live in	يعيش في
dive with	يغطس مع	loads of	کمیا <i>ت</i> من
leave behind	يترك خلفه	on balcony	في البلكونة

Just reading them may help!

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
awe	یهاب/پرهب	awfulness	غظاعة	awful	سيئ/فظيع
bore	يضجر	boredom	ملل	boring bored	ممل شاعر بالملل
calm	يعداريُهُدُئ	calmness	هدوء	calm	هادئ
crowd	يحشد/يدفع	crowd	حشد/جمع من الناس	crowded	مزدحم
fascinate	يفتن/يسحر	fascination	جاذبية/افتتان	fascinating fascinated	ساحر منبھر
pacify	يهدأ/يسكن	peace peacefulness	سلام هدوء	peaceful	آمن
quieten	يعدا	quiet/quietness	هدوء/سكينة	quiet	هادئ
stick	ينقدم/يلصق	sticker stickiness	ملصق لزوجة	stuck sticky	عالق لزچ

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرانف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
active	نشيط	energetic/dynamic	inactive/lazy/idle کسول/خامل
amazing	مدهش/مذهل	astonishing/fascinating	معقول/عادی believable/ordinary
ancient	قديم	old/antique	modern/new دینٹ/عصری
beautiful	جميل	pretty/cute/handsome	ugly/awful قبيح
boring	ممل	dull/uninteresting	exciting/interesting
busy	مزدحم	crowded/jammed	empty/free فارغ/خال
calm	هادئ	peaceful/quiet	nervous/upset/noisy
exotic	•	shapp mad	متوتر/عصبي/مزعج
	غريب	strange/unusual	شائع/عادی common/normal
fascinating	سادر/خلاب	charming/interesting	ممل boring/dull
relaxing	مريح	comfortable/calm	noisy/worrying مزعج/صاخب/مقلق

Vocabulary Check point 2

	Howas			
	ne was	in the elevator مصعد	for 2 hours till the pe	ower was restored
	a) stick	D) STUCK	nleasond	
2	I have become	so tired my	daily routing	d) struck
	a) in	h) of	ually routine.	
-	Llive in a	6) 01	c) by	d) on
3	Tilve in a very q	b) of uiet andvilla	age. I am happy to liv	ve here
	- Paracelai	LI CIOVVIJEI	() DOISY	
4	I went to the old	d company and cane	alled the senter of	a) spicy withoutwithout
	any troubles.	a company and canci	قد ened the contract	without الغيت الـ
-	a) peacefully	b) peace	c) peaceful	d) peacefulness
5	11000y 13	DIIOLOS OT THE N	PATHICAL VIEWS All OVOR	Egymph
	a) making	h, doing) producin	Lgypt.
6	My daughter wa	as york bannus t	c) producing	d) taking
	was	is very happy when s	she passed all her ex	ams. It means that she
	a) above the mo	on	b) over the moor	
	c) on air		d) aver the sur	
7	When I went to S	harm El-Sheikh Lfou	nd it	
	a) fascinated	to fascinated	nu it I recomm	ended it to my friends.
8				
	THE VIEW Was 50	relaxing that I slept i	in the balcony for a	while. The antonym of
	THE THORE I CIUXIII	M 13		,
	a) comfortable	b) calm	c) worrying	d) avciting
27	4		-, 1101171119	d) exciting
32	day 1			

	child = kid مفل صغير	The hotel is ideal for families with young children.
1	dadler مطفل يتعلم المشى	Tamara is just a toddler; she can't go up the stairs by herself.
	teenager = adolescent مراهق	Omar needs a special treatment because he is a teenager.
	youth بشاب	The police had questioned three youths, but then later released them without charge.
	adult شخص بالغ	The cost of the trip is \$60 for adults and \$30 for children.
	weather الطقس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة)	What's the weather like today?
2	climate المناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة)	The climate is cooler in the east of the country.
	atmosphere الغلاف الجوى/الجو العام	These factories are releasing toxic gases into the atmosphere.
3	steal + (something) يسرق (شيئًا)	He stole money from his neighbours, so he went to prison.
	rob + (place/person) یسرق (من مکان أو شخص)	They killed four policemen while robbing a bank.
	rob + (somebody) of (something) يسرق شيئًا (من شخص أو مكان)	They threatened to shoot him and robbed him of all his possessions.

find

find

يجد

(object) + (adjective)

- We found her body hidden in the bushes.
- When I reached home, I found my father angry.

(object 1) + (object 2) + to + inf.

Has he found himself/her/someone a place to live in yet?

that + (subject) + (verb)

The study found that dinosaurs lived on the earth 150 million years ago.

Scientists are trying hard to explore other planets. explore discover يكتشف شيئا موجودًا بالفعل ولكن لم Professor Zewail discovered the femtosecond. يكن معروفًا. invent يخترع شيئا لم يكن له وجود. Graham Bill invented the telephone. on board = aboard The crew are the people working aboard (on على متن السفينة أو الطائرة board). abroad ا بالخارج l want to travel abroad to do my studies. The teacher put some notes on a board in the a board لوح/سبورة classroom. Vacabulary Check point 3

1	We think that t	oday's films are suital em.	ole for only	who are old enough to			
	a) adults	b) toddlers	c) children	d) babies			
2	There was a ter	nseduring th	e final minutes of th	ne game.			
	a) weather	b) atmosphere	c) climate	d) air			
3	Several people	on the train were	of their money	/.			
	a) stolen		c) robbed				
4	Someone my sandwiches while I was at the break.						
	a) rob	b) was stolen	c) robbed	d) stole			
5	I went with my friends on a boat trip to the River Nile.						
	a) invent	b) discover	c) explore	d) find out			
6	a) invent b) discover c) explore d) find out After arriving in the USA, I could hardly myself a flat to live in						
	permanently.		,	1100 100 1170 117			
	a) find	b) explore	c) discover	d) search			
7	Menna Arafa became a famous actress while she was a/an She was						
	15 years old.						
	a) toddler	b) children	c) adolescent	d) teenager			
8	Do you know whothe magnet المغناطيس?						
	a) invented	b) discovered	c) explored	d) did			



Vocabulary General Exercises

1	To be able to thir	nk carefully about ou	r problems, we have to					
	a) worry	b) relax	c) frighten	d) fight				
2	The latest techno	ology especially com	puters and the internet	have become				
_	The latest technology especially computers and the internet have become an essential part of our life.							
	a) old	b) modern	c) antique	d) crowded				
3	I was very angry	when I the t	truth about his bad bel	naviour.				
	a) invented	b) discovered	c) explored	d) found				
4	We all have to be	careful about dealin	g with who are a	it most 19 years old.				
	a) adults	b) kids	c) toddlers	d) teenagers				
5	I was really	on hearing that r	my son was badly injure	ed while playing				
	a football match							
	a) happy	b) pleaded	c) excited	d) upset				
6	Mr Adel is the be	est I have eve	er met. He has a very ni	ce garden where he				
	himself works.							
	a) gardening	b) teacher	c) director	d) gardener				
7	I can't believe th	nat I am goir	ng to Mecca for pilgrim	lt has been الحج nage				
	my lifelong wish							
	a) traditionally	b) unfortunately	c) actually	d) impossibly				
8	I am always worried when my little son is on the alone as he might fall							
	a) balcony	b) ceiling	c) floor	d) stair				
9	Hurrghada is a v	a) balcony b) ceiling c) floor d) stair Hurrghada is a very quiet andcity that tourists like to visit.						
	a) deceitful	b) excited	c) peaceful	d) tiring				
10	Zahi Hawwas ar	nnounced that his tea	am had discovered a/ar	ıtomb				
	before a month.							
	a) quiet	b) busy	c) modern	d) ancient				
11	The thieves hav	ea lot of pe	ople of their money red	ently.				
	a) robbed	b) stolen	c) bought	d) borrowed				
12	2 The thieves	a huge sum of r	money from the bank.	0.4				
	a) robbed	b) stole	c) bought	d) borrowed				
13	3 Wearing a face r	nask when you get or	n publicis necessa	ry nowadays.				
	a) transport	b) opinion	c) communication	d) amusement				
1	4 We always feel .	when the ex	ams approach.	d) grateful				
	a) hungry	b) dizzy	c) stressed	u/graterur				

18	As I found tha	nt most of my fri	ends were	that day, I	left them early and
	went home				
	a) modern	b) calm	c) b	rilliant	d) boring
16	nave you see	n ner ta	antastically on s	tage? She's ab	solutely brilliant
	a) discover	b) perform	c) g	ive	d) scan
17	' Thei	n Egypt is nice a	all the year rour	d, so tourists l	ike visiting it.
	a) weather	b) climate	c) at	mosphere	d) whether
18	As a result of i	my broken leg, I	was at	t home for nea	rly a month.
	a) stick	b) stuck	c) w	orried	d) struck
19	The true friend	d is the one who	gives	at both happy	and difficult times.
	a) frustration	b) disappoi	ntment c) pi	resentation	d) support
20	The engineers	the ol	d area very well	before they in	nstalled the
	equipment.				
	a) discovered	b) explored	c) in	vented	d) created
21	The engineers	an an	cient statue whi	ile digging the	old area.
	a) discovered	b) explored	c) gr	ew	d) created
22	In some parts	of the world, pla	ants and some	kinds of trees	without
	man's interfere	ence.			
	a) are grown	b) grows	c) gr	ow	d) is growing
23	Your handwrit	ing is so	; I need a mag	nifying glass to	o read it.
	a) fantastic	b) tiny	c) an	nazing	d) beautiful
24	Because of the	weather, the co	pastal	are deserted in	winter.
	a) banks	b) roads	c) str	reets	d) resorts
25	Try to	good use of yo	ur time. You ha	ve a lot of worl	k to do.
		b) do	, ,	/e	d) make
26	We got a load	compla	aints about the	loud music.	
-	a) from	b) of	c) by		d) in
	pose the Two c	orrect answers	of the Five op	tions:	
27	l liked the time	I spent with the	e crew	when I was tra	evelling to Paris.
	a) abroad	b) on board	c) on aboard	d) broad	e) aboard
28	Cairo is so bear	utiful. The antor	lyms of the wor	d "beautiful" a	re and
	a) ugly	b) attractive	c) wonderful	d) awful	e) pretty
29	l always take m	y young	to the park e	very Friday.	
20	a) adults	b) grown-ups	c) kids	d) childre	e) youth
30	Luxor is one of	tne most fascin	ating cities in th	ne world. The a	intonyms of the
	word rascinati	ng" arear	1d		
	a) exciting	b) dull	c) charming	d) boring	e) astonishing



Notes on the past simple and past continuous

While When	بینما عندما	+	بدون فاعل (v-ing)	-While playing , he fell downWhen arriving , I had a shower.
During	أثناء	+	(noun)	-During my stay in England, I learnt English.
On	عند	+	(noun)/(v-ing)	-On seeing the police, the thief ran away.

During my stay in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places. (While)

=While I was staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.

لابد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الأولى هو نفسه فاعل الجملة الثانية عند استخدام (while + v-ing)

While staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.





من الممكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع تعبيرات المع الملضي:

(all day/all night/all morning/all evening yesterday) Iwas watching televisionall day yesterday.



بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم في الماضي المستمر ولكن تستخدم في الماضي البسيط حتى مع علامات الماضي المستمر وهي:

see -hear -smell - taste - touch - feel - أفعال الحواس - ١

العلطفة love -like -hate -dislike -prefer أفعال العلطفة -٢

understand - forget - remember - know - rem - أفعال التفكير - *

e - أفعال التملك owe -own -possess -have -belong -want

When my teacher was illustrating the lesson, lunderstood it.



من الممكن استخدام زمن الملضى البسيط للإشارة إلى حدث تم في الملضى لم يــُـذكر وقت وقوعه ولكن معروف (كمعلومة) أنه تم في الماضي (الماضي البديهي)

The Chinesebuilt the Great Wall of China to stop the enemies' attacks.



(حرف جر) + While

= While + subject + v. to (be) + (حرف جر)

While on holiday, I had a great time.

While I was on holiday, I had a great time.



It's (high) time 'd rather l wish Suppose

(التصريف الثاني) + (subject) +

It's time! travelled abroad.

I wish! attended the party.

- أما إذا وجدنا كلمة دالة على الماضي مع d rather/l wish/suppose ' نستخدم زمن الماضي التام.

I'd rather I had travelled abroad two years ago

I wish I had attended the party yesterday.

- التعبيرات السابقة إذا لم يأت بعدها فاعل تصبح قاعدتها كالأتى:

l wish + (to + inf.)

I'd rather + (inf.)

It's time + (to + inf.)

It's time to travelabroad. I wish to attend the party.



بمكن استخدام .did + inf للدلالة على التأكيد.

I visitedhim yesterday. = I did visit him yesterday.



كلمــة for أصــلًا كلمة دالة على زمن المضارع التام ولكن من الممكن اســتخدامها في الماضي البســيط عند وجود ما يدل على انتهاء الحدث.

My father worked for this company for 20 years. Now, he has his own company.



من الممكن اسـتخدام الكلمات الدالة على العادة في المضارع البسـيط مع الماضي البسيط لتعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي،

Subj. + (always/often/usually/sometimes ...) + (التصريف الثاني)

She always slept early on school days when she was a student.

- استخدام الزمن بعد because - 50 حسب معنى الجملة وليس لها زمن ثابت.

I couldn't see him because I was studying.

I didn't play the match because I hadn't trained enough.



He used to be clever, but now he isn't He used to study hard, but now he doesn't She didn't use to beactive, but now she is He didn't use to sleep early, but now he does

Language Summary

Usage

- For completed actions in the past.
- For repeated actions or habits in the past.
- For retelling situations or stories.

Affirmative

- He invited his friends for dinner last week.
- · He sat at the beach with his friends.



Negative

• A: Did he invite his friends for dinner? B: Yes, he did. /No, I didn't.

Question

- · A: When did he invite his friends for dinner? B: He invited his friends for dinner last week.
- · He didn't invite his friends for dinner last week.
- · He didn't sat at the beach with his friends.

Past Continuous



Usage

- An action was in progress at a certain time.
- Two actions that were in progress at the same time.

Affirmative

- · I was walking to university while I was listening to music.
- They were walking to university while they were eating.

Question

- · A: Were you walking to university?
 - B: Yes, I was. /No, I wasn't.
- · A: What were they doing while they were walking?
- B: They were eating.

Negative

- I wasn't walking to university.
- They weren't walking to university.



Language General Exercises

	1	Anwara	all yesterday evening, s	so he didn't watch the	match.
		a) is sleeping	b) had slept	c) was sleeping	d) was slept
	2	During	in Sharm, I swam in the	e sea every morning.	
		a) staying	b) stayed	c) my stay	d) being stayed
	3		down the road, I crasl		, J == , ==
		a) On	b) As	c) As soon as	d) By
	4	I'd rather you	out alone late to	day.	
		a) not going	b) hadn't gone	c) didn't go	d) not go
	5	At a quarter to te	en, Ihome wit	h some of my friends.	
			b) was walking		
	6	I met a lot of my	old friends m	y cousin's wedding pa	irty.
		a) since	b) during	c) when	d) while
	7	l couldn't go out	with my friends becaus	se I my mother w	ith the housework.
		a) helped	b) was helping	c) had helped	d) help
	8	I was having a sh	ower, so I the	telephone.	
			b) wasn't hearing		d) hearing
	9	For a long time ye	esterday, my father	in his office.	
		a) working	b) has worked	c) worked	d) was working
1	0	I was playing foot	tball with my friends	l broke my leg	J.
		a) while	b) on		
1	1	My uncle	for the police for twe	enty years before he re	etired.
		a) works	b) worked	c) has worked	d) used to work
1	2	We were doing or	ur homework while ou	ir little brother	TV.
		a) had watched	b) was watching	c) watches	d) is watching
1	3	I didn't accept my	/ friend's invitation to d	dinner as I fo	r my exam.
		a) revised	b) are revising	c) was revising	d) had revised
1	4	I would rather he	my camera.		(Lonyman)
		a) haven't broken	b) hadn't broken	c) didn't break	d) not break
1	5	Mum prepared lo	ts of food for the party		
		a) while	•	c) during	d) since
1	6	He was very anno	yed, as he was travellin	g by bus when someo	nehis watch.
,,,	_	a) was stealing	b) has stolen	c) had stolen	d) stole
1	/	while we	on holiday in Alexand	dria, we met many of	our old friends.
		a) were being	b) are	c) have been	d) were

18	Suppose you	a bag of money	, what would you do	?
	a) found	b) have found		
19	I was watching T\	/ my father r	eturned from the of	fice.
	a) when	b) while		d) since
20	While th	e baby smiled at the	doctor.	
	a) examining		b) was examining	
	c) being examined	d	d) was being exan	nined
21	I'd rather			
	a) sleep	b) to sleep	c) slept	d) had slept
22	I'd rather my son	hard last yea	ar.	
	a) studied	b) had studied	c) study	d) to study
23	I wish I A	mr Diab in Alexandr	ia last week.	
	a) meet	b) to meet	c) met	d) had met
24	I hadn't spoken to	o him much, but he	to be a very	nice man.
		b) is seeming		
25		company for 5 years,		
		b) working		
26	Salwa always set	the table for lunch. T	hi <mark>s sentence</mark>	*** 9
	a) is a present hak		b) was a past habi	
	c) always takes pla		d) never took place	
27		, I was sent a task to o		
		b) The speaker.		
28		army for a long time.		
	a) I no longer wor	rk for it	b) I still work for it	1 15
		rit		
				V.This means
		ching TV alone and he		
		only were drinking ju		
		friends were drinking	_	
		friends were drinking		
30		ne lessons, i phoned	my friend to ask nim	about the party. Who
	was studying?	_	h) It was ma	
	a) It was my friend		b) It was me.	nd nor ma
0.4	c) Both my friend		d) Neither my frie	nd nor me.
31		his means I am	c) not fat	d) overweight
200	a) fat	b) no longer thin t up late. This means	•	
32	a) got	b) didn't get	c) has not	d) never gets
	4/ 901	W/ didire get	7	3

Test yourself



(Lessons 3 & 4)

)	Vocabulary			
1			ny visit to Al-Azhar Parl	c in Cairo. The word
		eans		
	a) familiar	b) known	c) strange	d) common
2	Nader is interest	ted doing	exercise to be fit.	
	a) on	b) of	c) with	d) in
			t as if I ate nothing.	
	a) tiny	b) huge	c) big	d) massive
4	Many people pr	efer to live in coun	c) big tries where the	is fine most of
	the year.			
	a) weather	b) climate	c) atmosphere	d) sun
5	On getting on t	he train, we found	it so that we h	had to stand all way to
	our station.			,
	a) empty	b) crowded	c) relaxing	d) noisy
6	Most of people	who were travelling	g with me the	ship were so friendly.
	a) a board	b) abroad	c) aboard	d) on aboard
7	I enjoy the peac	e and of ti	ne countryside.	
	a) quite	b) quit	c) silent	d) quiet
8	Mr Adham taug	ht us how to	use of our free time	usefully.
	a) have	b) do	c) give	d) make
9	He is so bored.	All his family mem	bers are away on holid	ays and he is
	at home.		•	•
	a) stuck	b) exotic	c) released	d) freed
10	At the circus, the	e clown th	c) released e children with his mag	gic tricks.
	a) designed	b) limited	c) fascinated	d) existed
11			n't go camping last wee	
	was			
	a) lawful	b) awful	c) fascinating	d) noisy
12	Don't worry! You	ar son is now 15 year	ars old and is acting as	a normal
	a) adolescence	b) kid	c) teenager	d) adult
13	Sometimes l'enje	oy my English lesso	ns, but at other times I	find them really
	a) boredom	b) bore	c) bored	d) boring
14	Luxor is famous	for its moi	numents and temples.	
	a) strange	b) ancient	c) modern	d) dull

15	Mohamed Salah	was the mod	on when he won the	Champions League
	Cup.			
	a) under	b) after	c) over	d) above
)	Language			
16	I'd rather they	us about the ac	cident.	
		b) have told		d) were telling
17	Yousra used to liv	e in Cairo, but now sh	ne	
	a) hasn't	b) didn't	c) isn't	d) doesn't
18			ry when the car broke	
			c) was taking	
19	_		to the noon. I couldn	
			c) has studied	
20	When I saw the w	allet, I was sure that i	t to my broth	ner.
	a) wasn't belongir	ng	b) hadn't belonged	
	c) didn't belong		d) doesn't belong	
21	While the laptop	, I was using	my friend's.	
	a) was fixed	b) was fixing	c) had fixed	d) was being fixed
22	the mee	ting, we discussed all	the urgent topics.	
	a) When	b) During	c) While	d) Until
23		a meeting to discus		
	a) to have	b) will have	c) had	d) are having
24		his mother, the baby	-	
			c) was bathed	
25			when he was young, b	
		b) isn't		d) won't
26		king on the phone, th		
		b) During	c) While	d) After
27	I fast foo			
	a) don't use to	b) didn't use to	c) am not used to	d) wasn't used for
28	the fligh	nt, I felt ill.		
	a) While		c) During	d) As soon as
29	studying		nany attractions in Lo	
	a) As	-,	c) Just as	d) During
30			w a lot of monuments	
	a) During	b) When	c) While	d) As

Chapter 1

Vocabulary

admiral	أميرال (رتبة بحرية)	pale	باهت/شاحب اللون
adventures	مغامرات	perhaps	ربما
blind	اعمى/كفيف	point	يشير
cliffs	منحدرات صخرية	probably	من المحتمل
captain	قبطان	quiet	هادئ
dare	يجرؤ	realise	يدرك
dead	ميت	sailor	بحار
frightened	خائف	scar	ندب/أثر جرح
grab	يجذب/ينتزع	suddenly	فجاة
guarding	حراسة	surprised	مندهش
gun	بندقية	sword	
inn	حانة	terrible	فظيع
island	جزيرة	treasure	كنز
neighbours	الجيران	village	قرية

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as quickly as we could	باسرع ما يمكننا	point towards	يشير نحو
be frightened by	خائف من	point to	يشير إلى
come down	ينزل	run outside	يجرى للخارج
continue + (v-ing)	يستمر في	spend + (v-ing)	يقضى
dare to	يجرؤ على	talk about	يتحدث عن
decide to	يقرر أن	tell about	يحكى عن
fall over	يسقط	walk back into	يعود إلى
fall to the floor	يسقط على الأرض	walk into	يدخل
look around	ينظر حول		
look pale	تبدو باهتة	write about	يكتب عن

۰	1	The doctor says that the wound is quite deep and will probably leave a							
				c) guard					
	2	The thief	the lady's bag and	ran away.	1 701 400 000				
		a) gained	b) gaped	c) grabbed	d) glued				
	3	Hundreds of year	rs ago, soldiers carr	ied to fight	with during wars.				
		a) swords	b) submarines	c) tanks	d) treasures				
	4	a) swords b) submarines c) tanks d) treasures We were very tired and hungry, so we stopped at a/an to rest and had							
		a meal.							
		a) cave	b) island	c) inn	d) cliff				
	5	You look sick and	; you need	to see a doctor.	it myman				
		a) fit	b) pale	c) exhausting	d) well				
	6	You should be ve	ry careful while dri	iving. Theis	very steep and				
		dangerous.							
		a) island	b) cliff	c) map	d) key				
	7	The secretary did	n't to tell th	ne manager the bad	news.				
		a) dare	b) adapt	c) do	d) enable				
	8	We need to have	We need to have weapons to these isolated farms against attack. a) guard b) hide c) owe d) own						
		a) guard	b) hide	c) owe	d) own				
	9	The operation les	ft their son	and brain-damaged c) blind	d.				
	10	Mr Kamala lot of money to the bank, so he might sell his car to							
		repay it.							
		a) hides	b) owns	c) owes	d) grabs				
	11			ca, and had a lot of	during his				
		expedition there							
		_		c) fingers					
	12	She was exhaust	ed but she	who the man in the	e photograph was.				
		a) realised	b) left	c) turned	d) pointed				
	13			ritish or US navy.					
		a) captain	b) guard	c) clerk	d) admiral				
	14	The mother clear	ned her child up be	ecause hein	the mud yesterday.				
		a) looked around	b) based in	c) fell over	d) depended on				
	15	The officer mana	ged to take the	from the thief	s nand.				
		a) arrow	D) tank	c) gun	a) rocket				



تلعزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لمنحق المهارات



To write about tourism, you can focus on the following:

- 1 The importance of tourism for our country.
- 2 The well-known attractions in your country.
- 3 The kinds of tourism.
- 4 What ecotourism is and why it is so important.
- 5 How individuals and government can encourage tourists to come to Egypt.



Tourism

Introduction

It is known that tourism is very important for the state and the individuals as well. Tourism helps countries to increase their national income and brings hard currency that helps to improve their economy.

Main body

Tourism is very helpful in exchanging different cultures. However, tourism may have some disadvantages, especially for the country's inhabitants. Streets and roads, towns and cities, all places became very noisy and crowded, so people can't shop or go to their work easily.

There are some kinds of tourism, such as ecotourism, health tourism and business tourism. Ecotourism is the one in which tourists should keep the country they visit clean without doing any damage to the environment.

Conclusion

We all must cooperate to encourage tourists to visit Egypt. The government should build modern hotels, restaurants, good roads and resorts for tourists. In addition, we as individuals should be friendly and respectful towards tourists.

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Motor cars are highly desirable for obvious reasons. We should recognise this and adjust ourselves to accept this as a must. It is no use complaining and attacking the motorists; most of us are motorists. It is nonsense'' to say that the countryside is polluted and cities and towns are spoilt as a result of traffic. If cars were banned, the alternative would be the return to the isolated communities of the past. Also, motorists make possible huge industries all over the world and provide employment to millions of workers and employees. Making stricter laws is not the best solution. The best solution is to provide better road facilities. One-way streets in big cities, towns and roads can better' conditions. There would be a world-wide network for motorways. The use of multi-storey and underground car parks can do wonders. Possible introduction of small electric cars for cities in the future and cars on rails is what designers are planning for tomorrow's world.

Again, exceeding speed limits should be too severe and more costly to reduce the annual toll of human life. Some governments are to blame because motorists pay vast sums on road tax, purchase tax, oil tax, etc. But it is a pity that only a small proportion of the money paid is used to improve road conditions.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

ا مبلغ/كمية

1	Better road facilities	
	a) are of no use	b) have beneficial effect
	c) are the result of strict laws	d) are undesirable for obvious reasons
2	Banning cars	
	a) is the only alternative	
	b) brings about primitive and isolate	ed communities
	c) will cost huge sums of money	
	d) needs stricter laws	
3	It is inadvisable for motorists	
-	a) to improve road conditions	b) to solve the accident problem
		d) to plan for tomorrow's world
	c) to exceed speed limits	*
4	Motor cars are highly desirable. Th	is means
	a) they have high desire	
	b) people very much like to have ca	rs
	c) people very much dislike cars	
	d) motor cars are to blame for the a	ccident problem
	C) THOUSE CONSTITUTION OF CITE OF	

🕒 تجاوز

(6) شبید*انتاس*

لا شيء

2) ينيل

صارمة أكثر

(4) يحسن

- 5 One advantage of motorists is that they
 - a) provide job opportunities
- b) reduce pollution
- c) provide road facilities
- d) plan for the future
- 6 Designers are planning to design for tomorrow's world.

a) electric cars

b) steam cars

c) cars on rails

- d) a & c
- 7 A suitable title for the passage may be
 - a) Banning motor cars
 - b) Solving the problems of cars and roads
 - c) Speed limits
 - d) The return of isolated communities

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1 Youth are the backbone of any nation and the base of its progress. So, governments should help them to be better citizens.
 - الشياب هم العظمة الخلفية لأية أمة وقاعدة تأخرها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
 - الكبار هم العظمة الظهرية لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
 - 🧹 الشياب هم العمود الفقري لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
 - الشياب هم العمود الفقرى لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات إهمالهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
- 2 Man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure. With that in mind. it should be filled with hard work.
 - العرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك في الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
 - (١) بعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك في الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجيد.
 - 🥒 الرجل يعرف جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من الرسوب والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك في الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
 - d انت تعرف يارجل أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك في الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون فارغة بالعمل الجاد.
- 3 The government pays great attention to women and provides them with education, jobs and health and social care.
 - إلى الحكومة اهتمامنا عادينا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والصحة والرعاية الاجتماعية.
 - الحكومة تعفع اهتماما كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعلم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.
 - ي تدفع الحكومة اهتمامنا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والمجتمعية.
 - أ تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.
- 4 Parents should have an effective role in pushing and encouraging their children to participate in their country's progress.
 - ا ينبغى أن يكون للوالدين دور فعتال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة في تقدم بلدهم
 - ل يجب أن يكون للوالدين دور فعال في رفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة في تقدم بلدهم.
 - 🥒 للوالدين دور فعال في دفع وإحباط أطفالهم للمشاركة في تقدم بلدهم.
 - على الوالدين دور فعال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة في تأخر بلدهم.

- 5 There is no doubt that the reform of education is a must even if we spend millions of money on it.
 - هناك لا شك أن إفساد التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.
 - مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم هو غير ضروري حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.
 - 🤘 مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.
 - d يوجد شك أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا الآلاف من الأموال عليه.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 من المحتمل أن تتحقق في المستقبل سياحة الفضاء والتي ستجذب الكثير من الناس وستحقق أرباحا خيالية.
- a) It is probably that space tourist will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.
- b) It is possible that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make small profits.
- c) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.
- d) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will pull many people and make huge profits.

7 لقد أجبرت مشكلة الإسكان الكثير من الشباب على رفض الزواج بسبب صعوبة الحصول على شقة.

- a) The housing problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.
- b) The overpopulation problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.
- c) The pollution problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.
- d) Forced the housing problem many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining a flat.

8 على الحكومة أن تهتم بالمشروعات الإنتاجية وذلك لزيادة الإنتاج ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل المواطنين.

- a) The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to decrease production and raise the level of living for all citizens.
- b) The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
- c) The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and rise the level of living for all citizens.
- d) The government should pay attention to produce projects in order not to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.

سعيدة.	نيا حياة	تی نہ	الصحية ح	والرعاية	والعمل	للتعليم	حقيقية	هو فرص	الحصول عليه	کل ما نحلم به ونتمنی	: 5
--------	----------	-------	----------	----------	--------	---------	--------	--------	-------------	----------------------	-----

- a) All we dream about and hope to get is real opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy life.
- b) Every we dream about and hope to get is fake opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy life.
- c) The whole we dream about and hope to get is real opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy live.
- d) All we dream of and hope to get is real opportunities for education, works and health care so that we can live a happy life.
 - 10 نحن جميعنا نعتبر الإنترنت معجزة هذا العصر حيث إنه أصبح ضرورة لا يمكن الاستغناء عنها في كل مجالات الحياة.
- a) We all consider the website a disability of this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all areas of life.
- b) We all respect the internet a miracle of this time, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all areas of life.
- c) We all consider the internet a miracle of this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all fields of life.
- d) We all regard the internet a marble of this asr, as it has become a dispensable necessity in all areas of life.

	***************************************						**************
*****	••••••		***************************************				***************************************
***************************************	***************************************				***************	*******	/
<		*****************			***************************************	, < , > , > , 4 , 9 , 2 , 9	*****************
***************************************	*************************	******					***************************************
<		*************					***************
		**************				***********	*************
		*************		*************			*******************
***************************************		************					
***************************************	****************	**************		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			*****************
						**********	******************

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test

To	
40	-

Ch	oose the Two co	rrect answers of t	the Five options:	
1	It was clear that	the audiences like	d the amazing show. T	he antonyms of the
	word "amazing"	are and .	0384600330008400003400 8	
	a) crowded	b) pretty c) astonishing d) belie	vable e) ordinary
2			lays because of climate	
				nger e) in dangerous
Ch		answer from a, b		3
				o country in the world
	has similar thing			•
			c) common	d) scarce
4		•		ne price of your holiday.
			c) enclosed	
5			ne likes studying living	
			c) anthropology	
6	The zoo brough	t some b	irds from New Guinea	which exist only there.
			c) old	
7				home with too much
	housework.	, , ,	9	
	a) comfortable	b) active	c) stuck	d) beautiful
8	These flowers v	vill grow in a cold		uitable to be grown in
	Russia.		•	
	a) weather	b) climate	c) atmosphere	d) day
9			o you have to practise	
		*	c) exotic	-
10			npany, he achieved a lo	
	a) While		c) During	
11	When I met Ali y	esterday, he	to hospital. I offere	ed to go with him.
			c) had gone	
12	When I was wat	ering the plants, it	to rain.	
	a) began	b) begins	c) has begun	d) was beginning
13		when I entered the		
	a) you did		b) you were doir	
			d) were you doir	ng
14	Smoke	out of the fire yest	erday morning.	
	a) was come	b) was coming	c) is coming	d) comes

- 15 Did you go out last night or youbusy? a)did b) were c) have d) are a) is still living there b) lives there now c) never used to live there d) lives in another city now
- ▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Jack lay, quiet and unmoving, for thirty minutes while a stranger repeatedly stabbed him with sharp needles, causing blood to pour steadily out of his leg. Jack was getting a tattoo. His friend Tony had recently got a tattoo, and Jack was so impressed by Tony's bravery. Getting a tattoo because your friends and peers have one is just one of the reasons why a lot of young people in North America get tattoos. Peer pressure, media influence, and personal expression are some of the common reasons for wearing tattoos today. Sometimes, wearing a tattoo can be a sign that you belong to a certain group. Some of these groups wear only brand-name clothes. When one's friends are all doing something, that person is more likely to do the same thing. The media is another big influence behind the popularity of tattoos in North America. Tattoos can be seen on people appearing in commercials selling expensive cars. Famous sports heroes with tattoos are shown in magazines. Fashion models are often seen in magazines and on TV wearing designer clothes that show their bodies tattooed with detailed and colourful patterns. These media images link tattoos to ideas of wealth, success, and status. As a result, many people decide to get a tattoo for its fashion and status value.

17	7 Jack was stabbed for thirty minutes with a needle because					
	a) he was getting a tattoo	b) he was getting his ears pierced				
	c) he was getting acupuncture	d) he was getting a nose ring				
18	According to the passage, some p	eople get tattoos b	ecause			
	a) they like pain	b) they think it will wash off in the bath				
	c) they are religious	d) they think it is fashionable				
19	Jack thinks people who get tattoo	s are				
	a) old-fashioned b) cowardly	c) brave	d) foolish			
20	The reason Jack wanted to get a ta	attoo was				
	a) the influence of friends c) the influence of the media	b) a desire to express himself d) all the previous answers				
	1					



- 21 The best title to this passage is ".....".
 - a) The benefits of tattoos
- b) Where people get tattoos
- c) The dangers of tattoos
- d) Why people get tattoos
- - a) wealth
- b) terrorism
- c) failure
- d) a, b & c

- 23 The underlined word "His" refers to
 - a) Tony
- b) Jack
- c) Tony's friend
- d) Jack's father

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- إن اكتساب اللغة الإنجليزية من الممكن أن يكون من خلال مشاهدة الأفلام والاستماع للأغاني وكذلك قراءة القصص والكتب باللغة الإنجليزية.

- a) The acquisition of the English language can be done through watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
- b) The obtaining of the English language can be done thorough watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books with English.
- c) The gaining of the English language can happen throw watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
- d) The winning of the English language can be through watching series, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books with English.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

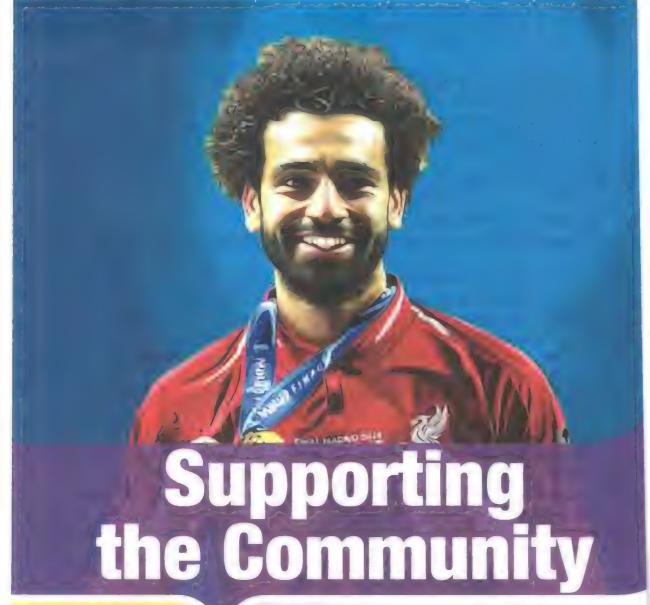
Our need of water in Egypt is expected to increase in the near future, so we must rationalise our use of water or we will face serious problems.

- من المتوقع أن تقل حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
- (b) تتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل البعيد، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
- حاجتنا للمياه في مصر من المتوقع أن تزداد في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سئواحه مشاكل حادة.
- من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Why people travel abroad.





Unit 2

Objectives

Reading

: A text about Egyptian people who help their communities

Writing

: Write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah

Listening: An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah

Speaking: Discussion about helping people; making arrangements

Language: Present and past simple; Present simple passive

Life Skills : Empathy





Vocabulary |

Key Vocabulary

blood pressure (صغط الدم	*roar (n) (v) – ed	زئير/زمجرة/يزأر
generous (adj)	كريم	role model (n)	مثل أعلى/قدوة حسنة
iron (n) (v) – ed	حدید/یکوی	speed (n) (v)	سرعة/يسرع
iron levels (n)	نسبة مستويات الحديد (في الدم)	support (n) (v) – ed	دعم/مساندة/يدعم
prestige (n)	احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة)	transplant (n) (v) – ed	زراعة الأعضاء/ينقل عضوًا

Can you hear the roar of the lion? It's roaring loudly.



قراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة عنى شاتفك



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

ability (n)	قدرة	founder (n)	مئۇسىس
admire (v) – d	المناب المالية	generation (n)	جيل
amongst (prep)	فيما بين/وسط	grow up (v)	ينضج
around (adv)	حول	happen (v) – ed	يحدث
benefits (n)	فوائد	happiness (n)	سعادة
blood (n)	ىم	health (n)	صحة
call (v) – ed	يسمى	hometown (n)	موطن
cancer (n)	سرطان	hunt (v) – ed	يصطاد
chance (n)	فرصة	illness (n)	مرض
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية/العمل الخيرى	income (n)	ىخل
check (v) – ed (n)	يفحص/فحص	injured (adj)	مصاب
community (n)	مجتمع	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
conservation (n)	حماية البيئة	knowledge (n)	معرفة
desire $(v) - d(n)$	يرغب/رغبة	long-term (adj)	طويل المدى
donate (v) – d	يتبرع بـ	nickname (n)	لقب/كنية
finals (n)	نمائيات	persuade (v) - d	يقنع
fondness (n)	ولع/شغف/إعجاب	reason (n)	

reco	ognise (v) – d	يتعرف	succeed (v) – ed	ينجح
redu	uce (v) – d	يقلل	task (n)	ieae
regu	ular (adj)	منتظم/معتاد	teenager (n)	مراهق
rese	ىي arch (n) (v) - ed	بحث علمى/يقوم بعمل بحث علم	the World Cup (n)	كأس العالم
	pect (v) – ed	يحترم	track (v) – ed	يتتي
save	e (v) – d	ينقذ/يوفر	traditionally (adv)	الإعياقة
SCOI	re (v) – d	يحرز	views (n)	آراء
	re (v) – d	يشارك		•
	pping (n)	التسوق	wish (n)	أمنية
0110	PP9 ()	67	You don't no	ed to memorise all at once.
1	Workbook Vocal	oulary		le them over 7 days.
	eement (n)	اتفاق	intelligence (n)	ذكاء/جهاز المخابرات
con	npassion (n)	رحمة	movements (n)	حرکات
	cumentary (n)	فيلم وثائقى	run past (v)	يسبق (في الجري)
	at (adj)	عظيم	soccer (n)	كرة القدم
Choo		swer from a, b, c o	check point 1 r d: ry work in her local	she was given
	an award.		,	, 511c 11co given
	a) conversation	b) conservation	c) documentary	d) community
2	•	•	ny planes on a radar s	
3	a) track After a lot of disc	b) persuade	c) trek countries managed to	d) share
3	a) disagreement			d) argument
4	It was very		o help you and lend y	ou all that money.
5			large sum of money to	Cancer Research.
6			c) finds out Ancient Egypt and its	
			c) conservation	
7		its huge mouth and b) tracked	in a frighten c) supported	
56	Unit 2			

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

badly injured	مصاب بشدة	give a nickname	يعطى لقبنا
give a chance	يعطى فرصة	give blood	يتبرع بالدم
love-hate relationship	علاقة حب ممزوجة بالكراهية (get angry with	يغضب من شخص
on the roof of	على سطح	send to	يرسل لـ
sense of purpose	الشعور بالهدف/المسئولية	share with /in	يشارك مع/ب
(be) admired for	يعجب لأجل	take part in	يشارك في
benefit from	يستفيد من	take the chance	ينتهز الفرصة
benefit of	فائدة اـ	learn from	يتعلم من
find out	يكتشف	move to	ينتقل إلى
(be) praised for	يُمدح لأجل	rospost from	
role model to	مثل أعلى لـ	respect from	احترام من

Derivatives

Ve	erb		Noun	Adj	ective
admire	يعجب بـ	admiration admirer	إعجاب معجب	admirable admired admiring	مثير للإعجاب معجب معبر عن الإعجاب
benefit*	عيقس	benefit beneficiary	فائدة مستفيد	beneficial	مفيد/نافع
desire	يرغب/يطلب	desirability desire	جاذبية/كون الشيء مرغوبـًا فيه رغبة	desirable	مرغوب فيه
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	tenhinki my na siluminana. sin	ne dan dan kalanda dan dan dan dan dan dan dan dan dan
found	يۇسس	founder foundation	مۇسس تأسىس/مۇسسة	founded	مرتكز على/مؤسس
		generosity	كرم	generous	كريم

⁻ My sister benefits from the online videos.

⁻ My allowance is no longer beneficial to me.



⁻ The internet has lots of benefits.

injure	يجرح	injury	إساءة/إصابة	injured	مصاب/جريح
persuade	ونقي	persuasion persuasiveness	إقناع/قناعة إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
regulate	يضبط/ينظم	regulation regulator	نظام/ترتیب مراقب/منظم	regulatory	تنظیمی/تقریری
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
		tradition traditionalist	تقليد شخص متمسك بالتقاليد	traditional	تقليدي

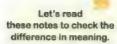
Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

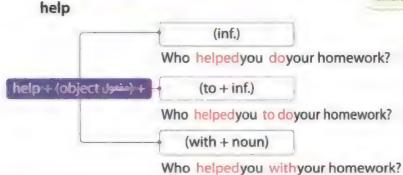
Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
benefits	فوائد	advantages/profits	disadvantages/hindrances عيوب/عوائق
find out	يكتشف	discover/detect	conceal/hide يغنى
generous	كريم	open-handed/big-hearted	mean/close بخيل
happen	يحدث	occur/take place	يتوقف cease/stop
happiness	قعادة	pleasure/joy	طنن displeasure/sadness
injured	مصاب	wounded/hurt	healthy
long-term	طويل المدى	long-lasting/durable/continuing	short-term/temporary قصير العدى/مؤقت
praise	يمدح	appreciate/glorify	ينتقدايدين condemn/criticise
prestige آوجاهة)	احترام (نفوذ/هیب	esteem/influence	insignificance/unimportance/ عدم احترام/عدم أهمية
support	يدعم	aid/assist	desert/abandon يتخلى عن
reduce	يقلل	decrease/cut down	increase/enlarge/expand یزید/یوسع
take part in	یشارك فی	participate in/join	avoid/hinder/block يتجنب/يعيق
			Toute nut each your in contenues

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	The accident wa	as very terrible and r	nany people were	***************
	a) injure	b) injury	c) injured	d) injuring
2	While walking i	n the street, my son	was by a wil	d dog.
	a) attached	b) attacked	c) attracted	d) attended
3	I always	angry with my chil	dren if they don't pra	ay.
	a) get	b) take	c) do	d) give
4	There are a lot of	of benefits t	he internet and socia	il media.
	a) from	b) by	c) with	d) of
5	My grandfather	is the of th	s great company.	
	a) foundation		b) founder	
	c) found		d) founded	
6	We all should w	ork together to supp	oort our country's eco	onomy. The synonym
	of "support" is ".	M		
	a) desert	b) damage	c) abandon	d) assist
7	Generous peop	le help both their far	milies and poor peop	le. The antonym of
	"generous" is "	oceedoninicasous 8		
	a) brave		b) courageous	
	c) mean		d) open-handed	
8	It is to	sleep early and eat h	ealthy food to be mu	uch healthier.
	a) desire		b) desirable	
	c) desirability		d) desired	
9	My son took	in the compet	ition and came first.	
	a) place	b) turns	c) a place	d) part
10	The writer's last	novel was		
	a) a success		b) successful	
	c) a successful o	ne	d) all mentioned	







(I can't help + v-ing)

لا استطيع أن أمنع نفسي من



When I see this picture, I can't help laughing

blood transplant

عملية زرع خلايا الدم «النضاع» (لمريض

سرطان الدم مثلًا)

Although blood transplant is an effective treatment for some conditions, it can cause

complications.

blood transfusion

عملية نقل الدم العادى

Blood transfusion is a way of adding blood to

your body after an illness or injury.

nickname لقب/كنية

At school, her nickname was "Carrots" because of

her red hair.

surname اسم العائلة

Probably no one has called him by his surname

since he was in the army.

first name = forename

اسم الشخص

What's your mother's first name?

pen name اسم مستعار

Under pen name, she starts writing reviews for

a newspaper.

decide to + inf.

يقرر أن

She decided togo out.

4 decide on + noun

بختار/يحدد

You have to decide onyour goal in life.

decide that + subject + verb

يقرر أن

He decided that you should attend.

- I like this cake. Can I have another piece? اسم مفرد + another - This pen is broken. Give me another one, please. (للمفرد) (شيء آخر إضافي أو مختلف) تأتي بعد another (الكميات – المسافات - I want to stay in this hotel for another 6 days. فترات الوقت - المبالغ المالية) other + اسم جمع (آخرون) - Some people like English. Other people don't فعل + others like it. الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم، وتفيد الجمع أيضًا) - Some people like English. Others don't like it. transplant A professional doctor could transplant a kidney يــزرع أو ينقــل أعضاء من جسـم الإنســان into his body. لجسم إنسان آخر، transmit The match will be transmitted on local channels. بذبع بيث أو ينقل قنوات تليفزيونية transport The goods are transported by huge ships. ينقل عن طريق وسيلة مواصلات instead of + (noun/v-ing) He travelled to Alexandria instead of staying at home. بدلا من instead, + subject + verb Instead, he travelled to Tunisia to attend the بدلًا من ذلك conference. respected محترم/يلقي لحترامنا My friend is a respected doctor. All people respect him. respectful All of us should be respectful of the authority. محترم/يظهر الاحترام للأخرين - She comes from a respectable family. respectable - Please, try to wear something respectable to محترم أو مناسب من وجهة نظر المجتمع the party. Vocabulary Check point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 My friend is called Ali Mohammed Hassan. Hisis Hassan. c) nickname d) first name a) pen name b) surname 2 Some of my close friends went to university, didn't. a) other b) another c) the other d) others 3 Could you tell me the reason your absence yesterday? a) for b) why c) of d) who

c) respect

c) transfer

4 The students listen to the lecture in silence.

b) respected

b) transmit

5 My brother is specialised in heart operations.

a) respectful

a) transport

d) respectable

d) transplant



1	The car was trave	elling at a of 1	00 kilometres an hou	ır.
	a) fast	b) prestige	c) speed	d) height
2	Dr Magdy Yacouk	o is the of Asy	wan Heart Centre.	
	a) finder	b) founder	c) foundation	d) finding
3	1 the ma	n who I met last week	, but I couldn't remen	nber his name.
	a) realised	b) understood	c) organised	d) recognised
4	High blood	is one of the most	common diseases no	owadays. (Longman)
	a) pleasure	b) leisure	c) treasure	d) pressure
5	Our neighbour is	He always	buys our children swe	eets and helps the
	needy.			(Longman)
	a) unkind	b) ambitious	c) generous	d) jealous
6	The headmaster	gave me the	of organising the sch	ool trip.
	a) profession	b) work	c) task	d) location
7	Iron levels in our	blood should beb) chocked	regularly.	(Longman)
	a) checked	b) chocked	c) shaken	d) cheered
8	Rania suffered fro	om many pro	blems during her chil	dhood.
		b) healthy		
9	I don't think that	exams are the best w	ay to measure	**** •
	a) intelligence	b) friendship nd the house	c) desire	d) compassion
10				
		b) designing		
11		e us chance to		
		b) others		
12		in Egypt tha	تجمع نقود t raise money	to help the poor
	and the disabled			
		b) locations		
		can help people if the		
	-	b) transmit		
14		t disgusting place, I ha		
	a) desire	b) hatred	c) design	d) affection
15	Those who are b	adly in accide	ents could be in need	
	a) tational	ha a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a	a) ad	(Longman)
10		b) attacked		
		attracted by the		
	a) greed	b) generosity	c) prestige	o) sense

17	Yesterday, I watc		onderful	about so	me rare r	narine
	نات بحرية creatures					
	a) documentary	b) docume	nt	c) research	d) c	ommentary
18	The builders hav	e only just sta	arted to lay	the of	the new	school.
	a) situations	b) organisa	tions	c) establishment	ts d) fo	oundations
19	The company ha	d a fairly	contr	act عقد that will la	ast for a fo	ew months.
	a) full-term	b) half-term)	c) short-term	d) lo	ong-term
20	My grandmothe	r's gi	rew up wit	hout electricity of	or compu	ters.
	a) admiration	b) generation	on	c) tradition	d) d	onation
21	My daughter's	is "Ro	ro"; she like	s it more than h	er real on	e.
	a) first name	b) surname		c) nickname	d) p	en name
22	I wanted to find	how	much her	new dress cost b	out I could	dn't.
	a) about	b) down		c) away	d) o	ut
23	Mr Magdy alway					
	a) gives	b) gets		c) makes	d) d	oes
24	Many hospitals a	ll over Egypt	are built w	ith the help of n	nany	whether
	rich or even poo	r.				
	a) donated	b) donation	IS	c) donors	d) d	onating
25	I didn't have eno	ugh to	make the	child tell us wha	t had hap	pened to her.
	a) persuade				d) p	ersuasively
26	Studying hard is					
	a) benefit					
27	The players were					
	a) place					
28	What makes all t					
	a) generous					
29	I managed to	the ma	nager to o	pen a branch for	the com	pany in China.
	a) persuade	b) respect		c) call	d) h	appen
Ch	oose the Two cor	rect answers	s of the Fiv	re options:		
30	Our teacher alwa	ys helps us	ou	r lessons easily.		
	a) study b;				dying	e) studies
31	We all should try	hard to	our go	als in life.		
			c) arrive			e) achieve
32	th استضافة Hosting					
	prestige. The syn	*		9		
		influence	•			e) displeasure
33	A terrible accider				lay. The s	ynonyms of
	the word "happe				1	,
	a) occurred b)	took place	c) increas	sed d) stopp	ed	e) ceased



The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والتقاليد والحقائق.

The present simple tense is used to talk about habits, customs and facts.



الاستخدام USAGE

For scientific and universal facts: Metals expand when they are heated. The sun rises in the east.

الحقائق العلمية والكونية.

For habits, daily routines and permanent situations:

مع العادات والأنشطة اليومية المتكررة والمواقف الدائمة.

I wake up early every day. She always sleeps late during holidays. Nora lives in Cairo.

I work as a teacher.

For future timetables:

مع الجداول الزمنية الثابتة.



The train from Cairo arrives at 5 o'clock tomorrow. The film starts at 7.30 and ends at 11.30 p.m.



After time conjunctions to express the future:

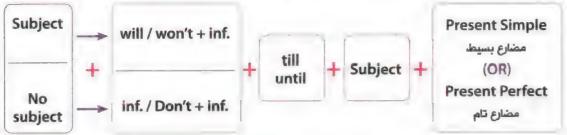
بعد الروابط الزمنية للتعبير عن المستقبل.



As soon as my brother comes/has come, I will tell him everything.

They are going to sleep after the film ends/has ended.

When she sleeps/has slept, try to phone her.



- I won't go out until I phone/have phoned my friends.
- I will wait till my father comes/has come.
- Wait until he calls/has called his father to come.
- Don't sleep till you finish/have finished studying your lessons.

100						
øK	e,	A	w	U	12	15

	Advorbe	of Francisco				ظروف التك	
	. Adverbs c	of Frequency			נינ	صروف النج	
always	دائمنا	sometimes	أحياننا	often	غالبنا	regularly	بانتظام
How often	کم مرۃ	seldom	نادرًا	generally	عمومنا	usually	عادة
occasionally من حين لآخر		باستمرار frequently			never	أبدًا (للنفي)	
rarely	نادرًا	hardly ever	بالكاد	scarcely	نادرًا	in general	بشكل عام

always = at all times

usually = as usual = as ever

occasionally = from time to time = now and then/again

Rasha always sleeps late. * Rasha sleeps late at all times.

Igo to the zoo with my children from time to time.

= loccasionally go to the zoo with my children.

2. Adverbs of Time

ظروف زمنية

every/each (week/month/year/...)
in the (morning, afternoon/evening)
at night/at noon/on (Fridays/Sundays/...)
at the weekend/once/twice/three times a (week/month/year/...)
daily/weekly/monthly/yearly = annually

av

Important Notes

التعبيرعن العادات في المضارع

Subject + (am/is/are) + used to + (v-ing), noun or a pronoun.

He is used to sleeping early.

It is + (someone's/صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf.

It is her habit to study at night.

Subject + (am/is/are) + in the habit of + (v-ing/noun)

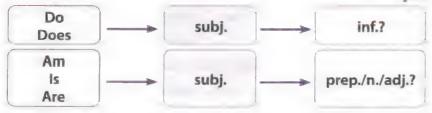
He is in the habit of going to the shops early.

4 Subject + (always/usually /often/...) + فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط،

She always gets up early.

الأفعال المساعدة في المضارع البسيط

- تستخدم الأفعال المساعدة do/does لعمل سؤال في المضارع البسيط ولكن هناك حالات تستخدم فيها v. to be لعمل سؤال في المضارع البسيط ولكن هناك حالات تستخدم فيها v. to be لعمل سؤال في المضارع البسيط ولكن هناك حالات تستخدم فيها

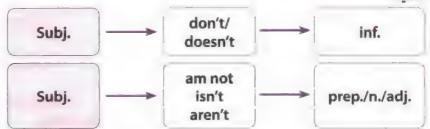


Are you busy studying your lessons today? Do you study on Fridays?

What is your father's job? Where does your father work?

- تستخدم الأفعال المساعدة don't/doesn't للنفى ولكن هناك حالات تستخدم فيها v. to be + not

لاحظ القواعد التالية:



She doesn't like watching football matches.

They aren't happy because of losing the match.



١ ﴾ تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (٧. to be).

He usually comes to work early.

He is always proud of his country.

٢) من الممكن أن تأتي (usually/sometimes) في بداية الجملة أو في آخرها.

Sometimes, I drive my car to school.

٣) تأتى الظروف الزمنية إما في بداية الجملة وإما في نهايتها.

I go to school every day.

Every day, I go to school.

٤) لاحظ أن never لا تلغى (5/es) المضافة للفعل في المضارع مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب.

Nora never comes late.

o ﴾ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة جداول المواعيد الثابتة (timetable) مثل القطارات والطائرات والدروس. My train leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

Past Simple زمن الماضي البسيط

تم شرح زمن الماضي البسيط في الوحدة السابقة، وللمراجعة السريعة عليه نتذكر ما يلي:

We travelled to Tanta yesterday.

حدث بدأ وانتمى

He often slept late when he was young.

عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي

First, we met our friends and then we went to the cinema together.

تتابع الأحداث

I didn't see my friend when I went to the party.

نفي الماضي البسيط

How did you win the last football match?

السؤال في العاضي البسيط

A very good match between Egypt and Nigeria was played yesterday.

المبئى للمجهول



1	My parents	me rewards when	n I get high marks.	
	a) are given	b) are giving	c) give	d) gives
2	The shop	at 10 a.m. every da	y.	
	a) opening	b) is opening	c) open	d) opens
3	I sometimes	articles for my se	chool magazine.	
	a) write	b) was writing	c) is writing	d) writes
4	In the solar syst	tem, all planets	around the sun in o	rbits.
	a) moves	b) move	c) moved	d) moving
5		to the stadium		
	a) go	b) went	c) have been	d) was going
6	1 have	a toy train when I was	a child.	(Longman)
	a) used to	b) am used to	c) used	d) was used
7	It rarely	in Egypt except in so	me areas of Sinai.	
	a) snow	b) snowed	c) snows	d) is snowing
8	When I was you	ung, I usuallyr	much time with my fri	iends outside home.
	a) spend	b) was spending	c) had spent	d) spent
9	The bus to Cair	o at exactly 7	a.m.	
	a) leaves	b) left	c) leave	d) had left
10	They E	English novels and boo	ks very often. They ra	rely do.
	a) don't read	b) always read	c) didn't read	d) never reads
11		sleep late. She		
	a) used to	b) has been used	c) was used to	d) is used to
12	We usually	our grandparents	before their death.	
		b) visits		
13	A: Did you visit	your friend in hospital	? B: Yes, I hin	n yesterday. (Longman)
	a) visited	b) have visited	c) visit	d) will visit
14	My uncle	late, is he?		
	a) is usually	b) is never	c) doesn't come	d) comes
15	As soon as my	father home, I	will tell him to take u	s on a picnic.
		b) have come		d) come
16		ir parents usually dona		
	a) Do		c) Does	
17		ys to work by		
	a) has gone	b) was going	c) went	d) is going

18			n we were in Alexandria	l.	
	a) have seen	b) see	c) had seen	d) saw	
19	Noha no longer	horror films	as she used to.		
		b) watched		d) watch	
20		dy usually late for scl			
		b) Has		d) Did	
21	How often does	Adel to the	school library?		(Longman)
	a) goes	b) go	c) going busy treating patie	d) went	
22	My father works	as a doctor. He	busy treating patie	nts.	
			c) is always being	d) always	
23			t now he	43.4	
			c) does		
24	9	to help the pa	tient yesterday, so he b	ecame in	
	a serious case.				
			c) wasn't done	d) was don	
			doing our work.		(Longman)
			c) had finished	d) finish	
		rises from the west		40 1	
	a) hardly ever	b) always	c) never	a) no longe	er
		k every morning; it i	s one of my good habit		(Longman)
	a) used to walk		b) am used to walk	ing	
	c) walks		d) always walked		
28			00 a.m.	d) is anona	d
			c) aren't opening	a) is opene	d
29			w. This is a	d) hono	
00			c) timetable	u) nope	
30	wy mena lives ii	n Alexandria. This me	b) it was his place o	of living one d	2V
	a) ne doesn't live	: mere	d) this is his parma	on living one di	livina
0.4			d) this is his permai	lent place or i	iving
		h never starts at 10 of			
	•	h might start at 10 o'			
	-,	h used to start at 10 d			
			at 10 o'clock by a timetal		
32			r family. This means	4000000000000000	
		ur family loves Liverp ur family is loving Liv			
		ers love everyone in			
		es everyone in our far			
		,	-		



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

	Vocabulary			
1	My father need	s a kidney	and we are waiting for	a donor.
	a) transport	b) transplant	c) transform	d) transfer
2	To live well, one	should get a	salary.	
	a) respect	b) respective	c) respectable	d) respectful
3	Morei	s needed into the	effects of COVID-19 on o	lifferent body organs.
	a) search	b) reservation	c) recovery	d) research
4	Mr Ahmed has	a negative	about football. He doe	sn't like it at all.
	a) scene	b) view	c) sight	d) scenery
5	Damanhour Un	iversity was	c) sight in 2010. It consisted o	of 12 colleges at that
	time.			
	a) found	b) founded	c) published	d) designed
6	A love-hate	is when you	have feelings of love and	d hate for someone or
	something.			
	a) relationship	b) fondness	c) foundation	d) participation
7	The new educat	tional system will	be of great to st	udents and teachers.
	a) course	b) injury	c) benefit	d) loss
8	Hello, Mr Kareer	m! You will	this locker خزانة with Mı	Anas.
	a) connect	b) share	c) attach	d) link
9	I saw a lot of far	miliar faces	the crowd in the street	t yesterday.
	a) above	b) before	c) amongst	d) below
10	We need more.	technique	es to present our project	to the manager.
	a) admiring	b) traditional	c) generous	d) persuasive
			oodis 120/80.	
	a) pressure	b) transfusion	c) donation	d) transplant
12	What makes me	e admire our friend	d more is his	
	a) genre	b) generous	c) generosity	d) generously
13	What makes me	admire my frienc	more is the fact that he	is
	a) genre	b) generous	c) generosity	d) generously
14	This journalist h	as been publishin	g articles under a	as he doesn't seek
	fame.			
	a) surname	b) first name	c) pen name	d) real name
15	We all should	our parent	s for all their efforts to ra	ise us well.
	a) criticise	b) recognise	c) deny	d) praise

)	Language			
16	The River Nile	through Sudan	and Egypt.	
		b) ran		d) was running
		plays in the club. He re		
	a) ever	b) always	c) doesn't	d) never
18	The weather	warm, so I don't	often wear heavy clot	hes.
	a) is always	b) always is	c) was always	d) always was
19			y clothes and had a sh	
	a) took	b) take	c) had taken	d) takes
20	Hurry up; the firs	st lesson at 8.	30.	
	a) start	b) will start	c) starts	d) started
21	Amrsuc	ch hard work, he is alw	ays lazy.	
			c) isn't used to	
22			do well in their exams	
	a) encourage	b) encouraged	c) are encouraging	d) are encouraged
23	After In	ny work, I to 1	the club.	
	a) finish/will go		b) will finish/go	
	c) had finished/w	vill go	b) will finish/god) have finished/we	nt
24	Waterii	nto steam when you b	oil it.	
			c) is turning	d) has turned
25		up early. He is always		
	•	b) didn't		d) won't
26		her school in her fath		
			c) go usually	
27		in Egypt all the	winter, and the weath	er was warm and
	sunny.			15.4 2
			c) hadn't rained	d) hasn't rained
28		he دقیق فی مواعیده he		4)
		b) hardly ever		d) never
29			problems in the compa	any today, and now
	everything is Ok			d) - un la acción m
	a) have	b) had had	c) had	d) am having
30	•	ing wrong, so I didn't	know why Iy	resterday.
	a) punished		b) was punished	
	c) am punished		d) wasn't punished	



Vocabulary

Link the new vocabulary to your daily life.

My aim is to be an engineer.





لقراءة لصوص الاستماع والقراءة قدر بمسح الصورة على فاتفك



Vocabulary on Reading Texts

[*] aim (n)	هدف	missing (adj)	مفقود
amazing (adj)	منهل/مدهش	monitor (v) – ed	يراقب
attack (v) – ed	وعلم	movements (n)	حركات
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	nearby (adj)	قريب
cattle (n)	الماشية	organisation (n)	منظمة
change (v) – d (n)	يغير/تغيير	protect (v) – ed	يحمى
disappear (v) – ed	يختفى	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
employ (v) – ed	يوظف	safe (adj)	آمن
guardian (n)	وصي/حامٍ - حارس	skills (n)	مهارات
hunting (n)	الصيد	together (adv)	معنا
killings (n)	عمليات القتل	track (v) – ed	يتتبع
livestock (n)	ماشية	understand (v)	ممفي
local (adj)	محلى	villagers (n)	سكان القرى

Workbook Vocabulary

appearance (n)	مظهر خارجي	paw print (n)	أثر بصمة (مخلب) حيوان
empathy (n)	مشاركة وجدانية	personality (n)	شخصية
estimate (v) – d	يقدر	recent (adj)	حديث
experts (n)	خبراء	signs (n)	علامات
follow (v) – ed	يتبح/يرصد	tribe (n)	a.c.
headquarters (n)	المركز الرئيسي	sense (n)	حاسة
locate (v) – d	يوجد/يقع في	path (n)	ممر/طريق

Unit 2

Vocabulary Check point 1

 -	1	The huge factory	in our city helps you	th as ita lar	rge number of them.
		a) saves	b) follows	c) employs	d) aims
	2	Our teacher has	a very strong and also	o friendlyin	dealing with his
		students.			
		a) sense	b) responsibility	c) movement	d) personality
	3	There must be so	omeon high	ways to help us know	w where we are.
		a) signals		b) signs	
		c) tracks		d) headquarters	
	4	I log onto the int	ernet every day to ge	etinformation	on about currencies.
		a) recent	b) modern	c) local	d) missing
	5	We must	the pollution levels	in our water sources	s regularly and
		accurately.			
		a) protect	b) change	c) monitor	d) follow
	6	He said that his	wallet sudde	nly and we had to lo	ook for it everywhere.
		a) appeared	b) disappeared	c) tracked	d) missed
	7	Egypt is a source	of many in	all different fields all	over the world.
		a) headquarters		b) villagers	
		c) guardians		d) experts	
	8	Our patients do	n't have to go outside	to be treated, they a	are treated in our
		hospita	1.		
		a) local		b) international	
		c) recent		d) located	
	9	Making such bea	autiful jewellery need	ls great	
		a) personality		b) estimation	
		c) search		d) skill	
	10	Most young peo	ple nowadays have n		in their lives.
		a) attacks		b) movements	
		c) nicknames		d) aims	

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

(be) based in	القائم في/الموجود في	go missing/get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق
(be) based on	قائم على	make sure	يتأكد
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	expert at/on/in	خبیر فی
interested in	مهتم ب	search for	يبحث عن
look for	يبحث عن	thanks to	بفضل
get together	يتقابل/يجتمع	worry about	يقلق على
give a sense of	يعطى إحساسنا ب	help in	يساعد في

Derivatives

Ve	erb	Noun		Adjective	
amaze	يدهش	amazement	باعدا/قشمه	amazed amazing	مندهش مدهش
estimate*	يقدر	estimation	تقدير	estimated	مقدر
locate	يقع في/يوجد	location	موقع	located	موجود في موقع
save	ينقذ/يوفر	safety safe	امان خزینه	safe	أمن

⁻ We need to estimate the distance.

1

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word M	eaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
amazing	مدهش	astonishing/unbelievable	believable/ordinary معقول/عادى
attack	هجوم	invasion/aggression	دفاع/مقاومة defence/resistance
disappear	يختفي	vanish/cease	appear/come out
employ	يوظف	hire/appoint	fire/discharge يطرد
hope	أعل	longing/ambition/desire	یاس despair/hopelessness
missing	مفقود	lost/absent	present/found حاضر/موجود
understand	يفهم	grasp/comprehend	misunderstand مسيء القمم
nearby	قريب	close/near	far/faraway/distant/remote
			بعید/بعید جدًا

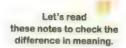
⁻ The estimation needs to be accurate.

⁻ The estimated distance is quite accurate.

Vucabulary Check point 2

1	Most people a	all over the world ar	e interested	football matches.
	a) on	b) in	c) with	d) of
2	The presence	of the police	us a sense of safet	y.
	a) made	b) had	c) took	d) gave
3	Egypt is	in the north of t	he continent of Afric	a.
	a) location		b) locate	
	c) located		d) locates	
4	Can you send	the? I have	en't been there befor	e.
	a) location		b) foundation	
	c) situation		d) title	
5	While walking	g and talking on his	mobile, my son sudo	lenly went missing.
		of "missing" is "		
	a) present		b) found	
	c) exist		d) lost	
6	My close frier	nd lives in a nearby	village and so I alway	s visit him. The opposite
	of "nearby" is	## ### ### ### #######################		
	a) remote		b) close	
	c) near		d) b & c	
7	Thanks	modern invention	ons, we have develop	ed greatly.
	a) with	b) for	c) at	d) to
8	They are	some fascinati	ng research on the la	nguage of dolphins.
	a) making		b) giving	
	c) taking		d) doing	
9	The building	of the new train sta	tion in Cairo caused .	to anyone who
	saw it.			
	a) amazing		b) amazed	
	c) amaze		d) amazeme	nt
10	The wonderf	ul film that I watche	d yesterday is based	a true story.
	a) in	b) at	c) from	d) on

Notes on Vocabulary



	work with	يعمل مع	All the nurses in this hospital ar with children.	e qualified to work
	work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	- My brother works for a big cor - Egypt works for peace in the M	
1	work in	يعمل في (مكان/مجال)	 I hope to work in medical research I work in Al-Salam company w October City. 	
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was wor novel.	king on a new
	work as	يعمل (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a jou Al-Ahram Newspaper.	ırnalist in
4	jobs endin	g with -ist	- i	وظائف تنتمي بالمقطع St
	scientist		biologist عالم	عالم أحياء
2	pharmacist motorist archaeologist		oculist صیدلانی	طبيب عيون
			novelist قائد مرکبة	رواثي
			artist عالم آثار	فنان/رسام
	as well as (v + ing OR r	بالإضافة إلى (تتبعما noun	As well as studying English, he sand maths.	tudied physics
-	as well as ن فاعلین ،و فعل	بالإضافــة إلــى (تربط بيـــ الجملة يتبع الفاعل الأول)	l, as well as Ali, like eating fish.	
	own	يمتلك	He owns a big flat on the Nile ba	ank.
	owe (شیء to	يدين (شخص	He owes some money to his frie	nd.
4	- شخص) lend	(شخص to شیء) (شیء + یسلف	His friend lent him some money	<i>'</i> .
	borrow (درية	شخص from شخص یستلف	He borrowed some money from	his friend.

recent حدیث (من فترة قصیرة)/قریب العمد This is a recent photo of my daughter.

5 modern حدیث/عصری Do you prefer modern or classical music?

Vocabulary Check point 3

1	My sister works	a new short s	tory to be published s	soon.
	a) as	b) on	c) with	d) for
2	My brother as we	ell as I part of	f the local charity in o	ur neighbourhood
	a) am	b) are	c) is	d) have
3	I have to pay him	n the money that I	to him.	
	a) lent	b) owed	c) borrowed	d) owned
4	I have to pay him	n the money that I	from him.	
	a) lent		b) owed	
	c) borrowed		d) owned	
5	I like to buy my r	medicine from this	as he is very cle	ver and friendly.
	a) pharmacy		b) pharmacist	
	c) scientist		d) biology	
6	It's recommende	ed to attach a/an	photo to your CV	<i>'</i> .
	a) modern	b) recent	c) old	d) historical
7	We need someo	ne to worka	receptionist. They sho	ould be
	بظمر presentable			
	a) from	b) in	c) as	d) for
8	I dream of work	ingan intern	ational company.	
	a) for	b) as	c) on	d) out
9	My eyes are sore	e. Do you know a goo	d?	
	a) pharmacist		b) biologist	
	c) scientist		d) oculist	
10	I don't work for	anyone; Ia c	ompany.	
		1 4	VI	al) amamlass
	a) owe	b) own	c) borrow	d) employ



Vocabulary General Exercises

1	I want to come	first in the final exams	. This is my	
	a) aim	b) movement	c) skill	d) ecosystem
2	If you want to g	b) movement get to your place easily	, you must m	e.
	a) estimate	b) appear nt has opened	c) follow	d) miss
3	A new restaurar	nt has opened	We can go and hav	e our dinner there.
	a) nearby	b) close	c) nearly	d) neatly
4	There will be a l	ittle in the we	eather next week. It w	ill be hotter.
	a) charge	b) exchange	c) movement	d) change
5	We couldn't rec	ognise him easily as he	e had changed his	completely.
	a) appearance	b) role	c) demonstration	d) relation
6	Some factories .	children as yo	oung as seven which is	s not good.
	a) donate	b) employ	c) pretend	d) hunt
7	Where is the	الشركة of the firm	? I want to meet the n	nanager.
	a) high quarter	b) headquarters	c) head building	d) headman
8	We all can see the	he slow of the	clouds across the sky	. They are so
	beautiful.			
	a) agreement	b) development	c) entertainment	d) movement
9	Our brave arme	d forces are able to	our country aga	ainst any enemy at
	any time.			(Longman)
	a) respect	b) attack he factory'sis	c) suspect	d) protect
10	Unfortunately, t	he factory'sis	too close to a resider	ntial area.
	a) location	b) located	c) lies	d) situation
77	I bo buntor tollo			
		wed theof th	e deer and he could o	atch it.
40	a) paw prints	wed theof th b) tricks	e deer and he could o c) fingerprints	catch it. d) tracks
12	a) paw printsVitamin C provid	wed the of th b) tricks des some aga	e deer and he could c c) fingerprints inst minor illnesses lik	catch it. d) tracks se the flu.
	a) paw printsVitamin C providea) production	b) tricks des someaga b) deduction	e deer and he could on the coul	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction
	a) paw printsVitamin C providea) productionThere are many	wed the	e deer and he could on the coul	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction
	a) paw prints Vitamin C provid a) production There are many haven't been are	wed theof th b) tricks des someaga b) deduction happening re rested yet.	c) fingerprints inst minor illnesses lik c) protection ecently in America, and	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction d the murderers
13	a) paw prints Vitamin C provid a) production There are many haven't been arr a) parties	wed theof th b) tricks des someaga b) deduction happening re rested yet. b) killings	c) fingerprints inst minor illnesses lik c) protection ecently in America, and	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction d the murderers d) plays
13	a) paw prints Vitamin C provid a) production There are many haven't been arr a) parties The nurses are to	b) tricks des someaga b) deduction happening re rested yet. b) killings	c) fingerprints inst minor illnesses lik c) protection ecently in America, and c) pranks the patients who are	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction d the murderers d) plays given the new drug.
13	a) paw prints Vitamin C provid a) production There are many haven't been arr a) parties The nurses are to	b) tricks des someaga b) deduction happening re rested yet. b) killings	c) fingerprints inst minor illnesses lik c) protection ecently in America, and c) pranks the patients who are	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction d the murderers d) plays given the new drug.
13	a) paw prints Vitamin C provid a) production There are many haven't been arr a) parties The nurses are to a) monitor I, as well as my co	b) tricks des some	c) protection c) pranks the patients who are c) attack	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction d the murderers d) plays given the new drug. d) achieve
13 14 15	a) paw prints Vitamin C provid a) production There are many haven't been arr a) parties The nurses are to a) monitor I, as well as my co a) am	b) tricks des someaga b) deduction happening re rested yet. b) killings cthe progress of b) lose ousin,travelli b) is	c) protection c) protection ccently in America, and c) pranks the patients who are c) attack ng to Alexandria next c) are	d) tracks d) introduction d the murderers d) plays given the new drug. d) achieve week. d) has
13 14 15	a) paw prints Vitamin C provid a) production There are many haven't been arr a) parties The nurses are to a) monitor I, as well as my co a) am The increase of co	b) tricks des some	c) fingerprints inst minor illnesses lik c) protection ecently in America, and c) pranks the patients who are c) attack ng to Alexandria next c) are disturbed all people	catch it. d) tracks se the flu. d) introduction d the murderers d) plays given the new drug. d) achieve sweek. d) has in our small

17	Most of the pe	ople here have .	with the h	omeless chi	ldren and try to
	help them.				4.
	a) appearance	b) empathy	c) ecosys	item	d) research
18	Success in life i	s based	hard work and co	operation.	(Longman)
	a) on	b) in	c) at		d) from
19	Thanks	modern techr	ology, we can live	a happy and	d comfortable life.
	a) for	b) with	c) by		d) to
20	Nowadays, inte	ernational comp	anies seek to	people	from all over the
	world.				
	a) employ	b) work	c) search	1	d) exist
21	A good teache	r should allow s	tudents enough tir	me to do an	exercise alone.
	He just waits a	ndthei	ir behaviour and ac	chievement.	(Longman)
	a) refuses	b) monitors	c) risks		d) neglects
22	Cattle are impe	ortant to the vill	agers, but they often	en go	or are attacked
	by lions.				
	a) lost	b) missed	c) losing		d) missing
23			veloping the new v		
	a) for	b) with	c) as		d) on
24	My friend's ne	w story is based	a true situat	ion that had	happened to him.
	a) on	b) in	c) at		d) into
25	Omar is going	torese	earch on the sea an	imals this se	emester.
	a) join	b) design	c) do		d) all mentioned
26	To cope with o	leveloped coun	tries, we need more	e experts	different fields.
	a) on	b) in	c) at		d) all mentioned
27	The doctor wa	s when h	e saw the analyses	of the التحاليل	patient.
	a) amazing	b) amazed	c) amaz	e	d) amazement
Ch	oose the Two	correct answers	s of the Five optio	ns:	
28	She is going to	employ more	people to improve	her work. Th	ne synonyms of the
		" are an			
				d) appear	e) appoint
					he antonyms of the
		areand			
	a) invasion	b) defence	c) resistance	d) fire	e) grasp
30	We should do	our best to prof	tect our country	the p	roblems it faces.
	a) to	b) with	c) from	d) by	e) against
31			think she won't sle	eep until she	e finds it.
	a) interesting	b) looking	c) caring	d) searchi	ng e) taking



Present Simple Passive

المبنى للمجهول في المضارع البسيط

We use the passive when the action is more important than the agent (who or what does it):

> نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون المفعول أهم من الفاعل، أو الفاعل غير معروف أو لا يراد ذكره. الجملة هنا تبدأ بالمفعول ولم تذكر من يقوم بالفعل.

The car is washed every Friday.

نستخدم by إذا أردنا ذكر الفاعل آخر الكلام.

New schools are built by the government.

يتكون المبئى للمجمول بشكل علم من:





- ومن هنا يتكون المضارع البسيط في المبنى للمجهول من Am - is - are + P.P. ومن هنا يتكون المضارع البسيط في المبنى

Leila always does the homework after school.

= The homework is always done by Leila after school.

- في حالة النفي يتكون المبنى للمجهول في المضارع البسيط من .am - is - are) not + P.P.

Amira doesn't watch comic films.

= Comic films aren't watched by Amira.

- في حالة السؤال:

Am/ls/Are + object + P.P. ...?

Are these old cars sold here?

Wh-/am/is/are + object + P.P. ...?

Where is this organisation based?

Extra Points

- لا تستخدم (has/have) كفعل أساسي في المبنى للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل أخر حسب المعنى:

I have a mobile.

- A mobile is (possessed/owned) by me.

We have breakfast before going to school every day.

- Breakfast is eaten before going to school every day (by us).



- هناك استخدامات أخرى عديدة لزمن المضارع البسيط ... منها:



إعطاء أوامر أو تعليمات (بدلًا من جملة الأمر).

You read the questions first and then you write down your answers in the box. You give a signal before you turn right or left.

= Give a signal before you turn right or left.



في التعليقات الرياضية.

Mohamed Salah passes the ball to El-Neny who kicks the ball and scores a goal.



سرد ملخص لأحداث روائية في رواية أو فيلم أو مسرحية.

In the last chapter, Huda meets Ali and agrees to marry him.



مع جمل تبدأ بـ (Here & There)

Look! Here comes your father at last.



مع الحكم والأمثال.

Action speaks louder than words.



- من الممكن البدء بـ (Never) وتصبح القاعدة كالأتى:

Never + (فعل مساعد) + فاعل + inf.

Never does he tell lies.



- من الممكن استخدام always مع زمن المضارع المستمر إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث الأن ويتسبب في ضيق. The girl is always asking a lot of questions while the teacher is explaining the lesson. He is always criticising ينتقد my handwriting.

Language Summary

Usage

- · Scientific and universal facts.
- · Habits or repeated actions.
- Permanent situations.

Affirmative

- He walks to university every day.
- They walk to university every day.

Present Simple

Negative

Question

- A: Does he walk to university every day?
- B: Yes, he does. /No, he doesn't.
- A: How often do they walk to university?
- **B:** They walk to university every day.

- He doesn't walk to university every day.
- They don't walk to university every day.



am is في الأزمنة المستمرة فقط نضيف being are (being) was were have has been had modal verbs Will can be must

should





1	Plants	by farmers.		
	a) grow	b) growing	c) are grown	d) grew
2	This popular tel	ovision programme	by millions of t	beoble every week.
	a) is watched		b) is being watched	t
	c) has been wat	ched	d) was watching	
3	Peter no longer	as he used to	•	(Longman)
_	a) has smoked	b) smoking	c) smoked	d) smokes
4	This writer is we	ell-known, His books	by thousands	of people.
•	a) read	b) are read	c) are reading	d) had been read
5	Nada a	arrives late; she is really	punctual.	(Longman)
	a) doesn't	b) never	c) always	d) already
6	It is a fact that e	eggsa lot of pi	rotein that is useful for	or our bodies.
	a) contain	b) contains	c) are contained	d) is contained
7	The classrooms	during the sc	hool holidays so that	the school could
	look better.		•	
	a) is painted	b) are painting	c) have painted	d) were painted
8	Students	two foreign language	ges in secondary scho	ools before they join
	university.			(Longman)
	a) teach	b) are teaching	c) were taught	d) are taught
9	This road	very often as it is so	dangerous.	
	a) is used	b) isn't used	c) doesn't use	d) isn't using
10	Don't forget to	come on time when yo	ou to come f	or the interview.
	a) ask	b) are asked	c) asked	d) are asking
11	Trees absorb ca	arbon dioxide and	us oxygen.	(Longman)
	a) are given	b) is giving	c) gives	d) give
12	The road to sch	nool last week	in celebration of the	new year.
	a) is paved	b) is paving	c) was paved	d) has paved
13	A very nice me	alfor us every	Friday at my grandfa	ther's house.
	a) had been pro	epared	b) was preparing	
	c) is prepared		d) is preparing	
14	L Health	by smoking that caus	es many fatal disease	أمراض مميتة ع
	a) has affected	b) is affected	c) affects	d) was affected
15	My car	for any damage from	now and then.	
	a) serviced	b) had been service	ed c) has serviced	d) is serviced
16	3 Children	more care, especial	ly at the nursery stag	e. (Longman)
	a) are given	b) to give	c) is given	d) given

17	The service fee	in this hotel	in the bill.	
	a) included	b) is included	c) is including	d) includes
18	During the mo	nthly school party, cl	ever students	nice presents
	a) are giving	b) are given	c) were giving	d) had been given
19	The flowers	by our garden	er who is very active.	3
	a) are usually w	atered	b) usually water	
	c) usually are wa	atered	d) have usually w	/atered
20	Electric cars	in Saudi Arabia	a for the first time in h	istory.
	a) make	b) are making	c) made	d) are made
21	Some kinds of I	mobiles in E	gypt.	
	a) are made	b) are making	c) have made	d) had been made
22		our friends		
	a) meet	b) are met	c) are meeting	d) have met
23	The plane	off before we ar	rive at the airport.	
	a) will take off	b) takes	c) took	d) had taken
24	Remember that	t after youtl	he contract, you won'	t be able to change
	your mind.			
	a) had signed	b) will sign	c) signed	d) sign
25		by dad because his		
	a) is always puni	ished	b) is always punis	hing
00	c) always punish	nes	d) always is punis	hed
26	How many babi	es in this ho	ospital every day?	
07	a) were born	b) was born	c) have born	d) are born
21	Never			
20	d) ne is	b) is he	c) does he	d) he goes
20	a) nooded	ney, I will ask you to I	end me some.	
20	a) needed	b) need	c) am needing	d) was needing
23			ed in the storm last n	
30	•			d) Had
30		nt at the party, but no		25 20 1 2 1
31	The Earth goes:	b) was hurting	c) is nurt	d) didn't get hurt
01	a) habit	b) timetable	sentence is a	
32			c) fact rprise. This means that	d) hope
-	a) all the student	ts told him about the	rprise. This means tha	ιτ
	b) he was told at		01130	
		s were told about the	surprise	
		all the students about		
	-			

Test yourself

_{Pait} ∤ (Lessons 3 & 4)

)	Vocabulary			
1	I was about to g	o missing when I met	t a/an of d	who البدو who
	led me to the wa	ay.		14
	a) society	b) community	c) tribe	d) association
2	My boss is very	kind-hearted. He sho	wed much	with the difficult
	situation which	I face.		
	a) admiration	b) empathy	c) inspiration	d) appearance
3	He was taken to	prison as he	much money to p	eople and couldn't
	repay it.			
	a) lent	b) borrowed	c) owed	d) owned
4	When a lion's pa	wis discove	ered, it is a sign that	a lion is close.
	a) signal	b) remark	c) print	d) signature
5	My young broth	ner worksan	accountant in a lar	ge company.
	a) for		c) out	d) as
6		nimals must be prohib	to keep th يُمنع	em alive.
	a) Fating	b) Fishing	c) Hunting	d) Guarding
7	The course will	help you to develop	and improve your r	eading and
	listening			
	a) skulls	b) risks	c) skills	d) controls
8	The governmen	nt assured that there	should be cameras	in all the shops to
	everyt	hing happens.		
	a) monitor		c) list	d) compare
q	My brother	to live in a large		
•	a) desire	b) desires	c) desiring	d) desirable
10	My brother's	is to live in a la	rge palace in a Euro	opean country.
	a) desire	b) desires	c) desiring	d) desirable
1.	A of p	anic has spread over	the country after th	e explosions.
•	a) movement	b) disappearance	c) cattle	d) sense
15	Tourism	thousands of peop	le who are respons	ible for their families.
	a) tracks	b) monitors	c) works	d) employs
45		n and wealth give pe		
11	a) shame	b) prestige	c) weakness	d) greed
4	4 My father is act	ting as a of o	ur big family. He is	the one who takes care
1	of us all.	ung as a		
	a) guardian	b) guarder	c) spy	d) gardener
	a, gaararar			_

13	l asked my assis	tant to get me the mo	ostinformatio	n about the
	comp منافس rival	any.		
	a) recently	b) recent	c) modern	d) ancient
	Language			
16	Some plants	naturally in diffe	erent parts of the world	d.
	a) are grown	b) are growing	c) grow	d) growing
17	At my first day a	it school, I to	go with my mother to	know the way.
	a) have	b) had	c) would have	d) has
18	We know that p	lants energy	from the sun to make	their food.
	a) use	b) uses	c) are used	d) using
19	As it in	the timetable, the me	eting starts at 9 a.m.	. 3
	a) is shown	b) showed	c) shows	d) show
20	Many qualificati	ons and much experie	ence to get hi	gher position in th
	company.			
	a) are needing	b) need	c) needed	d) are needed
21	The room	every afternoon.	-,	w) are riceded
	at is cleaning	b) is cleaned	c) is being cleaned	d) cleans
22	The thief	and taken to prison	vesterday	d) cicaris
	a) is arrested	b) was arresting	c) was arrested	d) has arrested
23	Today, lions	by the Maasai fro	m hunting parties	di llas allested
	a) protect	b) have protected	c) are protected	d) were protected
4	Mohamed Salah	all over the	world	were protected
			c) knows	d) is known
5	Football matche	s by millions	of people all over the	u) is known
	a) are watched	h) were watched	c) watch	world currently.
6	Money	into our country by to	ourists who come to en	d) watching
	civilisation.	into our country by to	runsis who come to en	joy our great
		b) is brought	c) has brought	
7	to go	with my friends of	c) has brought	d) were brought
	a) allowed	b) didn't allow	ter 9 p.m. as it's a famil	y rule.
R	If I tired	U) diditt allow	c) am not allowed	d) wasn't allowed
0	a) fools	, I will visit my doctor.		
	a) feels		c) felt	d) had felt
9	mportant matte	تعجل hastily السنة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعا	We should take بشكل ما	our time.
	a) aren't discussir	9	b) don't discuss	
	c) aren't discusse		d) are discussing	
U	a) I examined my	and had my eyes exa	mined. It means that	•
			105	
		oculist examined my eyere to examine my eyes		
	WITH OTHER WAS THE	TE LO EXAFTIEDE MV EVES		

Chapter 2

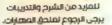
Vocabulary

V OCUDATAL Y			
agree	يوافق	inside	في داخل
anyone else	أي شخص آخر	magistrate	قلض
bury	يدغن	map	خريطة
catch	يقبض على	papers	أوراق/مستندات
clue	دلیل/مفتاح لحل لغز	prepare	يعدايجهر
cross	يعبر	ready	جاهز
describe	يصف	road	طريق
directions	الاتجاهات	rob	يسرق
escape	يمرب	safe	آمن
excited	متحمس	secret	سر
head	رئيس	servant	خادم
hide	يخفى	shout	يصيح/ يصرخ/ صيحة
important	مهم	the rest	البقية
include	يشمل	the rest	

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

run inside	يركض في الداخل	seem to	يبدو أن
call out	يصرخ	look for	يبحث عن
run out	40	longer than	أطول من
feel better	يشعر بتجسن	ready to	مستعد ال
on a boat	على متن قارب	prepare for	يجهزك
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	send to	يرسل إلى
ask into	يطلب من شخص الدخول	keep secret	يحفظ السو
interested in	مهتم ب	Recp secret	

1	The of	the company is respo	ensible for everything	g in it.
	a) crew	b) magistrate	c) head	d) robber
2	They stole the	money but couldn't	from the poli	ce.
	a) run	b) escape	c) rob	d) arrest
3	The investigat	ors could finally find a	to the muro	ler.
	a) clue	b) crew	c) glue	d) lock
4	The fo	und that the accused	man was guilty not i	nnocent.
	a) servant	b) captain	c) magistrate	d) thief
5	The of	the ship were all so fri	iendly and helpful.	
	a) staff	b) clue	c) pirates	d) crew
6	Jim went to lo	ok for the money	by the captain ar	nd his men.
	a) kidnapped	b) robbed	c) hijacked	d) stolen
7	The rich man h	nas too manyv	vho do everything fo	or him at home.
	a) servants	b) pirates	c) heads	d) masters
8	It was cool, but	t we camewhe	en it started to rain.	
	a) outside	b) inside	c) across	d) on
9	l asked the wai	ter toa cup of	coffee for me.	
	a) repair	b) look	c) prepare	d) arrange
10	When the thiev	ves heard the police co	oming, they ran in di	fferent
	a) directors	b) decisions	c) sites	d) directions
11	The list of the g	guests my nam	ie.	
	a) contains	b) includes	c) consists	d) encloses
12	The policeman	asked the scared won	nan to the m	an who tried to rob
	her.			
		b) persuade		
13	The archeologi	sts managed to find a	very valuable	treasure.
	a) hidden	b) hid	c) hide	d) used
14	After th	e dead soldiers, they a	attacked the enemie	s severely.
	a) arresting	b) burying	c) feeding	d) imprisoning
15	Some young m	nen the old lad	ly of her jewellery la	st night. (Longman)
	a) took	b) robbed	c) stole	d) gave





Writing tips

When we write about a person we are interested in, we can follow these steps:

- 1 Mention his/her name, date and place of birth.
- Write his/her job and what they are doing nowadays.
- Write why you admire him/her (Their achievements).
- 4 How they helped their countries, families and people.
- 5 Why you think they are important.

Model Essay

Someone we are all proud of (Magdi Yacoub)

Introduction

Magdi Yacoub is one of the world's most respected heart surgeons. He was born on November 16, 1935 in Belbis, Alshraqya, Egypt. His father was a general surgeon. He inspired him to become a doctor. At the age of four, he witnessed the death of his aunt due to heart disease. Her death, in her early 20s, inspired him to specialise in heart surgery. He entered the Cairo University College of Medicine at the age of 15 on a full scholarship and graduated in 1957, qualifying as a doctor.

In 1968, he spent a year as an associate professor at the University of Chicago. He returned to London a year later to resume his work in the UK. In 1974, he performed the first open heart surgery in Nigeria. In 1980, he performed a heart transplant on Derrick Morris, who became the longest surviving heart transplant patient. He survived 25 years after the surgery. In 1995, he founded the UK-based children's

Main body charity 'Chain of Hope' which treats children.

Yacoub retired from his work in London hospitals in 2001, he has also devoted significant time to his charity, Chain of Hope. In 2008, he established the Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation. The foundation was able to establish the Aswan Heart Centre in 2009 to provide free medical services for those in need.

Conclusion

Yacoub is married to Marianne, who is of German descent. They have three children. His oldest daughter, Lisa, works as the UK coordinator for Chain of Hope, while his youngest daughter is a doctor specialising in tropical medicine.

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man cannot live in society without considering the interests(1) of others as well as their own interests. The word "society" means a group of people with the same laws and the same way of life. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions should not be harmful to others. One man's decisions may so easily harm another person. For example, a motorist may be in a hurry to get to a friend's house. He sets out(2), driving at full speed. One careless motorist has struck another car. Too many road accidents happen through the thoughtlessness⁽³⁾ of selfish drivers. We have governments, the police and the law courts to prevent or punish such criminal acts. But in addition, all men ought to observe certain rules of conduct⁽⁴⁾. Every man ought to behave with consideration for other people.

They ought not to steal, cheat, or destroy the property of others. There is no place for this sort of behaviour in a civilised society. Men in a free society may think as they please. They may even choose their own government. In return for these privileges(5), they ought not to act selfishly. They always ought to respect the rights of others. The happiness of a community depends on the behaviour of its individual members.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The main idea of the passage clearly shows that ..
 - a) every man ought to behave as he likes
 - b) men ought to act selfishly
 - c) no one can have his own way all the time
 - d) many road accidents happen through careful drivers
- 2 In a free society,
 - a) people usually want to have their own way
 - b) a man never considers the interests of others
 - c) people are told what to think by government rules
 - d) everyone ought to behave selfishly



(5) استيازات

(3) عدم مراعاة الأخرين

(4) **سلوك**

[1] مصالح (2) ينطلق

3	It is to respect the rights of of	thers.	
	a) right and thoughtless	b) not really necess	
	c) very selfish	d) right and though	htful
4	Members of a civilised society usually	V ++***********************************	
	a) steal and cheat	b) harm the interes	
	c) behave in a responsible way	d) disrespect the ri	ghts of others
5	The underlined word "its" refers to	dholadanaaa g	
	a) happiness b) behaviour		d) village
6	There is no place forin a civil	lised society.	
	a) development b) accidents	c) bad behaviours	
7	To stop criminal acts and punish tho	se who do them, we m	ust have
	a) governments b) the police	c) law courts	d) all mentioned
	Choose the correct Arabic translati		
1	Many famous Egyptians are admired	for their intelligence, c	reation and their
	ability to do great and charity work.		
	وخلقهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة ومادية.	ريين المشاهير بالإعجاب لذكائهم	 ا يحظى العديد من المص
	بداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخبرية.	بير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإ	ليحظى العديد من مشاه
	هم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.	ير العرب بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداء	🤇 عحظى العديد من مشاه
	وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.	لين المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم	طى العديد من الممثّ
2	The second secon	le who are in bad need	of blood after
	accidents or who have critical cases.		
	نين هم في أمس الحاجة إلى النم بعد الحوادث أو الذين	برع بالدم العديد من الأشــخاص الذ	 ا يستطيع أن يساعد التي
			يعانون من حالات عادية
	ين هم في أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين	ع بالدم العديد من الأشـخاص الذ	b لا يمكن أن يساعد التبر
			يعانون من حالات حرجة.
	ن هم في أمس الحاجة إلى الغذاء بعد الحوادث أو الذين	ساعد العديد من الأشــخاص الذير	التبرع بالدم يمكن ان يد
			يعانون من حالات حرجة.
	ن هم في أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعــد الحوادث أو الذين	ع بالدم العديد من الأشــخاص الذي	يعانون من حالات حرجة.
3	Human beings are the greatest thre	at to the survival of end	dangered species
	because of the effects of climate cha	ange. قاء الأنواع المعددة بالانقراض بس	د) البشر هم أكبر تهديدًا لن
		عاء الاتواع المهددة بالانقراض بسر اء الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض من .	
	خلال اتار تغير المناخ.	اء الالواع المعددة بالانفراص من .	الما المساور الما الما الما الما الما الما الما الم

البشر هم أكبر تمديدًا لبقاء الأنواع غير المهددة بالانقراض بسبب أثار تغير المناخ.
 البشر هم أكبر تمديدًا لبقاء الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض من خلال آثار تغير الطقس.

- 4 Our parents exert great efforts to please us and provide a happy, secure life for us. We really owe much to them.
 - آباؤنا يبذلون جهودًا كبيرة الإسعادنا وتوفير بيئة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًا مدينون لهم بالكثير.
 - ل إباؤنا جهودًا عادية لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن بالفعل دائنون لهم بالكثير.
 - يحاول آباؤنا محاولات كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًا مدينون لهم بالقليل.
 - d) يبذل أباؤنا جهودًا كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقًّا مدينون لهم بالكثير.
- 5 At the international level, Salah represented Egypt in the youth competitions, winning a bronze medal in the under 20 African Cup of Nations.
 - ن على الصعيد الدولى، مثل صلاح مصر في مسابقات الشباب، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية في بطولة كأس الأمم
 الإفريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.
 - في المستوى الدولي، مثل صلاح مصر في مساباقات الكبار، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية في بطولة كأس الأمم
 الإفريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.
 - على المستوى الدولي، مثل صلاح مصر في مناسبات الشباب، وحصل على الميدالية الذهبية في بطولة كأس العالم
 الإفريقي تحت ٢٠ سنة.
 - خلى الصعيد المحلى، مثل صلاح مصر في مقارنات الشباب، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية في بطولة كأس الأمم
 الإفريقية تحت ، ٢ سنة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 يُعتبر محمد صلاح، لاعب كرة القدم المصرى المشهور عالميًا، لاعبًا موهوبًا ذا أخلاق حميدة.
- a) Regard Mohamed Salah the world-famous African footballer, a talented player with good manners.
- b) Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian handballer, is considered a talented player with good manners.
- c) Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, is considered a talented player with good morals.
- d) Consider Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, a talented player without good values.

7 التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية.

- a) Learning is the base for progress and development for the people and cities of the world, whether developed or developing.
- b) Education is the basis for progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.
- c) Teaching is the basic for progress and development for the groups and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.
- d) Education is the basis for applying and development for the groups and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.

- 8 لكى نعيش الحياة بسعادة وارتياح، هناك سبيل واحد و هو أن يتم منحنا الفرصة الحقيقية للحصول على تعليم جيد.
- a) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.
- b) In order to live unhappily and uncomfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.
- c) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the false opportunity to get a good education.
- d) To live happy and comfortable, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a bad education.
- 9 إن مصر في انتظار جهود العلماء وأهل الفكر والإبداع وتتطلع إلى أبنائها المخلصين لاتخاذ خطوات فعالة للارتقاء بالأمة.
- a) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars and the people of thinking and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.
- b) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take slow steps to advance the nation.
- c) That Egypt is waiting for the efforts of its sons, scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take fast paces to advance the nation.
- d) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars, intellectuals and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.
 - 10 على الرغم من التقدم العلمي الكبير، ما زالت هناك أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات تتعرض لخطر الانقراض.
- a) Despite the great scientific progress, there are still many species of animals at risk of extinction.
- b) Although the great science advancement, there are still many species of animals at risk of extinction.
- c) In spite of the great scientific progress, there are still many spices of animals at risk of getting out.
- d) Despite the great scientific advancement, there are not still many species of animals at risk of dying.

The positive effe	ects of helping p	eople.			
***************************************	***************************************		*****************	***************************************	****************************
*********		********			***************************************
******	*************************************				****************

***************************************		***************************************			
Lused more than	I used the right	_ l used a t		I wrote the	l used the righ
4 new vocabulary.	structure.	Sellfell	ce.	2011212310111	

				40
Cł	noose the Two co	orrect answers of	the Five options:	
1	There was a me	eting to discuss a	long-term plan. The synor	nyms of the word
	"long-term" are	and	220000000000000 d	
	a) continuing	b) temporary	c) long-lasting d) passing	e) short-lived
2	My uncle is a gr	eat expert	the field of remote sens	sing.
	a) in	b) with	c) on d) by	e) for
	oose the correct	t answer from a,	b, c or d:	
3	I don't know the	e reason	his frequent absence thes	e days.
	a) for	b) with	c) why limit on highways.	d) of
4	Drivers mustn't	exceed the	limit on highways.	
	a) spot	b) speed	c) fast	d) fear
5	In our company	, there are a lot of	cameras to ever	vthing happens
	a) prevent	b) change	c) protect	d) monitor
6	The rescue team	shouldered the	for saving people	from the fire.
	a) stability	b) ability	c) probability	d) responsibility
7	After the accide	nt, he needed blo	od to stay alive.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	a) transplant	b) transfusion	c) transplantation	d) orientation
8	After the earthq	uake, many of the	epeople are still i	n a serious
	condition.		•	
	a) ambitious	b) injured	c) reported	d) dead
9	As well as	abroad to ear	n money, he got a universi	ty degree.
	a) travel	b) travelling	c) travelled	d) travels
10	He came to my h	ouse and	tea with me.	
	a) had	b) had had	c) having	d) have had
11	Salaht	he most importar	nt goal for Egypt that sent	it to the World Cur
	Finals.			
	a) scored	b) has scored	c) scores	d) was scoring
12	My daughter	her grandn	nother as usual.	9
	a) is visited	b) is visiting	c) was visiting	d) visits
13	My boss likes Mr		he hard-working.	
	a) is always	b) always is	c) is never	d) never is
14	He to si	t down until he h	ad apologised to the teach	ner.

a) didn't allow b) isn't allowed c) wasn't allowed d) was allowed

- ▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon(1) because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow⁽²⁾ water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can use to hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous⁽³⁾ sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Ais an animal that attacks and kills octopuses. d) magician c) chameleon b) predator 18 When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's c) covered in stick d) unable to move b) in danger a) easy 19 The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both b) eat the same food a) swim in the same way d) can change their skin colour c) catch small fish 20 The octopus can separate one of its arms to b) renew it a) distract the predator d) lay eggs c) catch a prey (1) حرباء (3) سام

21	1 The oc	topus can shoo	t ink into the	water which		
	a) kills	the attackers			de from the att	rackors
	c) pollu	utes the water		d) attracts or	PVC	
22	2 Octopi	uses don't have	teeth or share	claws to defe	end themselve	95
	a) so, th	ney are eaten ea	silv	o ciavis to acid	.na tricinscive	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	b) how	ever, they have o	other ways to	keen enemies	314/31/	
	c) more	eover, they are no	ot brave	neep chernies	avvay	
	d) that	s why they are a	hout to extinc	+		
23	The be	st title for this pa	assage is "			
	a) The I	Magician Octopu				,
	c) The S	Seahed	2303	b) The Sea Wo		edator
> 24			10.1		<	
24	Choose	e the correct En	iglish transla	ition:		
	جاد والصبر	ن الشهرة نتاج للعمل الـ	أن تكون مشهورًا؛ لأ	لكن ليس من السمل	مشمورًا في يوم ما، و	- يحلم كل منا أن يكون
						Stille all this is
	a) All of	us dream of bei	ng famous on	e day, but it is	easy to be well	-known.
	peca	use fame is a pro	oduct of hard v	work, patience	and also suffer	ring
	D) All of	us dream of bei	ing famous on	e day, but it is	not easy to be	famous
	peca	use rame comes	from hard wo	ork, patience, ar	nd also sufferin	O.
	C) Every	of us dreams of	being famous	one day, but i	t is not easy to	he famous
	becau	use fame is a pro	duct of hard v	vork natient a	nd also sufforin	De lamous,
1	d) Each	of us dreams of	being famous	one day but it	is not passate	19.
1	becar	use fame is a pro	oduct of hards	work patience	is not easy to	be infamous;
25	Choose	the correct Ar	abic translati	ion.	arid also surier	ing.
		ays, the Egyptia			htomaion to	
	provide	es them with ed	ucation jobs	and books a	itention to wo	men and
	412.0	Il Zale Ne 1991 - 9-	deation, jobs	and nealth cal	e.	
		بم والوظائف والرعاية الد	مراة وتومر لها النعلي	سرية اهتمامنا كبيرا للا	، تولى الحكومة المم	في الوقت الماضي
	عية.	والوظائف والرعاية الصد	ة وتوفر لها التعليم	بة اهتمامنا كبيرًا للمرأ	، تولى الوزارة المصري	(b) في الوقت الحاضر،
	سحية.	م والوظائف والرعاية الع	برأة وتوفر لها التعليا	رية اهتمامنا كبيرًا لله	، تولى الحكومة المص	ح) في المقت الحاضر،
		والرعابة الصحية.	ها التعليم والوظائف	صغيدًا للمرأة وتوفد لم	بة الموسة اهتماما	d) الآن، تولى الحكوه
26	Write ar	n essay of abou	I ONE HUND	DED VND EIE	TV (150)	الان، بونی الحجود
	followin	ia:	it OITE HOND	WED WIND LIL	1 1 (150) Word	is on the
		of charities in E	an und			
	1110 1010	of charties in E	уург.			
	**************				**********************	*******************************
	*****************		************************	***************************************		***************************************
						لمزيد مـن التدريبــات لـ
		•			286 U	الرجوع لنهاية الختاب د
	191	Assess your progress	- 50° a	50 64%	65 84%	85:100%
	-	****	Chiely signife	Practice more	Take paigin takens	Well dones
96	Unit 2					

Units 182

Al-Adwaa Test

	_	
_	ത	_

		4.1	El	
Che	oose the Two co	rrect answers of the	e Five options:	
1	I have lost my w	allet. Can you help n	ned) coarch for	e) worry about
	a) look for	b) research for c) loo	k after d) search for	c of "rolaving"
2	Staying in bed i	s very relaxing after I	nard work. The synonym	SOI TELEXITY
	-	al .		
	a) noisy	b) tiring c) co	mfortable d) calm	e) worrying
Ch	oose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	ont
3	We should all tr	y our best in order n	ot toour enviro	onment.
	a) predict	b) save	c) protect	d) endanger
4	II	boach to lie in the st	in to	
	a) sunshine	b) sun power	c) sunbathe	d) sunbath
5	Th - 440 in 14/25 1/	ory Louidi	n't even find my chair.	
		h) ampty	c) polluted	d) crowded
6	Mandraam is to	live in a quiet and	place with no pr	Opiems.
	a) poscoful	h) noisy	c) crowded	u) duli
7	My father was	very ill and we had to	measure his blood	
	-1 4	h) ctrocc	c) pleasure	u) pressure
8	Camadians are	those who have a/a	n of humour and	make people laugh
	V to the	h) conco	c) smell	a) impact
c	la in also	of the governmen	nt to employ the fresh gr	العريبيون الجدد aduales
	a) manuamant	h) employment	c) lovalty	(1) (eshousing)
10	The police arre	sted the thief while	he the scene of	r the crime.
	a) had left	b) was leaving	c) was left	a) Has left
4		as the transfer of	novol called "Al-AVAM"	
	-) \Albila	b) During	C) Just as	(1) AALIGIT
4	O Cho	in Cairo for ten vears	. Later, she got married a	IIId IIIoved to I
'	2) lived	h) has lived	c) had been lived	d) was living
4	a Lesiah I	a better time last	vear.	
	a) have	b) had had	c) was had	d) had
4	4 Monna	cheerful. The smi	le never leaves her face.	
1	a) is always	h) always is	c) isn't always	d) always isn't
		noke, but now he		
7	a) isn't	b) doesn't	c) didn't	d) wasn't
	R: Yes	een Mona lately?	on my way to work the of	ther day.
		b) had seen	c) have seen	d) was seeing
	a) saw	D) Had score	•	

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered and <u>isolated</u>. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation. Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environment along the Red Sea Coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving, they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist anywhere else in the world. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar.

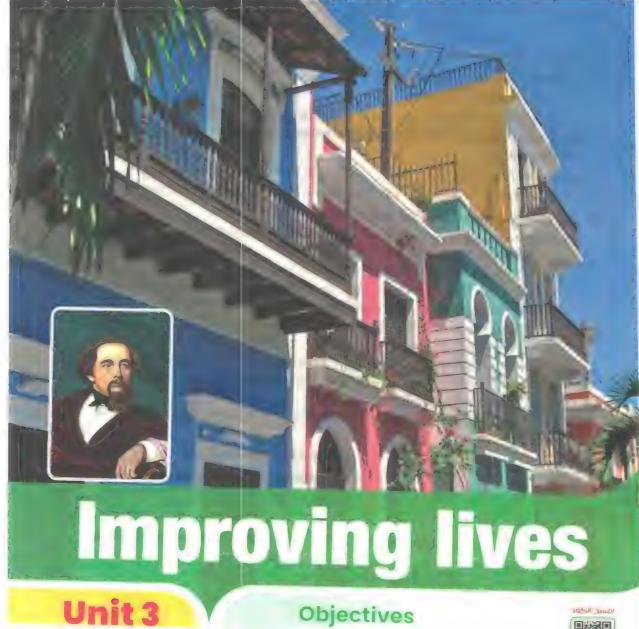
The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the unique animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife, including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand which seems rare and exotic because it's different from any other sand.

		and the second second	7 4 01 01	
17	is the an	imals and plants in	n the environmen	t.
	a) Ecotourism	b) Biodiversity	c) Ecosystem	d) Geology
18	The Komodo Na	tional Park is know	n for its t	hat is found only there.
	a) pink dragon	bipink sand	c) ecotourism	d) komodo dragon
19	The underlined v	word "isolated" me	ans	a nomedo diagon
	a) near	b) remote		d) dangerous
20	Ecotourists are to	aught how to avoid	d damaging rare f	ish and coral reefs
	when			
	a) going shoppin	g	b) going diving	
	c) catching fish		d) sightseeing	
21	To make sure tha	t ecotourism is sus	stainable,	of people can visit the
	Galapagos Island			
	a) a limited numb	er	b) a lot	
	c) much		d) an unlimited	number
_				

22	A suitable title for the pass	age is "	. •		
	a) Tourism around the world	d b) E	cotourism an	d its importanc	e
	c) Unique places in Egypt	d) F	low to protec	ct coral reefs	·
23	Egypt aims at protecting the	he environmer	nt along	by develop	ing
	ecotourism.				
	a) the Red Sea Coast		he Nile banks		
	c) the deserts	d) t	he Mediterra	nean Sea Coast	
24	Choose the correct Engli	sh translatior	n:		
	a) Every student must work the TV in order to achieve b) Every student must work of the TV in order to ach the TV in order to achieve every student must work front of the TV in order to	k hard and was re everything his k hard and not werything they re hard and not word and not to achieve everything they elief in your over the hard and not work hard and not his translation elief in your over his hard and not work.	te his time site dreams of ii waste their ti g they dream aste his time dream of in the waste his/he ything he/she wn power, yo	ting for minutes the future. me sitting for he of in the future. Sitting for hours he future. The dreams of in the cannot achie was a section of the cannot achie achie was a section of the cannot achie achie achieves a section of the cannot achieve achieves a section of the cannot achieve achieves a section of the cannot achieve achieve achieves a section of the cannot achieve achieve achieves a section of the cannot achieve achie	ours in front behind the r hours in he past. ve success
1		أو السعادة.	بكنك تحقيق النجاح	التصديق بقوتك، لا يم	(۵) بوجود الثقة او
				لتصديق بقوتك، لا يما	
		السعادة.	ك تحقيق النجاح أو	لإيمان بقوتك، لا يمكنا	(۵) بدون الثقة او ا
2	6 Write an essay of about	ONE HUNDR	ED AND FIFT	ry (150) words	on the
	following:				
	A review of a charity tha	t helps the col	mmunity.		*************************
	***************************************		*****************************		********************
	***************************************		*****************	***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
		******************************	*******************	925993201777474475547777474777	
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,	*********************		

	•••••	***********************	***********************		pg:***************************
				war and the second of the seco	
	Assess your	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85:100%
	progress	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!





الوحدة الرقيمي

: An extract from David Copperfield Reading

: A paragraph on a book character; A summary of a story Writing

Listening : A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books

Speaking: Discussing a topic

Language: Past simple and present perfect

Life Skills : Empathy



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

debts (n)	ديون	owe $(v) - d^*$	یدین لـ
earn (v) – ed	یکسب (مالًا)	plump (adj)	ممتلئ الجسم
merchant (n)	تاجر	prison (n)	سجن
miserable (adj)	بائس	rats (n)	فئران

l owe you a favour because you helped me.



المُرْبَة المُوصِ الاستماعُ والقراءة قم بمسخ الصورة على هاتفك المُرْبَة المُرابِة المُرابِق المُرابِق المُرابِق المُرابِق المُرابِق المُرابِة المُرابِق المُرابِقِيقِ الم



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

Vocabulary on Redui	ing & Listoning	, TOXES	
arrange (v) – d	يرتب	honest (adj)	أمين
borrow (v) – ed	يقترض/يستعير	hurt (v)	يؤذى
break (v)	يكسر	miser (n)	بخيل
brilliant (adj)	رائع	misery (n)	البخل/البؤس
building (n)	مبنى	modern (adj)	حييث
criminals (n)	مجرمون	parents (n)	الوالدان
deserve (v) – d	يستحق	penny (n)	بنس بريطاني (عملة نقدية)
die (v) – d	يموت	remove (v) – d	يزيل
dirty (adj)	قذر	reward (v) – ed	يكافئ
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف	spend (v)	ينفق مالًا/يقضى وقتـًا
empty (adj) (v) (y) – (ied)	فارغ/يفرغ	storyteller (n)	كاتب روايات/قُصئاص
entertain (v) – ed	يسلى	support (v) – ed	معم
entertainment (n)	تسلية	theatre (n)	مسرح
factory (n)	مصنع	ticket (n)	تذكرة
floors (n)	طوابق	tired (adj)	متعب
hard (adj)	شاق	Aurina (a)	توءمان
hate (v) – d	يكره	twins (n)	Ominge

Workbook Vocabulary

character (n)	شخصية	opportunity (n)	·
childhood (n)	مرحلة الطفولة	review (v) – ed	فرصة
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	similar (adj)	يراجع
hide (v)	· · يخفى	skill (n)	مشابه
lucky (adj)	سعيد الحظ	temple (n)	مهارة
machines (n)	-		rise
Transfer strange (11)	্ৰাধ্য	unusual (adj)	غير عادى

Vocabulary Check point

			or u.	
6	My uncle is a v	vell-known	who buys and sells go	oods in large amounts.
	a) customer	b) merchant	c) criminal	d) assistant
2	You have to fill	the bottle. It is	000000000 4	- Manacarit
	a) full	b) plump	c) empty	d) crowded
3	l asked my mo		the dirt from my clo	thes.
	a) reward		c) support	d) remove
4	I think that his		but not the san	ne.
		b) twin		d) dirty
5	It is to	work in such a bad	and unfriendly atmos	phere.
	a) wonderful	b) miserable	c) adaptable	d) tired
6	went to the	with my frien	ds to watch the new p	olav.
	a) cinema	b) club		
7	All of the world			ople after this disaster.
	a) support	b) borrow	c) break	d) spend
8		hcheeks. T		
	a) giant	b) tiny		d) plump
9	We need somel	oody who is complet	tely for this jo	ob.
	a) dishonest	b) miserable	c) honest	d) cruel
10	We were very	with the goo	d weather on our holi	day.
	a) unlucky	b) dirty	c) tired	d) lucky
				-

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

become ill	يصبح مريضًا/يعرض	reward for	يكافئ على
break the law	يخالف القانون	similar to	متشابه مع
make clothes	يصنع ملابس	die of	يموت بسبب
pay back	یرد دیثا	take away	يلُخذ بعيدًا
look after	یعتنی ب	take home	يأذذ للمنزل
owe money to	يدين بالمال لـ	tired-looking lady	سيدة تبدو متعنبة
a problem with	مشكلة مع – في	find out	يكتشف
buy from	یشتری من	give to	يعطى ا
rat race	تنافس شدید	sit with	يجلس مع
arrange for	يرتب من أجل	entertain with	يئسلى ب
break the record	يحطم الرقم القياسى	know for	يعرف شخصنا ب

Derivatives

Verb		Nous	n	Adj	ective
arrange	يرتب	arranger arrangement	معبد/منظّم ترتیب/تنظیم	arranged	مع:د/منظُم
deaden وت/ألم die	يخمد/يمنع ص يموت	death dead	مو <i>ت</i> میت	deadly (a	ميت مميت (مسبب للموت
earn	یکسب	earner earning	مصدر دخل/عائل عائد/دخل	earned	م'كتسب/م'ستحق
hate	يكره	hate hatred	عداوة كره/بغض	hated	کریه/بغیض
imprison	يسجن	prison prisoner imprisonment	سجن سجين حبس/اعتقال	imprisona	able مستحق للسجن
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن ا

		merchandise	تاجر بضائع	merchantable merchant	صالح للتجارة e تجارى
	O make and the state and the first and top gap tags	miser misery	بخیل بخل/ب ۇ س	miserly	قليل/شحيح
owe	يدين			owing	مدين
reward	يكافأ	reward rewarding	مكافأة مجـرْ	unrewarded	بدون مقابل

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
arrange	يرتب/ينظم	organise/tidy/put in order	disarrange/disorder پیعثر
borrow	يستلف	obtain/hire	lend/return/pay يُقرض/يدفع/يرد
dirty	قذر	unclean/soiled/ contaminated	clean/spotless/pure/clear نظيف
empty	فارغ	vacant/blank/unoccupied	مملوء full/occupied/filled
hard	شاق/صلب	tough/solid/strong	رقیق/مرهف soft/delicate
hate	يكره	dislike/detest/loathe	love/adore/like يحبايعشق
honest	أمين/مخلص	trustful/sincere/candid	dishonest/deceitful/insincere خاثن/غیر امین
miserable	بائس	unhappy/sad/depressed	cheerful/happy معيد/مبتمج
plump	معتلئ الجسم	chubby/obese/fat	thin/skinny/lean
tired	متعب	exhausted/fatigued/weary	active/lively/fresh نشيط



Vocabulary Check point 2

1	I asked my neigh	bour to look	my children when l	was out.
	a) after	b) up	c) for	d) ahead
2	l am very misera	ble as Ia l	ot of money to many p	eople.
	a) lent	b) owe	c) borrow	d) own
3	The champion m	nanaged to	his own record in the	last race.
	a) miss		b) own	
	c) break		d) take	
4	He stole a lot of	money, so he was :	sent to for 10	years.
	a) person	•	b) prison	
	c) imprisonment		d) court	
5			whatever they do. The	antonym of "hate"
	is			
	a) detest	b) dislike	c) believe	d) adore
6	As I had a lot of	work yesterday, I w	as very tired. The word	d"tired" is the same
	as			
	a) active		b) exhausted	
	c) lively		d) happy	
7	Hams and Hana	are identical		е.
	a) twins		b) adults	
	c) twice		d) tunes	
8	I lost my wallet	in the metro; who	ever finds it will get a/a	n of
	500 pounds.			
	a) reward	b) award	c) rewarding	d) unrewarded
9	Tourism is the r	nost important	of hard currency	for Egypt.
	a) earner		b) earing	
	c) earned		d) earn	
10	My father died		er as a result of heavy	
	a) with	b) out	c) of	d) by

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read

	- عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) work - عمل هندسي او فني او أدبي (اسم يعد)	- I've got so much work to do. - Dickens' works reflect the suffering of poor people.
1	job وظيفة/مهنة (اسم يعد)	When she left college, she got a job as an editor in a publishing company.
ľ	Career الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد	She manages to successfully combine family life and a career.
	profession مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة)	He left the teaching profession in 1965 to start his own business.
	machine ماكينة/آلة	The factory bought a new machine to increase its production.
2	أداة يدوية	The carpenter uses many tools such as a hammer and a saw.
	instrument أدوات قياس/طبيب/موسيقية	The piano is one of my favourite musical instruments.
	pay مرتب/لجر/يدفع	It is not a good job, but the pay is good.
3	اجر يومى أو أسبوعي wage	His wage is 100 pounds a day.
	salary لجر شهری (غالبا من شرکة أو مؤسسة)	The salaries of the government are not enough.
	fee اتعاب	Lawyers' fees have become sky-high nowadays.
4	a room حجرة	I phoned to book a room in the hotel.
	مكان/فراغ - (اسم لا يعد) room	The table takes up too much room.
5	miss * تفوته مواصلات/يفتقد شخصنا	He missed the train as he got up late.I missed my uncle very much.

Our national team lost the last match.

lose*

The team is training well hoping to win the next win يفوز/يُكْسِب - (مكانة/شيئًا) match. Our team was easily beaten in the first round of beat the competition. يهزم/يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق) یکتسب/یحصل علی شیء معنوی مفید gain I gained a lot of weight while I was on holiday. (خبرة - معرفة - معلومات - شعرة -الوزن - السرعة) How much do you earn, if you don't mind me asking? یکسب (قوتًا أو رزقًا) مقابل عمل earn - You'll have to make some hard decisions to solve this problem. - After months without rain, the ground was too hard (adj) hard to plough. صعب/خشن/نشيط أو حماسي - Success in sport requires hard work and a great deal of determination. She has worked hard all her life and became hard (adv) a great person. I hardly know your friend. I met him only once. hardly (adv) بالكاد the poor = poor people Poor people should have a stable earner to support their families. the + adi. = adi. + noun Vocabulary Check point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 The young people now dream of a successful d) machine c) career a) work b) location 2 The violin is my favourite musical d) instrument

a) tool

a) wages

a) gains

a) hard

4 My father

b) machine

b) salary

b) wins

b) hardy

5 I can wait for the holidays to begin.

3 My monthlyis paid directly into my bank account.

.... his living as an engineer.

c) gadget

c) fees

c) earns

c) harden

d) fare

d) beats

d) hardly



Vocabulary General Exercises

1	Working for abo	out 15 hours with	out a break makes anyo	one
	a) relaxed	b) calm	c) tired	d) tiring
2	It's not easy for	any Egyptian to b	oreak the of Mo	hammad Salah in
	scoring goals.			
	a) door	b) number	c) record	d) law
3	Those who	much more tl	han they earn are alway	s in heavy debts
	a) pass	b) spend	c) work	d) stav
4	It is very useful	when we give you	c) work ung children fo	r their good behaviour.
	a) awards	b) rewards	c) tickets choosing their	d) penalties
5	Actors should b	e careful about o	choosing their	because some children
	هم imitate them	يقلدو.		
	a) parents	b) twins	c) persons	d) characters
6	People who	the law mus	st be punished.	3777
	a) break	b) follow	c) make rise or I will resign.	d) do
7	lasked my man	ager for a	rise or I will resign.	
	a) wage	b) fee	c) pay o have such a good fam	d) bay
8	I consider mysel	fa man to	o have such a good fam	nily.
	a) tired	b) funny	c) tricky s with many jokes all ev	d) lucky
9	My funny friend	always us	s with many jokes all ev	rening.
	a) entertains	b) trains	c) removes	d) depresses
10	those who are it	n neavy	are very miserable.	
	a) debates	b) advances	c) profits	d) debts
11	Charles Dickens	was a great	who wrote many no	vels and books
	a) poet	b) doctor	c) storyteller	d) musician
12	That house has b	peenfor	months. I want to rent i	it.
	a) busy	b) crowded	c) occupied	d) empty
13	We our	success to our pa	rents and teachers.	
	a) own	b) owe	c) belong	d) occur
14	We must stop th	ose who do	acts by sending the	em to prison.
	a) great	b) moral	c) legal	d) criminal
15	I Should have do	ne attroad when I	Mac Moune It mas most	
	a) appointment	b) apposition	c) opponent	d) opportunity
16		to be pullist	ica severely for such a	lemble crime.
	a) removes	b) deserves	c) reserves	d) serves
17	our old	l days when we sa	at at the sea chatting til	l dawn.
	a) lose	b) long	c) suppose	d) miss

18	She finds her w	ork with disabl	ed people very.	She	likes it very much.
	a) awards	b) commen	ts c) rew	varding	d) rewards
19	The ha	ve a safety dev	ice which switch	nes the power	off if there is a fault.
	a) tools	b) instrume	nts c) ma	chines	d) wires
20	How much is th	ne entrance	for the Eq.	ptian Museui	n?
	a) wage	b) fee	c) sala	ary	d) wages clean?
21	Can vou	suggestions	for keeping the	environment	clean?
	a) do	b) make	c) thi	nk	d) rise
22	The law decide	s who is innoce	ent and who will	be in	
	a) debt	b) hospital	c) pri	son	d) entertainment
23	The team's vict	ory today has	them a	place in the ili	Idi.
	a) earned	b) gained	C) WC	n	o) rewarded
24	Heisa	He has no de	sire to spend m	oney even on	nis chilaren.
	-)1	b) micon	c) mi	cer	d) missing
25	There was an e	expression of pa	ain andc) mi	on his face.	
	a) miserable	b) misery	c) mi	ser	d) missing
26	Nowadays, eve	eryone is rushir	ng to be better	or more succe	essful than everyone
	else. That is wh	nat we call			
	a) break the lay	v b) pay back	c) bre	eak through	d) rat race
27	As a result of	his repeated m	istakes, he has b	oeen	from his position in
	the company.				
	a) remove	b) removal	c) me	ovement	d) removed
28	Chamas and	mlain about no	or quality	and high n	rices.
	a) merchants	b) merchar	ndise c) mo	erchantable	d) merchant
29	Mothers are th	ne best to look.	their far	milies.	
	a) after	b) up	C) TO		d) into
Ch	loose the two (follect dissaci	3 OI DIE LIVE OF	4101101	
3	Many young i	men m	noney from touri	sm, so we hav	e to encourage
	a) earn	b) do	c) make	d) gain	e) win
31	My friend is pl	ump. "Plump" h	nere is a synonyr	n for ""	e) win and "". e) thick
21	Unfortunately	some ornhans	s have no host fa	imilies to	tnem.
	a) care for	h) look for	c) look after	d) take care	e e) look up
33	Can I borrow	your car for the	weekend? The	antonyms of t	he word "borrow" are
	"" and "				
	a) dislike	b) lend	c) disorder	d) organise	e) return
34	shou	ld be helped by	vall people in so	ciety, especia	lly the government.
	a) Disabled		b) The disable	ed	c) Disabled people
	d) The disable	d people	e) Disability		
3	5 Lasked my fat	her to go out v	vith me, but he	was very tired	. The adjective "tired"
3	5 Lasked my fat	ther to go out we meaning as ".	e) Disability with me, but he amount and "" c) weary		. The adjective "tired" e) exhausted



الماضي البسيط والمضارع التام Past simple and present perfect

زمن الماضي البسيط The Past Simple Tense

تم شرحه في الوحدة الأولى

The Present Perfect Tense

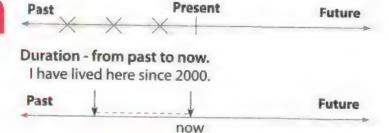
زمن المضارع التام

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن:

The present perfect tense is used to express:

Repeated actions in the past - often with quantity words. I have eaten three sandwiches.

THAELINE



FORM

Affirmative

He/She/It + has + P.P.

• He has painted the house.

I/They/We/You + have + P.P. • They have painted the house.

He/She/It + hasn't + P.P.

Negative

 He hasn't painted the house. I/They/We/You + haven't + P.P.

• They haven't painted the house.

Has/Have + subject + P.P.?

• Has he painted the house?

Question

• Have they painted the house?

Wh-word + has/have + subject + P.P.?

• How long have they painted the house?

Passive

Obj. + has/have + been + P.P.

The house has been painted.

الاستحدام USAGE

For actions that started in the past and continue till now.

التعبير عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة.

Manar has lived in Alexandria since she was a child.

For actions which have happened very recently or finished and there is an effect on the present. التعبير عن أحداث تمت حديثاً أو انتمت منذ فترة وتترك أثر.

I have finished reading the novel by David Copperfield.

He can't play the match because he has broken his leg.

For questions and answers about people's experiences.

اللاسللة والإجابات عن التجارب الشخصية للافراد...

Have you ever been to Aswan? — No, I've never been there.

For actions that happened in the past without mentioning the time. للاحداث التي تمت في العاضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثها.

My wife has polished her shoes. لاحظ: في حالة تحديد وقت حدوثه نستخدم الماضي البسيط. My wife polished her shoes yesterday.

Key words

we we			
already	بالفعل	تستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P. في نهاية الجملة	I have already passed my driving test. I have passed the driving test already.
just	حالًا/تؤا	تستخدم بین (has/have) & P.P.	He has just finished studying his English lessons.
ever	من قبل	تستخدم للسؤال عن التجارب الشخصية السابقة وبعد صيغة التفضيل ومع الجمل المنفية بـ not	Have you ever met Mohamed Salah? It is the most difficult question I have ever answered. I haven't ever eaten the Chinese food.
never	أبدًا/مطلقًا	تستخدم للنفى وفى جمل المقارنة وثأتى بين (has/have) & P.P.	I have never played squash before. I have never seen a player faster than Ronaldo.
yet	حتى الأن	تستخدم فى النفى أو الاستفهام وتستخدم بين P.P & (has/have). أو فى نهاية الجملة	She hasn't revised her lessons yet. Amr hasn't yet sent the files. Has she finished cooking the food yet?

lately/recently حدیثًا/مؤخرًا	تستخدم فى الإثبات والاستفهام وغالبنا ما تستخدم <mark>lately</mark> فى النفى.	He has sent me a letter lately/recently. Have you heard from Noha lately/recently? I haven't been sleeping well lately.
so far/ up till now حتى الأن	تستخدم فى الإثبات والنفى	She hasn't had any problems so far. I have sent my brother three letters up till now.
over / throughout على مر	یأتی بعدها مدة زمنیة	Egypt has changed over the last years. She has improved her English throughout the years.
منذ متی How long	تستخدم في الاستفهام	How long has he had that car?
in the last/ in recent في الأخيرة	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	Mohamed Salah has played for Liverpool in the last 5 years.
for لعدة	يأتي بعدها مدة زمنية	I have lived in Alexandria for 10 years.
مند since	يأتى بعدها بداية الفترة الزمنية	She has worked as a nurse since 2010.

تستخدم since/for مع تعبيرات مختلفة، لاحظ التالى:

4 o'clock 2000 yesterday · last (week/month/year) Since April/May/August Monday/Friday then spring/winter/summer his arrival (عبارة اسمية) the age of

(الحقب الزمنية) the 1970s

6 hours 3 years a/several/many/ 10 (week/month/year) For the last (week/month/year) ages a long time/a short time a while/a decade/a century as long as ... can remember long

I have started to study English since 1995/for 28 years. She has been taught how to swim since last year/for the last year/for a year. My brother Osama has worked in tourism since his graduation.

Don't be confused

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعل واحد في الجملة يوضع في زمن المضارع التام البسيط أو المستمر.

(بداية الفترة الزمنية) → since → (مضارع تام) (مضارع تام)، → (بدلية الفترة الزمنية)

My daughter hasn't slept well since yesterday.

Since yesterday, my daughter hasn't slept well.

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعلين ... أي ربطت بين جملتين تصبح القاعدة كالآتي:

(ماض بسیط،) -- since -- (مضارع تام) (مضارع تام)، 🛶 (ماض بسیط،)

We haven't seen him since he was in Alexandria.

Since he was in Alexandria, we haven't seen him.



Important Notes



تستخدم (yet) للتعبير عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع توقع حدوثه لاحقاً.

I haven't eaten at a Chinese restaurant yet. (I expect to do it later).

أما عند استخدام (never) فهي تعبر عن نفي حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع عدم توقع حدوثه لاحقًا.

I have never eaten at a Chinese restaurant. (I don't expect to do it later).



من الممكن استخدام (already) للتعبير عن الدهشة.

Have you finished cooking the food already? How fast!



لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

for the last + (a period of time) since last + (a period of time)

I haven't met my colleagues for the last week. I haven't met my colleagues since last week.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

I haven't met my colleagues since the last meeting.



لأحظ التعبيرات التالية:

نهب إلى مكان وعاد (place) + (place)

He has been to London. (He came back.)

نهب إلى مكان ولم يعد(place) gone to + (place

He has gone to London. (He is still there.)

يمكث في مكان (place) been in + (place) He has been in London. (He is living there.)



Language General Exercises

	1	We haven't had i	ce creamage	S.	
		a) since	b) for	c) yet	d) ago
	2	Scientists	ways to isolate gene	es already.	3
				c) had developed	d) has developed
	3	He has lived in h	is village since he		
		a) retired	b) was retiring	c) has retired	d) had retired
	4			will try to finish it soon	
				c) finished	
	5		. I can't open the door		
		a) are losing	b) have lost	c) have been lost	d) has been lost
	6	I am over the mo	on; Ia meda	I for writing poetry.	1 1/102
			b) won		d) have won
	7	Have you	watched a Korean fil	lm?	
		a) never	b) still	c) yet	d) ever
	8	This is the most i	nteresting book I	000000000 #	
		a) have never read b) read c) ever have read d) have ever re			
		c) ever have read		d) have ever read	
1	9	I the boo	k you were looking fo	or. Here it is.	
		a) find	b) will find	c) was finding	d) have found
1	0	A: Would you like	something to drink?	B: No, thanks. I	some lemonade.
		a) just had	b) am just having	c) have just had	d) had just
1	1	My sister is shock	ed. She the g	ame in the last second	1.
		a) 's losing	b) 's lost	c) 'd lost	d) 'd lose
1	2	the last to	wo weeks, we have pr	epared for our gradua	ition party.
		a) Since	b) At	c) For	d) While
1	3	She has been in [Damanhour th	ne day of her arrival fro	om Upper Egypt.
		a) for	b) yet	c) already	d) since
1	4	Hatima	taxi driver for 10 year	s; he hasn't changed h	is career.
		a) had been	b) is	c) was	d) has been
1	5	I moved to Cairo.	Since then, I	my friends.	
		a) haven't seen	b) hasn't seen	c) saw	
1	6	l started i	my profession, I have	met a lot of excellent :	students.
		a) When	b) Since	c) After	d) Before
1	7	Have you done th	e experiment	? - You are really cleve	er.
		a) yet	b) already	c) ago	d) since

18	8 They the cinema. They are at home now.					
	a) have been to	b) have gone to	c) have been in	d) had been to		
19	Mourad	to his village. He is s	still there.			
	a) had been	b) has gone	c) has been	d) had gone		
20	Mohammad is	the most intelligent of	child I havesee	n.		
	a) never	b) lately	c) ever	d) yet		
21	A: Have you se	en the new film? B: Si	ure, I it yesterda	ay. I can't miss such		
	a good one.					
	a) see	b) 've seen	c) 'd see	d) saw		
22	A: Has the road	been paved? B: Yes,	itlast week.	e dopt		
	a) paved	b) was paved	c) has paved	d) has been paved		
23	Yara hasn't gor	ne to school t				
	a) since		c) when	d) on		
24	I have visited n	ny uncle				
	a) three times ago		b) three times last week			
	c) three times this week		d) yesterday			
25	25 Mum to the shops. Let's see what she bought for us.					
			c) has gone	d) has been		
26	What	is still a secret; you no	eedn't worry.			
			c) have you said			
27	typed	l yet?		(Longman)		
	a) Had the rep	ort been	b) Has the report b	been		
	c) Has the repo		d) Had the report			
28		It's ready to use n				
	a) has already i	·		b) was being repaired		
		repaired yet				
29			much so far today.	1) 1		
		b) haven't eaten		d) hadn't eaten		
30			yellow. Someone			
	a) had painted		b) has been painte			
	c) has painted		d) had been paint			
31			This means that	•• •		
		very summer in Marina				
		this summer in Marina				
	*	art of the summer in M				
	d) she spent a	Il the summer in Marin	la	hat ha		
32			two years. This means t b) is back now	11at 11c		
	a) is in Englandc) will be back		d) won't go there			
	C) WIII DE DACK	30011	a, mone go alore			



(Lessons 1 & 2)

)	Vocabulary					
1	After losing he	r job a year ago, she go	ot into be ab	le to support her family.		
	a) debate	b) debt	c) profit	d) date		
2	The play that I attended in the was one of the best plays ever.					
	a) cinema	b) stadium	c) television	d) theatre		
3	The Ancient Eg	yptians built huge	and carved the	eir stories on its walls.		
	a) trembles	bitemples	c) cinemas	d) factories		
4	I think there is	no for extra p	eople to come in. Let	t's see a bigger hall.		
	a) a room	b) rooms	c) rooming	d) room		
5	All of us must	our president i	n his plans for a bette	r future for our country.		
	a) support	b) suppose	c) hinder	d) report		
6	I spent most of my in the field of communications in the USA.					
	a) profession	b) work	c) career	d) job		
7	There was an expression of pain and misery on his face. He looked so					
	a) misery	b) miser	c) miserable	d) missing		
8	I admire most of	of the of our g	reat writer Naguib N	lahfouz.		
	a) work	b) jobs	c) careers	d) works		
9	After ten years of, he decided to forget his suffering and start a new life.					
	a) imprison	b) imprisonment	c) prisoner	d) imprisoned		
10	A person who isis slightly fat in a nice way.					
	a) thin	b) overweight	c) plump	d) intelligent		
11	The words "earn" and "lose" are					
		b) adjectives				
12	We need to fill in all the gaps in the window. There are lots ofin this area.					
	a) rats	b) debts	c) merchants	d) prisons		
13	Never borrow to buy something unimportant; you already have lots of					
	a) debts	b) salaries	c) pays	d) wages		
14	I prefer to be a	Fixed salaries	can hardly make end:	. تلبى احتياجات المعيشة meet		
	a) prisoner	b) machine	c) character	d) merchant		
15	After 20 minute	es of waiting for the lif	out t المصعد ft المصعد	hat the button was		
	faulty.					
	a) found	b) got	c) owed	d) earned		

)	Language						
16	I haven't met my	friendsa lor	ng time.				
	a) for	b) until	c) when	d) since			
17	I haven't met my	friend since he	abroad a year ago.				
	a) travelled	b) had travelled	c) has travelled	d) travels			
18	Have you done y	our work alone	? I can't believe it!				
		b) already		d) just			
19	This is the best st	tory I read al	l my life.				
	a) still have		b) had ever				
	c) have never		d) have ever				
20	I don't think the	food cooked	l yet.				
	a) has been	b) had been	c) was	d) will be			
21	This is the third t	ime my Facebook ac	count this yea	ır.			
	a) has hacked		b) was hacked				
	c) was hacking		d) has been hacked	d			
22	Saad Zaghlool	لمنفى into exile	twice.				
	a) has sent	b) was sent	c) will send	d) sent			
23	.The boss needs it urgently.						
	a) Had the report been printed?						
	b) Has the report already printed?						
	c) Will the report	*					
		t already been printed					
24	There has been	a traffic jam in the so	quare two hou				
	-,	b) for	c) yet	d) ago			
25	I have studied E	nglish the ag					
	a) since		c) yet	d) ago			
26	Ashrafn	nuch weight recently	y.	11			
	a) gained	b) has gained	c) is gained	d) gains			
27	Mona has boug	ht that car since she	to learn how t	o drive.			
	,		c) will start				
28			ds? B: Yes, I the				
			c) went				
29			e to the super				
			c) was	d) had gone			
30		lean! Who t		d) has washed			
	a) had washed	o) wasned	c) was washing	U) Has washied			



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

community (n) مجتمع voluntary work (n)**

culture (n) ثقافة youth association (n) معية (اتحاد) شياب

youth association (n) جمعية (اتحاد) شباب بنك الطعام (rood bank (n)

Can you give examples for voluntary work?



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قدم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



Vocabulary on Reading Texts

main (adj)	رئيسى	solve (v) – d	يحل
paint (n) (v) – ed	دهان/يرسم/يدهن	solution (n)	حل
plan (n) (v) – ned	خطة/پخطط	surprise (n) (v) – d	مفاجأة/يفلجئ
planning (n)	التخطيط	touch (v) - ed	

Workbook Vocabulary

admit (v) – ted	يعترف	experience (v) – d (n)	يجرب/خبرة
adult (n)/(adj)	شخص بالغ	grow up (v)	ينضج
around (adv)	حول	later (adv)	فيما بعد
break (v)/(n)	يكسر/راحة	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
common (adj)	معتاد/شائع	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
disabled (n)	معلق	trick (n) (v) – ed	خدعة/يخدع
dreamer (n)	حالم	trust (v) – ed	يثق
the Egyptian Red Cresco	ent الملال الأجمر المصري	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Vocabulary Check point

1	The student	that he had	made a mistake and he	apologised.		
	a) denied		b) touched			
	c) painted		d) admitted			
2	The hospital ha	s asked some	organisations to he	elp raise money.		
	a) volunteer		b) voluntary			
	c) adult		d) planning			
3	I don't think thi	s applicant has the	required for t	the job.		
	a) experiment		b) trick			
	c) experience		d) surprise			
4	The project is s	till at the	stage. We haven't starte	ed it yet.		
	a) planning		b) community			
	c) playing		d) painting			
5	The policeman	asked the woman	to the man w	ho robbed her.		
	a) return	b) trust	c) describe	d) plan		
6	Do you		ink it's not original.			
	a) trust	b) admit	c) imagine	d) trick		
7	Egypt is home	to people from ma	ny different			
	a) solutions		b) cultures			
	c) communities	S	d) lectures			
8 The walls of my house are very dull and need to be						
	a) painted		b) broken			
	c) touched		d) removed			
9	The thieves co	uld get into the ho	use by a			
	a) surprise		b) disability			
	c) trick		d) track			
10	Both children	and can w	ratch this film as it is sui	itable for all ages		
	a) babies	b) grown	c) cultures	d) adults		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as much as	يقدر ما	send to	يرسل إلى
do a great job	يقوم بعمل عظيم	play a trick on	يخدع
do work for	يقوم بعمل من أجل	stop from	يوقف من
give back to	يرد … إلى	unusual for	غير معتاد لـ
most of	معظم	write down	يدون
return to	يعود إلى	go wrong	يخطئ/يسوء
put into	يضع في	tell a story	يروي قصة
make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا	(something) in common	(شيء) مشترك

Derivatives

Ve	erb		Noun		Adje	ctive
admit	يعترف	admission		اعتراف/إقرار	admissible	مسموح/مقبول
		culture		talas	cultural cultured	ثقافی مثقف/متحضر
dream	يحلم	dream dreamer		حلم شخص حالم	dreamy الأحلام	حالم/غامض/كثير
disable	يُعجِّز	disability		عَقَادًا	disabled a	ذو احتياجات خاص
associate	يرتبط/يتحد	association		اتحاد/منظمة	associated	مترابط
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer		متطوع	voluntary	تطوعى

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرانف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/renounce
culture	ثقافة	civilisation/art	ignorance جهل
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky/unfortunate غير محظوظ
main	رئيسى/أساسى	major/essential	غير هام/تلفه minor/trivial
trust	يثق	believe/place confidence in	doubt/disbelieve يشك/لا يصدق
unusual	غير معتاد	uncommon/ unconventional	usual/conventional/common
voluntary	تطوعى	willing/free	involuntary/unwilling غير تطوعى

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	Professor Yacou	b has	difference to our people's lives.
	a) made	b) done	c) had d) removed
2	He was born wi	th a/an	but his parents could help him.
	a) disable		b) disabled
	c) ability		d) disability
3	I was very lucky	to win the fir	match and get the prize. The synonym of
	the word "lucky	"is	
	a) unwilling		b) fortunate
	c) doubt		d) unlucky
4	I don't respect t	hose who pla	tricks their friends or other people.
	a) in	b) with	c) on d) at
5	My son has	a great j	when he came first in the final exams.
	a) done		b) made
	c) taken		d) won
6	How much does a person have to		toon food every week?
	a) stay	b) spend	c) admit d) solve
7	The thief admit	ted breaking	to the bank. The antonym of the word "admit"
	is		
	a) deny		b) confess
	c) trust		d) acknowledge
8	I was prepared	to take on the	ob with all itsrisks.
	a) associate		b) association
	c) associated		d) associates
9	I have seen unu	usual activitie	n this country. The synonym of the word
	"unusual" is	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	
	a) common		b) uncommon
	c) unwilling		d) usual
10)stories	s for kids is on	of my favourite hobbies.
	a) Saying	b) Taking	c) Telling d) Doing

later I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.

latter الأخير I met Ali and Samy; the latter seemed exhausted.

make + (object) + inf. يجعل I like him because he makes me laugh.

make + (someone/

He wants to make the world a better place. 2 something) + adj. يجعل

force + (object) + to + inf.She forced her daughter to sleep early.

I spent three hours playing video games with my spend + time + $(v + ing)^*$ friends. يقضى وقتكا

spend* My wife spent a lot of money last week. ينفق (يصرف) مالًا

Actually, we spend time and money.



Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1on, you will probably wish that you had worked harder.
 - a) Latter b) Late
- c) Later
- d) Latest
- 2 The thief made the old man out all his money.
 - a) to take b) taking
- c) to taking
- d) take
- 3 I don't like to spend much time television.
 - a) watch b) to watching
- c) watching
- d) to watch
- 4 The company is spending on providing technical courses.
 - a) efforts

b) loads of experience

c) many experiments

- d) thousands of pounds
- 5 English and Chinese are so important but theseems to be more difficult.
 - a) later
- b) latter
- c) latest
- d) late



Vocabulary General Exercises

1	I am very good at	stories to my	children that make t	hem amused.	
	a) saying	b) doing	c) telling	d) asking	
2	Students need to	their study m	ore carefully to pass	their exams.	
	a) plane	b) plan	c) play	d) plain	
3	Doctors and nurs	esa great job	to help us to face par	ndemics.	
	a) make	b) do	c) play	d) give	
4	The reas	on for learning English	n is to get a better jol	o in the future.	
	a) plump	b) main	c) later	d) mean	
5	lasked my studen	ts not to anything	in the laboratory du	ring the experiment.	
	a) stop	b) trust	c) touch	d) clutch	
6	It is important to	have a if you	want to perform bett	er at work.	
	a) breakage	b) breakaway	c) fight	d) break	
7	There were two o	ptions for me to study	philosophy and histo	ory. I chose the	
	a) latter	b) late ble person and so we c	c) lately	d) later	
8	He is a very reliab	le person and so we c	anhim to h	elp us.	
	a) trust	b) trick	c) admit	d) make	
9	He doesn't want	his mother to marry a	after his father's deat	h. He doesn't like to	
	have a				
	a) stepmother	b) granny	c) grandfather	d) steptather	
10	The little child breaking the glass of the window by mistake,				
	so the teacher for	rgave him.	1 •1	(Longman)	
	a) planned	b) suggested	c) denied	a) admitted	
11	People from man	y different wi	ii get together during	the conference.	
		b) experiences			
12		a group of young peo			
4.00		b) participation		association	
13	The wall will need	طبقات d two more coats b) plant	ol maint	d) painthrush	
4.4	a) bee	stealing the m	oney from my neigh	hours	
14	rinally, the thiel.	b) refused	c) dreamed	d) admitted	
45		! What you thi			
15	You should conce	entrate on what is real	lly hannening	паррет.	
	a) dreamer	b) teller	c) realistic	d) professor	
16		lay on his frie		(Lemphin)	
10	a) tours	b) tracks	c) treks		
17	Children need to	things by the	emselves in order to	learn from them.	
	a) expert	b) experience	c) admit	d) expire	

18	are محويل are معويل are are معويل are are are are are are are					
	compulsory إجباري. They can decide whether to share or not.					
	a) obligatory	b) voluntary	c) vol	unteer	d) prohibited	
19	If I'm not mistak	ken, you can't	me char	ige my mind.	130700	
	a) force	b) allow	c) ma	ke	d) get	
20	The children spe	ent their holida	ys with their fath	ner and	who married him	
	after their moth	er's death.				
	a) stepmother	b) granny	c) gra	ndfather	d) stepfather	
21	To learn everyt	hing from your	teachers, you	should write	everything	
	they say.				, 3	
	a) in	b) for	c) up		d) down	
22	Although he ha	s a, he	became first in	the swimming	competition.	
	a) disable	b) disabled	c) disa	bility	d) disabilities	
23					ements in Egypt.	
			n c) asso			
24	I hate those who					
	a) do/in	b) make/on	c) inve	ent/with	d) play/on	
25	Her of					
					d) describes	
26	The inventions a	and discoveries	of our great scie	entists made	to our lives.	
	a) different	b) differentia	te c) a di	fferent	d) a difference	
27	Our history teac	her was a very	man w	ho knew much	about everything.	
					d) cultures	
Ch	oose the Two co	rrect answers	of the Five opti	ions:		
28	My daughter do	es a lot of volu	ntary work for th	ne Resala Chari	ty Organisation.	
	The word "volur	ntary" equals in	meaning the we	ords aı	nd	
					e) compulsory	
29	She played mind					
	The antonyms o	f the word "mir	or" are "	and "		
	a) unimportant	b) major	c) secondary	d) trivial	e) main	
30	a) unimportant My daughter	a very cle	ever businessma	an who is very r	espected.	
	a) marry	b) married to	c) married	d) is married to	o e) is marry to	
31	I don't trust this	tricky man. This	s means I "	" and "	" him.	
	a) owe		c) believe			
32	Finally, I				g.	
	a) founded out					
	Several people of				e synonyms of	
	the word "strang					
	a) common	D) unfamiliar	c) usual	d) normal	e) unusual	



Extra Points



نستخدم المضارع التام بعد التعبيرات This is the first/second/... time

This is the first time I have made this silly mistake.



عند وجود دليل على انتماء الفعل تمامنا بلا أثر في الحاضر نستخدم الماضي البسيط.

My friend has worked for this company for twenty years. (He is still working.) My friend worked for this company for twenty years before retiring last year.



عادة ما نستخدم المضارع التام عند ذكرنا للموضوع للمرة الأولى ولكن الماضي البسيط نستخدمه لتوضيح تفاصيل ما حدث.

There has been a serious accident on the road to Cairo. It happened at 9 this morning when a lorry went out of control and hit a car.



من الممكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد المدة الزمنية.

since + a period of time + ago

I have lived in this town since 10 months ago.



من الممكن استخدام (since) كأداة ربط يأتي بعدها سبب أو تعليل.

He was arrested since he stole my money.



للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث نستخدم:

Since when + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

A: Since when have you married Noha? B: Since 2002.



للسؤال عن المدة التي استغرقها الحدث نستخدم:

For how long + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

A: For how long have you married Noha? B: For 20 years.

يســتخدم زمــن المضارع التــام للتعبير عن حدث تم وما زال أثــره في الحاضر أما إذا كان الأثر في الماضي فيســتخدم زمن الماضى التلم. My car is very clean because I have washed it. My car was very clean because I had washed it.

يســتخدم زمن المضارع التام مع التعبيرات التي تدل على أجزاء (اليوم - الأســبوع - الشــهر - العام) بشــرط إذا كانت هذه الفترة الزمنية لم تنته وقت الكلام مثل:

this (morning/afternoon/evening)/today/tonight/this (week/month/year)

have watched a film tonight.

(ما زالت الليلة ممتدة ولم ينته بعد في وقت الكلام)

أما إذا كانت قد انتهت وقت الكلام فنستخدم الماضي البسيط..

I watched a film tonight.

(الليلة انتهت وقت الكلام)



لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

ماض يسيط (last) past simple + فاعل + since + مدة زمنية It's two years since I met my friend Ali.

+ past simple + ... + when + فاعل + past simple He last visited the Eiffel Tower when he was in France.

+ past simple + (a moment ago - a short time ago - just now) She finished washing up a moment ago.

+ (has/have) + never + (P.P.) + ... + before I have never been to China before.

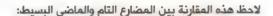
+ superlative (has/have) + ever + P.P.

He's the most intelligent person I've ever met.



عند وجود ما يدل على استمرار الفعل وعدم انتهائه مع كلمات for - since - all نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر: (has -have) + been + v-ing

Hams has been working for three hours and she hasn't finished yet. I have been playing football all day. I am really so tired.



	þ		-		
ľ.	4			ď	
m	٩	E	н	ì.	
M	L	A	II,	7	
1	4	u	_		

Present Perfect

- I have been to Mansura and Tanta. (وقت غير محدد)

-Have you been busy this morning? (ما زلنا في فترة الصباح ولم تنته)

-Have you had a nice time?

(عاد من الخارج حالًا)

-He has been a teacher for 20 years. (مازال مدرستا)

Past Simple

-I went to Mansura a week ago.

(وقت محدد في الماضي)

-Were you busy this morning?

(انتهت فترة الصباح وأصبحت ماضيًا)

-Did you have a nice time?

(عاد من الخارج قبل وقت من السؤال)

-He was a teacher for 20 years.

(لم يعد مدرس)

Language Summary

Usage

- · Actions that started in the past and continue.
- Questions and answers about people's experiences.
- Actions that happened in the past without mentioning the time.
- Actions that happened in the past and its effect is clear in present.

Affirmative

- · He has worked as a teacher for 10 years.
- · They have worked as teachers for 10 years.

Ouestion

- A: Has he worked as a teacher?
- B: Yes, he has. /No, he hasn't.
- A: How long have they worked as teachers?
- B: They have worked as teachers for 10 years.

Present Perfect

Negative

- · He hasn't worked as a teacher.
- They haven't worked as teachers.



Language General Exercises

,	1		years I travelle	ed abroad.	
		a) while	b) before		d) since
	2		in this company for 2		
		a) works	b) has worked	c) had worked	d) is working
	3	It is the first time	lan actor.		
		a) have ever met	b) have never met	c) ever meet	d) never met
	4	Marwan hasn't pl	ayed tennishe	was young.	
		a) for	b) when	c) since	d) after
	5	I have trie	ed seafood and I have	no desire to try it.	
			b) ever		d) never
	6		cleaned the room. Yo		ain.
		a) ever	b) never	c) already	d) hardly
	7		Smith the las		
			b) since		d) when
	8		e hours. The street is v	3	-,
			b) had rained		d) rained
	9	I haverea	d a good book like thi	s before.	,
			b) never	c) yet	d) before
	10		. He can't help crying.		
			t _i) just dying		d) has just died
	11		police once already.	.,,	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
			ti) has warned	c) has been warned	d) had warned
	12		iro the age of		w) 1100 1100 1
		a) in	b) on	c) by	d) since
	13		een to Italy before. I ha		
		till now.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	,	(Lortanian
		a) never	b) ever	c) already	d) recently
	14		eill for long.	-,	
		a) had been	_	c) was	d) is
	15	Since when		-,	
		a) is your father		b) has your father be	en
		c) was your father		d) your father was	
•	16		ed the food, Mum? B:	Yes, Iit an ho	ur ago.
		-	b) cooked		_
	17		ce heabroad.		,
		a) travelled	b) has travelled	c) travels	d) travel
	18		his car washed		
		a) since	b) while	c) for	d) when

19	I have not seen Al	i the last time	we met in Alexandria	· (neprom)
	a) for	b) while	c) when	d) since
20		Station for two hours		•
	a) played	b) has been played	c) has been playing	d) is playing
21		teacher for more tha		
		b) has been		d) was being
22		he phoned to ask n		
		b) when	_	d) while
23		pleased as this is the f		the Pyramids.
	a) visited	b) have never visited	c) have ever visited	d) was visiting
24	How long ago	he come back fr	rom South Africa?	Committee
	a) has			d) does
25	My daughter	English all day.		
	a) has been studyi	ng	b) has been studied	
	c) had studied		d) studied	
26	Radwa te	n letters today. She is	still working.	
	a) has been writing	g	b) has written	
			d) had written	
27	He to the	market. I will wait for	him until he comes ba	ack.
		b) has gone		
28		of her husband, I've r		
	a) For	b) Since	c) So far	d) When
29		/I have been a		
		b) for how long		d) how long ago
30		ning late, sir. 1		
	a) have been to	b) have gone to	c) have been in	d) was being in
31	We haven't seen e	each other since we	in Hurghada.	1 mymer
		b) have been		
32		oall on Monday. This se		
		tball since Monday		
		otball on Monday		
33		verest student I have		that
	a) I have seen man	ny clever students like l	Marwan	
	b) I have seen mai	ny students who are be	etter than Marwan	
	c) Marwan isn't as	clever as the students	I have ever seen	
	d) It is the first tim	e to see a student who	is clever like Marwan	
34	Ashraf has been v	vorking as a waiter for	3 years. This means t	hat
	a) he didn't work a			
		e he left his work as a w	vaiter	
	c) he still works as			
	d) he no longer w	orks as a waiter		

>	1	I always study	hard as I don't want to	failure.				
		a) experience	b) experiment	c) touch	d) exert			
2					e. You can reach it easily.			
		a) main	b) mean	c) plain	d) mane			
	3	There have bee	en a lot of useful activi	ities for young peop	ole since the youth			
		was for	rmed in our city.					
		a) charitable	b) prison	c) association	d) society			
	4				ation of the company.			
		a) community	b) culture	c) association	d) opportunity			
	5	We need to wo	rk together to find su	stainable to	o our problems.			
		a) causes	b) reasons	c) savings	d) solutions			
	6	To everyone's	, my favourite t	eam lost the match	yesterday.			
			b) surprise					
	7	The governme	nt tries hard to provid	e all facilities for	***************************************			
		a) the disable	b) the disability	c) disabled	d) the disabled			
	8	It is known that most the shops and companies are shut on Fridays.						
		a) from	b) of	c) in	d) about			
	9		differences betwe					
		a) cultures	b) cultural	c) cultured	d) culturally			
	10		a highly man					
		a) culture	b) cultural	c) cultured	d) culturally			
	11	During wars, flo	oods and other disaste	ers, foodpr	ovide the poor with			
		food.						
			b) pirates					
	12				ake it to the mechanic's.			
		a) went	b) had	c) made	d) did			
	13	Reda and I have	e some interests in		reading and fishing.			
		a) common	b) difference	c) success	d) expert			
	14	The ministry is	responsible for future	so that we	will not have			
		unexpected pro						
			b) drawing					
	15	Children in poo	or areas have big dream	ms of living in a dec	ent to enjoy			
		their rights.						
		a) school	b) community	c) culture	d) volunteering			

16	Ali won the first p	orize for reading		
	a) since	b) in	c) from	d) at
17		n to read short stories	2008.	
	a) since	b) in	c) for	d) at
18	My friend hasn't	visited Aswan	he was young.	
	a) for	b) when	c) since	d) after
19	Ahmedi	n Qena for ten years. N	low, he lives in Alexa	ndria.
	a) lived	b) has lived	c) were living	d) had lived
20	Menna visited he	er close friend Sama		
	a) just	b) just now	c) ago	d) yet
21		rying because he		
	a) has fallen	b) is falling	c) had fallen	d) was falling
22		antastic journey in As		
	a) have taken	b) are taking	c) were taken	d) took
23	Since the compu	iter was used in schoo	ls, remarkable progre	ess in
	education			
		b) made		
24		a: العصابة as		
		b) have arrested		
25		attended a party was		
		b) while		
26	The famous play	er says that he has pla	yed football	as long as he can
	remember.			to tot
		b) when		
27	_	to school. This means		
		b) is no longer		d) won't be
28		as sheso hard		
	a) has worked		b) will work	
	c) had been work		d) has been worked	
29		nt cut his finger, he		
	a) was giving		b) will be given	
	c) was given		d) had given	
30		e when she smashed t		
	a) Were you bein	g	b) Did you be	
	c) Were you		d) Be you	

Chapter 3

Key Vocabulary

attack	يهاجم	harbour	ميناء
bank	مصرف/ضفة نهر	join	ينضم إلى/يلحق ب
barrel	برميل	mean	یعنی/یقصد
crew	طاقم	mutiny	تمرد/عصيان
crutch	عكاز	own	يمثلك
clue	دلیل	parrot	ببغاء
destination	المكان المقصود/جهة الوصول	pirate	قرصان
empty	غارغ	past	ماراً أمام
explain	يشرح/يفسر	patient	صبور/مريض
gang	عصابة	secret	سر/سري

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

agree with	يتفق مع	nearly empty	شبه فارغ
become blind	يصاب بالعمى	pay for	يدفع ا
climb inside	يتسلق للداخل	prepare to	يستعد ك
full of	ملىء	run after	يلحق
go on a journey	يذهب في رحلة	the front of	مقدمة
go on the ship	يصعد السفينة	tired of	متعب من
happy about	سعید' بشأن	walk around	يتجول
happy to	سعيد ال	took some time to	استغرق بعض الوقت لـ
look after	یعتنی ب	wait that long	ينتظر هذا الوقت الطويل
make me laugh	يضحكني	walk up	يسير متجمئا

Novel Exercises Chapter (3)

I saw a lot of sh	nips and boats in the	this morning	
A of m	en attacked the prise	on and broke some pr	isoners out.
a) band	b) gang	c) pirate	d) collection
I likeas	s they are beautiful a	and can speak like peo	ple.
Rami is	; he usually waits for	r us calmly for a long t	ime! tongrade
			t * 1 , 20%
a) keys	b) clues	c) symbols	d) doubts
We weren't tole	d about the	of our journey. It was	a surprise.
			•
c) distinction		d) destination	
The workers th	reaten that there wi	Il be a/an if co	nditions don't
	b) mutiny	c) attack	d) party
	_		
			d) barrel
	b) crash	c) wheel	d) bike
You shouldn't	tell anyone about yo	our computer passwor	d. It must be
a) obvious	b) available	c) secret	d) scared
In the past, shi	ps were attacked by	who were ver	ry savage.
a) pirates	b) birds	c) pilots	d) animals
•			
a) deaf	b) blind	c) dump	d) blond
I like walking o	on the of the	river with my friends	enjoying the beauty
_	•	•	
	b) beach	c) coast	d) bank
- / - · · · - ·			
I couldn't unde	erstand the lesson, se	o I asked my teacher t	oit again.
	a) station A	a) station b) airport A	a) matter b) mutiny c) attack The price of oil today is about 100 dollars per





للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المصارات.

How to prepare for writing a short story:

- 1 You should first plan your story. (Time, place, problem and the main characters)
- 2 Use adjectives and adverbs to describe people and actions briefly.
- 3 As the story continues, mention the problem and how was it solved.
- 4 There should be a lesson/moral that we should learn from your story.

Model Essay

A Story of Good Luck

Five years ago, the night train from Cairo to Aswan was full of passengers. One of the passengers was called Maher. He was travelling to Aswan to see his aunt and uncle. Suddenly, the train stopped. Maher looked out of the window and found that they were in the middle of the country and everything was black. His train stopped because there was something in front of it which looked like a man in a big black coat. The man was moving his arms up and down slowly. Maher thought that it was terrifying. Two passengers started to walk towards the man in the black coat but couldn't touch him. Two other men came and said that all passengers were lucky as the train stopped. There was a terrible crash ahead.

A car accident caused the bridge to collapse on the railway. Luckily, there was a big light on the front of the train and in the middle of the big light, there was a butterfly. When it moved, its wings made a big shadow which looked like a man moving his arms. So, all passengers were saved thanks to their good luck.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one plant that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree bark, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

1	Natural remedies are attracting attention because they					
	a) are used in Egypt	b) have side effects				
	c) are exported from Egypt	d) can treat a	lot of dis	eases		
2	Garlic is an example of					
	a) natural remedies	b) artificial herbs				
	c) chemical medicines	d) modern drugs				
3	The pronoun "his" in the last parag	raph refers to th	ne			
	a) herbalist b) shop	c) customer		d) prescription		
4	Herbal medicine is more effective	than chemical m	nedicine b	oecause		
	a) it's cheaper and cleaner					
b) it's easily found and easily taken in						
	c) it cures and protects from side effects					
	d) many local people benefit from selling it					

- 5 The main idea of the passage is "......
 - a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits
 - b) The Chemical Medicine Disadvantages
 - c) The Faculty of Medicine
 - d) Trees Can Cure
- 6 Which sentence is NOT correct about natural herbs?
 - a) They're used for treating illnesses since primitive times.
 - b) They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
 - c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
 - d) Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.
- 7 The bark of the is used to make aspirin.
 - a) bush tree

b) shadow plant

c) palm tree

d) willow tree

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1 We should exert great effort to develop sports by all means and this is the responsibility of the government and the individuals as well.
 - علينا بذل جهود كثيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل المعانى وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد كذلك.
 - علينا بذل جهود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد كذلك.
 -) يجب علينا بذل جهود مضنية لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية الدولة والأفراد مثل جيدًا.
 - d) علينا عمل جمود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية المؤسسات والأشخاص.
- 2 Terrorism is one of the worst and most complicated problems that has a lot of destructive effects on both citizens and society.
 - الإرهاب يعتبر من أفضل المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
 - تعتبر السياحة من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، ولها الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
 - ي الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأقلها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الأثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
 - d) يعتبر الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
- 3 It is believed that money is the root of all evil. It is considered the main reason for the deviation, addiction, committing crimes and even wars among countries.
 - من المعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الخير. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسي للانعطاف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.
 - بعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الفرعى للانحراف والإسمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.
 - 🤇) يعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسي للانحراف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.
 - d) إنه من الإيمان أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسي للانحراف والإرهاب وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.

- 4 There are a lot of people who are miserable as they don't have enough money to live a decent life or a good place to live in.
 - هناك الكثير من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البخل لأنهم يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش أو مكان للعيش فيه.
 - هناك الكثير من الأشخاص البائسين الذين لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال ليحظو بحياة غالية أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.
 - هناك الكثير من الأشخاص النين يعانون من البؤس لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال ليحظو بحياة كريمة أو مكان جيد للعبش فيه.
 - مناك القليل من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البؤس لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش.
- 5 Researches say that we must have a hobby to refresh ourselves and ease the bad effects of work stress.
 - تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب ألا تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
 - لأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
 - الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنقاذ أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
 - d الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتسهيل الآثار الصعبة لضغوط العمل.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 يلعب الآباء والمعلمون وكذلك الإعلام دورًا هامًا في تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، وتعديل سلوكياتهم ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين.
- a) Parents, teachers and the media play an important rule in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
- b) Parents, teachers and the media play an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
- c) Play parents, teachers and the median important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
 - d) Parents, teachers and the media make an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
 - 7 مما لا شـك فيه أننا نعيش في عصر العلم والتكنولوجيا. فالكمبيوتر والإنترنت من الاختراعات التي جعلت كل شيء من السهل أن يحدث.
 - a) There is no doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything difficult to happen.
 - b) Undoubtedly, we live in the age of scientific and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything easy to happen.
 - c) There is no doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything easy to happen.
 - d) No doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make something easy to happen.

- 8 يُقال إن البشر في خطر دائمًا نتيجة لتدخلهم في الطبيعة بسبب جشعهم وغبائهم.
 a) It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.
- b) It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and intelligence.
- c) People say that human beings are always in safe as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.
- d) They said that human beings are never in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.
 - 9 يجب على الحكومة المصرية الاهتمام بتطوير المؤسسات الطبية لكي تتمكن من مواجَّمة أي خطر في المستقبل.
- al The Egyptian government must play attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.
- b) Must on the Egyptian government pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to hinder any danger in the future.
- c) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.
- d) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any dangerous in the future.
 - 10 إن إنشاء الكثير من مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة ساهم في تحسين العملية التعليمية بوجه عام وساعد الكثير من الأطفال والشباب على القراءة بحرية.
- The establishment of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.
- by The establishment of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educat onal operation in generally and helped many children and youths to read freely.
- c) The building of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process with a general face and helped many children and youth to read freely.
- d) The constructing of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improve the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.

'How to reduc	of about ONE I te the number o	fyour	ng people v	vho ai	ve up educ	ation	at early an
******************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				ap caac		ac carry ag
••••••	*************************	**********)	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	*************************	*******	************
************************		******		***********	*********************		***************************************
			******************			************	**********************
i used more than	*******				*********		
4 new vocabulary.	, I used the right structure.	()-()	l used a topic	(`~ ')	I wrote the	Ċ+O	I used the rigi



Al-Adwaa Test



	oose the Two correct					
1	Those whoil					
	a) become b)					
2	After months withou	t rain, the gro	ound was t	oo hard to p	olough. T	he antonyms of
	the word "hard" are ".	" and '				
	a) soft b)	delicate	c) rocklike	e d) bla	ank	e) pure
	oose the correct ans					
3	The little boy	out all his to	ys onto the	e floor and	so his mo	ther was angry.
	a) tidied					shut
4	I would like you to	my nar	me from yo	our mailing	list.	
	a) add	b) remove		c) put	d	stop
5	I think I'vew	hy they had I	ied to me	about their	real ident	tity هوية.
	a) discovered				ď	scanned
6	All he needs is a/an					
	a) opportunity	b) solution		c) admittan	ce d	unusual
7	It wouldyou	to get your to	eachers' ac	dvice before	taking y	our final exams.
	a) harm	b) hurt		c) gain	d	pay
8	8 During my last holiday, I have a lot of weight as I spent it eat					eating a lot
	without moving.					
		b) earned		c) gained	d	beat
9	We alwaysp	eople who w	ork hard.			
	a) insult					
10	I am a student in the	third second	lary grade.	. I E	nglish for	twelve years.
	a) learn					am learning
11	We our frien	ds for a year.	They are to	oo busy.	4	
	a) never have met			b) haven't r	net	
	-,					
12	The teacher has exp					\ cinco
		b) as long as) since
13	Noha the ho					
	a) has been cleaned			nad beel	n cleaning]
	-/ //03 01001100	hief woning		•		,
	My son the) saw
	a) have seen	D) Has seen		C/ 3CC		I) JULY

6	15 My family has live	5 My family has lived in Mansoura the day I was born on.				
	a) for	b) when	c) while	d) since		
	16 I can't go to bed now because I		my homework yet.			
	a) haven't done	b) don't do	c) hasn't done	d) hadn't done		

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Mr Reda,

I hope everything is OK with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing table tennis and volleyball. But, let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checkedcolourful shirt. Ahmed and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transport, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home, I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mother solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing.

See you soon, my manager. Best regards,

Anas

140 · Hmit 3

17	The writer th	inks that his friends	osponensodenoba g				
	a) didn't like his appearance c) made fun of his appearance		b) liked his appe	b) liked his appearance			
			d) were ashamed of his shoes				
18	The underline	The underlined word "up-to-date" means					
	a) old	b) ancient	c) modern	d) fast			
19	What is the purpose of this passage?						
	a) The writer wants to tell a story.		b) The writer is not going to work.				
		proud of his mum.	d) The writer is sl	howing his abilities.			
20	According to t	the passage, the write	er is	ŭ .			
	a) careful	b) punctual	c) careless	d) hard-working			

21 How much did it cost the writer to go home? a) 150 pounds. b) 300 pounds. c) 75 pounds.

d) 225 pounds.

22 The writer sentin the attachment.

a) his tasks

b) his shoes

c) his photos

d) nothing

23 How could the writer pay for the ride?

a) He paid by Visa card.

b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's house.

c) His mother paid for him when he reached home.

d) The driver didn't take money.

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة مهم للغلية لأنك تحتاج إلى استمتاع بعملك حتى تحقق النجاح. لكن عليك أن تتاكد أن هذه الوظيفة لن تؤثر على حياتك الشخصية.

a) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

b) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not effect

your personal life.

c) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your public life.

d) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be success. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Practising activities at school is very important, so teachers should encourage their students to take part in various activities.

a تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغلية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين إحباط طلابهم للمشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

b تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمرًا مهمـًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

🔾 تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمرًا مهمًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تدعيم طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المشتركة.

d تعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمرًا عاديًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The advantages of living in a civilised city."

البجوع المالية الخاتب عن 286 من التحريب التعليب الخاتب عن 286 من التحريب التعليب الخاتب عن 286 من التحريب التحريب التعليب التحريب التعليب التحريب التعليب التحريب التعليب التحريب التعليب التحريب التعليب الت



Unit 4

Objectives



استفید بمحتوی الوحدة الرقـمی

Reading : A magazine article about moving to a new town

Writing: An email to a magazine's problem page
Listening: A radio phone-in about bullying at school

Speaking: Having a debate

Language: Articles, countable/uncountable nouns
Life Skills: Respect for diversity; communication



-A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

advice (n)	نصيحة	noticeboard (n)**
connection (n)	صلة/علاقة	take something for granted یعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه - مسلما به

Where can we see the noticeboard?





Vocabulary on Reading

article (n)	مقال	join (v) – ed	يلتحق ب
conversation (n)	محادثة	magazine (n)	مجلة
cool (adj)	رائع/هادئ	personal (adj)	شخصي
enjoy (v) – ed	يستمتع بـ	personnel (n)	قسم شئون العاملين
face (v) – d	يواجه	relax (v) – ed	يسترخى
favourite (adj) (n)	مفضًل	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
feel (v)	يشعر بـ	stressful (adj)	مُجِمِد
follow (v) – ed	يتبع	team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية
friendship (n)	صداقة	teammates (n)	أعضاء الفريق
grade (n)	مرتبة/تقدير	teenager (n)	شخص مراهق
individual sport (n)	رياضة فردية	wear (v)	يرتدى

Workbook Vocabulary

(be) allowed	مسموح له	pollute (v) – d	يلوث
connect (v) – ed	يتصل	practice (n)	تدريب
extra (adj)	إضافي	produce (v) – d	ينتج
inform (v) – ed	يخبر	pronounce (v) – d	ينطق
information (n)	معلومات	useful (adj)	مفيد



1	There is a clear	between	crime and poverty.			
	a) communicat	ion	b) connection			
	c) prediction		d) line			
2	lt is important i	to the ins	tructions of your docto	ors to be better.		
	a) neglect	b) ignore	c) tell	d) follow		
3	I read a/an	about global	warming in the newsp	paper today.		
	a) advice		b) noticeboard			
	c) article		d) information			
4	Thisis	concerned with th	ne news of Egyptian ar	tists.		
	a) noticeboard		b) grant			
	c) grade		d) magazine	d) magazine		
5	Ronaldo'ssaid that he helped them as a team captain.					
	a) teammates		b) classmates			
	c) colleagues		d) relatives			
6	Remas got a part-time job to earn some money.					
	a) useful		b) extra	b) extra		
	c) extended		d) stressed			
7	He found it very hard to teach a class full ofwho are not adults yet.					
	a) grown-ups		b) teammates	b) teammates		
	c) teenagers		d) grades			
8	Mona is believe	d to have left scho	ool after the third			
	a) grade	b) degree	c) practice	d) article		
9	Many families	a lot of har	dships as a result of hi	gh prices.		
	a) solve	b) face	c) wear	d) make		
10	My children use	d to fight, but the	y arenow.			
	a) nervous		b) burning			
	c) stressful		d) cool			

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

		1 -	July to Solon
break-time	وقت الراحة/الفسحة	good to	عطوف على/بار ُ ب
busy + (v-ing)	مشغول بــ	go out with	يخرج مع
do practice	يتدرب	make friends	يكؤن صداقات
do team sports	يمارس رياضات جماعية	make it easier	يجعله أسهل
enjoy yourself	أقضى وقتئا ممتعئا	on my own	بمفردى
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	part of a team	عضو في فريق
feel like*	يشعر وكأنه	pass an exam	يجتلز اختبارًا
find out	يكتشف	put into practice	ينفذ شىء للتجربة
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	spend time with	يقضى وقتا مع
get easier	يصبح أسمل	instead of	بدلًا من
go online	يدخل على الإنترنت	move to	ينتقل إلى
ask for	يطلب	revise for	يراجع من أجل
connect with	يتصل ب	stressed about	مضغوط بشأن
connected to	مرتبطًا بـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
good at	جید فی	talk to	يتحدث إلى
good for	مفید اـ	tain to	

Derivo	atives			I feel like a monster when I am hungry.
Ve	erb	Noun		Adjective
gas in page in the control of the control of the control of the		teenager	مراهق	teenage خاص بفترة المراهقة
advise	ينصح	advice adviser/advisor	نصيحة مستشار	advisable مستحسن/مستحب advisory استشاری/نصنحی
connect*	يتصل	connection connector	اتصال/ارتباط وصلة/موصل	مربوط/موصول connected
converse	يتحاور/يناقش	conversation	محادثة/حوار	conversational تحاوری/عامی
			- There is a co	onnects the device to the internet.

- The two devices are connected.

grade	مِيقِيًا/غُنْمِ	grade	درجة/رتبة	graded	مصنف/متدرج
grant	یمب/یمنح	grant grantee grantor	منحة/عطاء معصًى له مانح/واهب	granted	ممنوح/متاح
personif	پجسد/پشخص	person personification personality	شخص تجسيد/تشخيص الشخصية	personal personable	شخصی جناب/حسن المظ
practise	يتمرن/يمارس	practice practitioner	تدریب صاحب معنة	practising practised	ممارس خبیر
relax	يستريح	relaxation	راحة/ارتياح	relaxed relaxing	مستریح/مسترخ مریح
stress	يضغط/يشدد على	stress	منغط	stressed stressful	مرهنق محمد

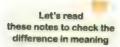
Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
صلة/علاقة	relation/contact	separation/disconnection انفصال/عدم اتصال
راثع	neat/fashionable	bad/uncool
يستمتع ب	appreciate/savour/like	detest/dislike يشمئز/يكره
يواجه	confront/encounter	withdraw/avoid بنبجير/بيسي
مفضل	preferred/popular	unpopular/disliked غیر محبوب/مکروہ
يتبع	pursue/chase	avoid/neglect يتجنب/يعمل
يلتحق ب/يربط	unite/attach	detach/disconnect/disunite
يسترخى	calm/rest	irritate/worry يقلق/يتوتر
اعب	begin/initiate	end/finish ينمى
	صلة/علاقة ا رائع يستمتع ب يواجه مفضل يتبع يتبع يلتحق بـ/يربط	relation/contact رائع neat/fashionable رائع appreciate/savour/like معنع ب confront/encounter معنضل preferred/popular معنضل pursue/chase ستحق بـ/يربط unite/attach

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	Finally, she took	my and g	gave up smoking.			
	a) advice	b) advise	c) advisable	d) advises		
2	Holidays always	give us a chance t	0 ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
	a) relaxed		b) relax			
	c) relaxation		d) relaxing			
3	My parents aske	ed me to revise we	II my next exar	my next exams.		
	a) at	b) for	c) from	d) with		
4	The internet and	d social media hav	e made it easier to	many friends.		
	a) take	b) give	c) make	d) break		
5	All of us should	learn how to be g	oodold people	e.		
	a) at	b) in	c) by	d) to		
6	Our English tea	cher is very	He always wears cas	sual clothes.		
	a) personable		b) personal			
	c) personality		d) personify			
7	I, as a teacher, a	lways the	e importance of studyin	g for my students.		
	a) stressed		b) stress			
	c) stressful		d) stresses			
8	Children must f	follow their parent	s' advice. The antonym	of "follow" is		
	a) pursue	b) chase	c) unite	d) avoid		
9	My favourite ho	obby is reading sho	ort stories. The synonyn	n of "favourite" is		
	a) preferred		b) disliked			
	c) detached		d) neat			
10	We enjoyed	during our l	ast holiday in Aswan.			
	a) us	b) ourselves	d) our	d) we		





look at Hooked at the sea to relax. ينظر إلى

look for = search for She looked for a new flat to buy last month. تبحث عن

look up Look the word up in your dictionary if you don't

يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس أو معلومة في مرجع know its meaning.

look forward to My mother says she's looking forward to meeting you. يتطلع إلى

look like What did the man look like?

امترس look out = watch out Look out! There's a car coming.

look after = take care of Don't worry, I'll look after the kids tomorrow. بعتنی ب

We wear light clothes in summer. يرتدي (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص)

put on Put on your shoes. We are late for school. يقوم بارتداء (تعبرون الحدث وليس نوع العلابس)

2 dress I got up early, dressed and went to school. برتدی (بدون مفعول)

مفعول + dress My wife dressed our daughter, Noha. بلس شخصنا لا يستطيع اللبس بنفسه

(be) dressed in = wear She is dressed in a white jacket. = She is wearing a white jacket. يرتدي

life There is no life on the moon. الحباة بوجه عام

a life وصف الحياة We hope to live a better life.

the life The life of blind people is difficult. فترة عباة شخص/ حيوان/ طائر...

paper (uncountable noun) Dictionaries are usually printed on thin paper. ورق (مادة خام) - I like to sit in bed and read the Friday papers. papers (n) - The border guards stopped me and asked to see جرائد/وثائق/أوراق رسمية my papers. My father likes to read a paper every day. a paper صحيفة connected to The printer is connected to the computer. متصل بــ (شيء يتصل مباشرة بشيء آخر مادي) Doctors believe that a lot of diseases are connected with connected with pollution level. مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بـ (معنويـًا) - Is there a phone number where I can contact you? contact يتصل بـ/تواصل - We need a contact with the outside world. وهنا تأخذ حرف الجر with/between It is difficult to deal with teenagers nowadays. المراهق teenager It is difficult to deal with teenage students these 6 teenage (adj.) مراهق days. She was in her teens when she met him. teens سن المرامقة (ما بين ١٣ – ١٩ سنة)

Vocabulary Check point 3

1	Yesterday, I h	ad to stay home to lo	ok my sick au	ınt.
·	a) for	b) after	c) up	d) forward to
2		of you toth	e little baby while I an	n washing the dishes.
	a) dress	b) wear	c) put on	d) press
3	is fu	ll of ups and downs =	النجاحات والإخفاقا	
	a) The life	b) A life	c) Living	d) Life
4	I keep my im	portant in a	safe in my office.	
	a) paper	b) papers	c) a paper	d) the paper
5	Young childr	en need to contact	people outside	e their families.
	a) with	b) to	c) by	d) no word



Vocabulary General Exercises

r .	1 My son is goin	g toour lo	cal sports club to play fo	otball there.
	a) practise	b) face	c) follow	d) join
2	2 I have read a v	ery gooda	c) follow bout education in today	's paper.
	a) article	(b) connection	c) noticeboard	d) information
3	a lasked my chi	ldren tohe	avy clothes if they wante	ed to go out
	a) put	b) wear	c) dress	d) feel
4	I always benef	it from my teacher's	advice as it is really	
	a) useless	b) harmful	c) useful	d) interested
5	The headmast	er of our school alw	ays writes his instruction	s on a on
	the wall.			
	a) table	b) notebook	c) noticeboard	d) booklet
6	It is taken for	that bullying i	is a bad behaviour which	we all must change
	a) denial	b) granted	c) refusal	d) decided
7	It is important	toyour coa	ach's instructions carefull	v if you want to be
	in the first tear	n.		y ii you want to be
	a) allow	b) flow	c) follow	d) borrow
8	The teaching p	rofession is very	, but it's the most in	nnortant
	a) stress	b) pleased	c) stressed	d) stressful
9	I hate using my	/ car during rush ho	Urs مقت الذروة This makes n	ne
	a) happy	b) stressed	c) praised	d) dressed
10	In our house, o	ur relationship is ba	sed onand resp	ect We are all
	friends.			cett the die di
	a) communicat	ion	b) accusation	
	c) suspect		d) friendship	
11	It is disagreeab	le to anyor	ne late at night for any re	ason
	a) contact	b) connect	c) communicate	d) link
12	Young children	are always in need	of having contact	others
	a) With	b) no word	c) of	d) by
13	Judges shouldr	n't let their	feelings influence their o	ecisions
	a) personnel	b) personal	c) personification	d) person
14	The company w	where my father wor	rks is proud of its qualifie	d person
	a) personnel	b) personal	c) personification	d) person
15	I am tired becau	use today's work ha	s been	Langa en
	a) peaceful	b) helpful	c) careful	d) stressful
16	Monali III au Sa	lah appeared on the	e cover of an internationa	ılonce.
	What a pride!			
	a) book	b) magazine	c) website	d) noticeboard
		_		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,

17	Y	ou look	in this blue shirt	. When	did you b	ouy it?		
	-	ctrossed	h) nervous		c) cool		d) inste	ead
18		saw Mona and S	afaa sitting in the	corne	er deep in	A		
	,	a) articles	h) advice		c) friendsh	ND QIF	a) con	versation
19	1	Jary few students	nassed the final	exam:	s with a	A as the	y were	so difficult.
		a) grade	b) degree		c) certifica	ite	a) qua	lification
20	1	Prepare vourself	nlease\	our iad	cket and fo	ollow me.		(Longman)
		a) put out	h) put on		c) dress		a) wea	ir .
21	1	The music of toda	v is very popula	r with .		t suits their	langu	age style.
		a) teenage	b) teens		c) teen ag	ing	d) teer	nagers
22	0 1	t has become qui	ite difficult to de	al with		chilaren.		
		a) teenage	b) teens		c) teen ag	ling	d) teei	nagers
23	3 .	These days, I'm st	ressedr	ny nev	v position.	. I want you	duvic	e.
		a) with	b) about		c) at		d) by	
24	4	sport eve	ery day is very us	seful to	get healt	hy bodies.		
		a) Taking	b) Doing		c) Going		d) Wir	ning
2	5	Llike students wh	o depend on the	emselv	es and do	their home	ework.	
		a) lonely	b) by them		c) on their	r owe	d) on	their own
2	6	My daughter is al	ways husy	for	the exam:	S.		
		a) studying	b) to study		c) to stud	ying	d) stu	died
2	7	Tamer is good at	sports.	He's be	en practis	sing swimm	ing sir	ice his
		childhood.						
		a) team	b) people		c) field			ividual
2	8	My mother is alw	ays doi	ng the	housewor	rk.	25.0	(Longman)
		a) husy	b) keen		c) enthus	lastic	d) inte	erested
2	9	It is advisable for	all of us to be go	ood	our	parents, es	peciall	y when they
		get old.						
		a) for	b) to		c) at		d) abo	out
3	0	As a result of mo	dern technology	, it has	become e	easier to		
		a) walk online Marwan always f	b) make online		c) go onli	ine	a) mo	ove online
3	11			***********	friends at	school. He	is very	sociable.
		a) give	b) take		c) do		a) ma	ike
C	h	oose the Two cor	rect answers of	the Fi	ve option	is:		
3	12	He must be happ	by because he ha	as	his fir	nal exams.		
		a) passed b) succeeded	c) faile	d	d) succeed	ded in	e) managed
3	13	My son managed	d to do all his wo	rk	No	one helped	him.	, ,
		a) lonely b	of his own	c) on h	nis own	d) only		e) alone
3	34	The president fa	ces the difficult t	ask of	putting th	e economy	back	on its feet.
		The synonyms of	f the word "face"	are				
		a) confront b	encounter	c) with	ndraw	d) irritate		e) detest
3	35	They followed th	ne plan that the r	manag	er had wo	rked out. T	ne anto	onyms of
		the word "follow			ا مدم	d) succee	dad	e) ignored
		a) pursued b) chased	c) neg	lected	u) succee	ueu	C) Ignored

Indefinite articles (a/an)

أدوات النكرة

What Is The Difference Between A & An?



- تستخدم 🗟 قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a boy/ a house/ a friend/ a table/ a problem/ a car



- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحروف تنطق كأنه (u) مثل حروف (e-eu-ew).

a unit / a university / a uniform / a union / a European citizen / a useful tip / a ewe نعجة

- تستخدم a قبل الاسم العفرد في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف (O) وينطق كأنه (W).

a one-way street / a one-pound coin



- تستخدم an قبل الأسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple / an orange / an egg / an elephant / an eagle



- تستخدم 30 قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن غير منطوق ويليه صوت متحرك.

an hour / an honest man

تستخدم (a/an) في الحالات التالية،

A/An

١ ﴾ قبل الاسم النكرة الذي يذكر في الجملة لأول مرة.

When I was in the shop, I saw a boy with his two sisters.

٧ ﴾ قبل الوظائف والمهن والحرف.

My father is a carpenter.

She is an engineer.

٣ ﴾ قبل تعبيرات الكمية والأرقام مثل:

- a pair ووج - a couple - ووج - a hundred الف - a thousand - روج - a quarter - روج My son bought a dozen of pens. (This means that my son bought 12 pens.)

٤ ﴾ قبل اسم مفرد عند تعريف الكلمات.

A teacher is someone whose job is to teach others, especially in a school. An egg is a round object with a hard surface, that contains a baby bird, snake, insect, etc.

o) مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والسعر وعدد المرات بمعنى (في: per)

100 pounds a kilo. (This means that 100 pounds per kilo.) 90 kilometres an hour.

٦) قبل الصفة إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

اسم مفرد + الصفة + (a/an)

My father bought a new book.

I met an American friend.

أما إذا كان الاسم الموصوف اسمًا لا يعد أو جمعًا لا نستخدم (a/an)

My father bought new books.

الحرف. على الاختصارات التي تنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف.

I sent an SMS to my friend yesterday.

I downloaded an MP3 song online last week.

Dad has a DVD, so he always buys CDs.

The definite article (the)

تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية:

📢 🕻 قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها (الموجود منها واحد فقط).

the sky the sun the North Pole the universe

٢) قبل الاسم الذي تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.

· the earth

I read a book. The book was really interesting.

٣) قبل صفات الدرجة الثالثة (صبغة التفضيل).

Ali is the tallest boy at his school.

أما في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my – his – her – its – our – their – your) أو (s') للملكية لا نستخدم قبلها (the). Ali is my father's oldest uncle. Nora is my best friend at school.

٤) قبل أسماء أو اختصارات البلاد التي تحتوي على:

/ ولاية : State / مملكة : Kingdom / مملكة / Kingdom / ولاية

إمارات Emirates / اتحاد : Federation

the Arab Republic of Egypt = the A.R.E.

the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia = the K.S.A.

the United States of America = the U.S.A.

أو قبل أسماء الدول الجمع ... مثل:

هولندا the Netherlands

the Philippines الفلبين

و) قبل أسـماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والقنوات ومجموعات البحيرات وسلاســل الجبال الجمع والكتب المقدسة والصحارى

ومجموعة الجزر الجمع والصحف،

the River Nile the Red Sea the Pacific Ocean

the Suez Canal the Great Lakes the Alps

the Quran the Sahara the Caribbean Islands

the Times

أما إذا جاء الجبل مفردًا أو جاءت البحيرة مفردة أو الجزيرة مفردة ... فلا نستخدم (the).

جزيرة سيشل Seychelles بحيرة ناصر Lake Nasser جزيرة سيشل

(play - listen to - earn - teach - study - practise): قبل الآلات الموسيقية إذا جاء قبلها

I like listening to the piano with my family. Hany enjoys playing the guitar every day.

٧) قبل الاختراءات والاكتشافات.

The mobile is one of the most important inventions.

أما إذا جاء اسم الاختراع جمع غلا يأتي قبله أداة.

Mobiles become necessary in our lives.

أما إذا قصدنا من الاختراع الجهاز وليس الاختراع بشكل عام يسبق بـ(a/an).

My father bought a mobile yesterday.

٨) قبل فصائل الحيوانات أو الطيور.

The lion is very strong.

أما إذا جاء اسم الحيوان أو الطائر جمعًا فلا نضع أداة.

Lions are very strong animals.

أما إذا قصينا عيدًا واحدًا من فصيلة الحيوان أو الطائر يسبق بـ(a/an).

I saw a lion at the zoo yesterday.

٩) قبل الصفة للإشارة إلى الجمع.

the rich = rich people الأغنياء / the poor = poor people الضينيون / the Chinese المعاقون the disabled = disabled people

We collected a lot of money to help the poor.

• 1) مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والمناخ.

the government/ the police/ the United Nations/ the climate/ the weather/
the press/ the army/ the environment

١ ١) قبل بعض الكلمات التي تفيد الترتيب ... مثل:

first/ second/ third/ only/ last

Mohammed was the last one to arrive. It is the only chance for you.

١ ٢) عندما نقصد شخصنا واحدًا لا يوجد غيره.

the President of Egypt/ the King of Denmark/ the Queen of England

١ ٧) مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه والخدمات) ... مثل:

the cinema/ the theatre/ the club/ the library/ the shop/ the post office

٤ 🕦 للإشارة إلى فترات زمنية وخاصة عقد من الزمان (فترة ١٠ أعوام) أو قرن (فترة ١٠٠ عام)

the twenties الستينيات the sixties الستينيات the nineties

I like reading for the great novelists of the 1900s.

My mother hated the fashions of the 1960s.

٥) قبل اسم العائلة الجمع للإشارة إلى كل أفراد العائلة.

The Johnsons have lived in this house for many years.

٦ ١) قبل ذكر التواريخ.

I married on the 3rd of November, 1990.

٧١) قبل أسعاء الأمراض ... مثل:

the measles الحصبة the mumps النكلف the mumps النكلف the measles الحصبة If one of the children got the measles, we all got the measles.

لاحظ أن هناك بعض الأمراض لا يأتي قبلها أداة ... مثل:

AIDS/ cancer/ malaria

There are several medications that can be used to treat malaria.

٨) عند الإضافة (إضافة اسم لاسم آخر وهو ما يقابل المضاف إليه في اللغة العربية).

The growth of the steel industry is very big in our country.

The arrival of our guests was very late.

٩١) للتخصيص

The man who stole my money, was my neighbour.

My brother lives in the big villa with a black door.

Language Check point 4

1	You must neve	er look at	sun directly during the eclip	se.
,	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
2	Hend isa) a	university st	udent.	d) no article
3	l'll buy youa) a	new bag b) an	which you saw online. c) the	d) no article
4	We dream of a) a	climbingb) an	Alps one day.	d) no article
5		father isb) an	engineer, I don't like maths.	d) no article

No article

١ ﴾ عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

Children are sometimes noisy.

Vitamins are very important for our bodies.

Men should be patient and hardworking.

٧) مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper

I usually have breakfast at 7 o'clock.

٣) مع الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام.

advice/ freedom/ love/ sadness/ happiness/ beauty/ education/ success All countries try to develop education.

ع ﴾ مع الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم.

King Lear/ Professor Zewail/ President Nasser/ Doctor Magdy Yacoub

o) مع كلمة home بعد أفعال (nome – return).

Mona returned home early last night.

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

There's a home for the elderly at the end of our street. Ahmed moved out of the family home a year ago.

٣ ﴾ مع كلمة WOrk إذا جاءت بمعنى مكان العمل.

I usually go to work in my car.

لاحظ الحملة التالية:

The work here is very tiring. (وهنا يقصد طبيعة العمل وليس مكان العمل)

٧) قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد والكميات ومنها.

oil/ water/ milk/ money/ meat/ juice, etc.: المواد الدراسية English/ Arabic/ science/ history/ physics: المواد الدراسية

glass/ wood/ gold/ silver/ paper: المواد الخام

football/ tennis/ basketball/ volleyball/ swimming: الألعاب الرياضية

🔥 🕻 مع أسماء القارات.

Africa/Europe/Asia/South America

٩) مع أسماء المدن والقرى.

Alexandria/London/New York

. ١) مع أسماء اللغات.

English/French/Turkish/Chinese

أما إذا جاء بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the):

the English language / the Turkish language

١١) مع كلمة Space إذا جاءت بمعنى الفضاء.

I like reading about the history of space travel.

أما إذا كان المقصود مكانًا فارغًا فنستخدم قبلها the:

The space between the house and the garage is very big.

٢) مع كلمة television إذا كنا نقصد المعروض في التليفزيون.

Can you tell me what is on TV tonight?

أما إذا كنا نقصد جهاز التلفزيون فنستخدم the:

A: Can you tell me what is on the TV?

B: I think it's a vase.

٣ ١) مع الأماكن الآتية إذا كان النحاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذي أنشلت من أجله.

school/bed/hospital/prison/court/church/mosque/college

I go to school to learn. (I am a student.)

He made an accident and was taken to hospital. (He was a patient.)

He committed a crime and was sent to prison. (He was a prisoner.)

I went to bed early. (I went to sleep.)

أما إذا كان النهاب إليما لغرض آخر ... فنستخدم (the):

I went to the school to meet the headmaster. (I was a visitor.)

He went to the prison to visit his friend. (He was a visitor.)

My sister is standing by the bed. (The word "bed" here means a piece of furniture.)





Language General Exercises

		and the first of the	coru.	
1	Ali never tells	lies. He isI	honest boy.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
2	iviv family mer	Mbers are intereste	d in vicitina	Linde of Dec.
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
3	Nagwa likes pl	laving viol	in before sleeping.	a) no article
	a) a	b) an	c) the	40
4	Everyone shou	ıld sleen at least 7 k	nours day to	d) no article
	a) a	h) an	c) the	pe iit.
5	I bought a god	nd basket made of	plastic.	d) no article
	a) a	b) an	plastic.	4-
6	Nothing in our	life is more import	c) the	d) no article
	a) a	ine is more import	ant thanha	
7	1 like	b) an	c) the	d) no article
•	3) 2	priysics although it	is a difficult subject.	
0	Mo all languable	b) an	c) the	d) no article
0	we all know th	at brain ca	an't be transplanted.	
•	d) d	b) an	c) the re seen the temples of	d) no article
9	It is fir	st time that we hav	e seen the temples of	of Luxor.
	a) a	D) an	c) the	d) no article
10	Don't move! In	iere issnak	ke near vou!	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
11	1110be	exam we are doing	I to have tomorrow:	will be easy
	a) no article	D) the	c) an	d) a
12	I WOLK ILL	European comp	any located in	Caina
	a) a/no article		b) an/no article/n	9
	c) a/the		d) no article/n	o article
13	The charity is tr	ying to collect mor	nev for disab	aled
	d) d	b) an	c) the	d) no article
1.49	There are millio	ns of stars in	snace	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
15	My father went	toschool	as the headmaster w	ranted to most him
	d) d	b) an	c) the	-1\ 1
16	Hatem always q	oes to sch	ool wearing a unifor	u) no article
	d) d	b) an	c) tha	all and a second
17	My son had a ni	ghtmare yesterday.	In nightma	d) no artícle re, he was kidnapped
	by a gang.	, , , ,	- Ingittille	ic, he was kiunapped
1	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
				u) no article

18	The	vou drive,	safer you are.		(Longman)
	a) slower/-	b) slowe	st/the c) slower/a	d) slower/the	5
19	I went shopp	ing and boug	htcomputer	for my son.	
	ala	h) an	c) the	a) no article	
20	con	nouters are ne	cessary for all kinds of	jobs all over the work	d.
	2) A	b) An	c) The	d) no article	
21	I have just re	ceived	SMS from my best fr	riend.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article	
22	ma	de the world a	smaller place.		
	a) The plane	chave h) The n	lane has c) Some pla	nes have d) This plane	has
23	one	-way road is n	eeded to be construct	ted on the west bank of	or Aswari.
	a) A	b) An	c) The	a) no article	
24	When some	one had broke	n into my house, I call	led police.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	a) no article	
25	The man wh	o stole the car	r was taken to	prison.	
	ala	b) an	c) the	d) no article	
26	They are tal	king to	8-year-old boy calle	d Ali.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	a) no article	
27	Nothing in .	life is	better thanp	eace of mind.	(Longman)
	2) 2/-	b) -/a	c) the/-	(I) -/-	
28	Carpenters	use 9	lass andwoo	d to make windows.	/no article
	a) no article	/the b) a/no	article c) an/no ar	ticle d) no article	/110 article
29	read	amazing a	rticle aboutV	vorks of Taha Hussein.	(Longman)
	a) -/the	b) a/the	c) an/the	U) d! V-	ity (Longman)
30	Fortunately	, I found	room on bu	s going to my universi	ity. (Longinan)
	a) no/the	b) a/-	c) -/the	homo However I will I	never
3	1 Lalways hav	ve lur	ich with my family at i	home. However, I will r	(Lonamun)
	forget	lunch i ha	a with my menus on t	the beach last month.	(Long)
		rticle	b) no articl	le/the	
	c) the/the		d) no articl	erica	
3	2	eat Lakes are i	North Ame	rticle d) no article	e/no article
	a) The/no a	rticle b) A/no	airo by train takes	hour.	
3		y tob) 2/00	article c) no articl	le/a d) no article	e/an
	a) the/an	noaks Italian v	well This means that h	ne speakswel	
3	a) an Italiar	language	b) the Itali	an language	
	c) Italian la		d) an Italia		
•	5 All giraffee	are long-neck	ed animals. This mean	ns that	
-	a) the giraf	fes have long r	necks b) the gira	affes have a long neck	
		fe has a long n		affes are long necks	

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

		Vocabulary			
-	1	In most of the v	vorld's countries, it is	obligatory اجباری for y	outh to
		the army after t	inishing school.		
		a) leave	b) enter	c) join	d) go
2	2	This film is a	of mine. I like i	it so much that I water	thed it 5 times
		a) distracted	b) favourite	c) favour	d) personal
3	3	ine final match	of the Egyptian tean	n went into	time.
		a) extra	b) lost	c) missed	d) passing
4	ŀ	It is important t	o learn, but it is more	important to put wh	nat we have learnt
		into			
		a) practise	b) brain	c) grade	d) practice
5)	rootball is a tea	m sport, but swimmi	ng is a/ansi	port.
		a) alone	b) group	c) individual	d) pair
6		is some	etimes hard, but we I	have to try to make it	eniovable
	1	a) The life	b) Life	c) A life	d) Live
7		your st	noes quickly and huri	V to catch your train	to Cairo
	-	a) Dress up	b) Take off	c) Put on	d) Wear down
8	f	HE WILL KNOW IT I	e has passed or faile	d his exams as the ex	am results are on
	Ţ	ine			
	ć	a) connection	b) notebook	c) advice	d) noticeboard
9	P	My friend becon	nes nervous when he	a difficult s	ituation
	ć	a) welcomes	b) faces	c) stresses	d) drops
10	-	admire the way	my brother	words of English.	
	ā	a) pronoun	b) pronounce	c) pronounces	d) pronunciation
11	-	admire my brot	her's of Eng	ilish.	
	a) pronoun	b) pronounce	c) pronounces	d) pronunciation
12	1	want you to	me some advice	ce about how to imp	rove my English skills
	d) make	b) have	c) take	d) give
13	2	top talking. The	teacher gave us his.	attention.	
	a) personnel	b) personality	c) personal	d) person
14	A	ve carre do with	out our parents'	which is based o	on love.
	a) connection	b) pronunciation	c) advice	d) personnel

15 Employees sho	ouldn't feel	while working so that t	hey can work
effectively.		•	
a) stressful	b) stressed	c) comfortable	d) granted
a) Stressiui	D) Jacobea		
Language			
16 Egyp	t is a pioneering co	ountry in Africa and the M	iddle East.
Δ (ε	b) An	c) The	u) no article
17 I know that	Everest is th	ne highest mountain in th	e world.
2) 2	b) an	c) the	d) no article
18 I think Omar K	(hairat isl	oest musician in Egypt.	
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
10 Loften like to		nusic to feel relaxed.	
- \ -	h) an	c) the	d) no article
an Dad consto	work at 7.	so he doesn't have	breakfast with us.
a) no article/ti	he	b) no article/a	
c) no article/n		d) the/a	
C) no article/ii	thief	went fast to warn his neigh	ghbours.
	b) an	c) the	d) no article
a) any	•		
	know aboutb) ants	c) the ants	d) ant
a) an ant	D) allts	•	
	ammed, plays	drum very well.	d) no article
a) a	b) an	and people at the party of	
		and people at the party of	d) no article
a) a	b) an	to give due care to	education.
	government tries	to give due care toc) the	d) no article
a) a	b) an	-/	
26 To get the jo	b, you need	experience with the co	d) no article
a) a	b) an	c) the	
27 I am going to	o spendv	veek in Alexandria with m	d) no article
-1-	h) an	c) the	u) no article
28 I'm	teacher of English	and I often listen to the ra	adio in Liigiisii.
a) the/no art		b) a/no article	
c) a/the		d) no article/no	article
29 Mr Hassan is	better o	f the two teachers.	I) and the second
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
30 England and	d France are	European countries.	d) no article
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

bullying (n)	تنمر/بلطجة	nursing (n)	التمريض
bully (v) - y ied (n)	يتنمر/متنمر/بلطجي	phone-in (n) نى (يكسمح فيه بتلقى الاتصالات)	برنامج إذاعي أو تلفزيوا
cheat (v) – ed*	يغش	police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة

You're not supposed to cheet during the exam.





Vocabulary on Readin	g Texts			
behave (v) – d	يتصرف	hostess (n)	مضيفة	
continue (v) – d	يستمر	host (n)	مضيف	
copying (n)	نسخ	list (n) (v) – ed	- قائمة/يعد قائمة	
debate (n)	مناظرة	lonely (adj)	وحيدًا	
effect (n)	تأثير	nasty (adj)	مؤذ ِ اردىء الطبع	
experiences (n)	خبرات حياتية	negative (adj)	سلبي	
fight (v)	يتشاجر/يتعارك	radio show (n)	برنامج إذاعي	
hard (adj)	صعب/قاسٍ	rucksack (n)	حقيبة الظهر	
hate (v) (n) – d	يكره/الكره	scared (adj)	ت. خائف/مذعور	
hide (v)	يخفى	terrible (adj)	فظيع	
Workbook Vocabulary			4	
,				

exciting (adj)	مثير	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
laugh (v) – ed	يضحك	soon (adv)	سريعـُا/حالاً

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

			EVALOGOIGILA
يسخر من	laugh at	على الخط (خط التليفون	(be) on the line
يدرج في قائمة	list in	ولد عمره ١٥ علمـًا	a 15-year-old boy
يوضح	make clear	يضيف إلى	add to
لطيف مع	nice to	غاضب من (شخص)	angry with
على مواقع التواصل اا	on social media للجتماعي	مجددًا/بعد الآن (تفيد عد	any more = any longer
یشیر اِلی	point at	على قدر اهتمامي	as far as I'm concerned
يبدأ محادثات مع	start conversations with	مختلف عن	different to/from
متأكد من	sure about	تأثير على	effect on
يلتقط صورة لــ	take a photo of	يتناغم بشكل جيد مع	get along well with
يستغرق وقتنا لكى	take time to	يحصل على درجات جيدة	get good marks
يتبادل الأدوار	take turns to	أنا على ما يرام	I'm well

Vocabulary Check point

00	26 flie collect	distret from a, a,		
1	My grandson is	s very angry as the o	lder children at his sch	oolhim.
	a) please	b) bully	c) host	d) behave
0	Un desided to	leave his inh as he w	as feeling very	about it.
2		b) excited	c) delighted	d) negative
	a) positive	rite a thank-you lett	er to your afte	er this kind welcome.
3	a) guest	b) host	c) bully	d) cheat
4	My jokes made	e them out	loud.	
·	a) smile	b) cough		d) continue
5	The secretary	as if he is th	e boss of the company	/ .
	a) hehaves	b) cheats	c) hides	a) deletes
6	I had a/an	with my brother v	whether studying late a	at night is useful or not.
•	a) effect	1 2 1 1 2	c) belief	d) bullying
7		e should find a day a	nd meet	
•	a) hard	b) scarcely	c) soon	d) lonely
8	My colleague	is so funny and he a	lways makes me	*******
	a) laugh	b) fight	c) scared	d) hate
9	His name is in	the waiting	for the operation.	
•	a) cheat	b) list	c) lest	d) media

Derivatives

Verb		No	Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر على	effect effectiveness	تاثیر/اثر فاعلیة/کفاءة/جدوی	effective	مؤثر/فعال	
behave	يتصرف/يسلك	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكي	
cheat	يغش	cheat/cheater cheating	غشاش/مخادع غش/تضلیل	cheated	مخدوع	
fight	يحارب/يكافح/يتشلجر	fighting fighter	اشتباك/مكافحة محارب/مكافح			
host	يستضيف	hostess host	مضيفة مضيف/حشد	hospitable	مضياف	
laugh	يضدك	laugh laughter	ضدك	laughable مزنی	مثير للضحك/	
police	يحفظ الأمن والنظلم	police policing	شرطة ضبط الأمن والنظام		PROCESSOR CONTRACTOR C	

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرابط Synonym	Antonym a	المض
continue	يستمر	resume/proceed	stop/cease	يتوقف
exciting	مثير	inspiring/thrilling	boring/dull	ممل
hard	صعب/قاسٍ	difficult/exhausting	easy/facile	سهل
hide	يخفى	conceal/cover	reveal/uncover	يكشف
host رامج	مضيف/مقدم الب	presenter/moderator	guest/visitor	ضيف/زائر
nasty	مقرف/كريه	disgusting/offensive	agreeable/nice	مقبول/لطيف
negative	سلبي	bacl/harmful	positive/beneficial	إيجابي/مفيد
scared	مذعور	frightened/afraid/fearful	unafraid/bold/brave	غير خائف/شجاع
terrible	فظيع	horrible/awful	beautiful/nice/wond	lerful جمیل/رائع

1	During the sch	ool trip, we	a lot of wonderful pho	itos.
•	a) made	b) took	c) listed	d) did
2		•	udents tookan	nd I corrected them.
_	a) after	b) off	c) turns	d) ahead
3		ositive on me.		
	a) effect		b) affect	
	c) effective		d) effectiveness	
4		manager of the com	pany isthe line. H	le wants to talk to you.
	a) at	b) off	c) on	d) in
5	iis ver	y important for any	place, especially where	there are many
	crimes.			
	a) Police	b) Policies	c) Policemen	d) Policing
6	Smoking has r	backs on our health. Th	ne antonym of	
	"negative" is			
	a) positive		b) harmful	
	c) bad		d) horrible	
	7 He couldn't hi	de himself from me	. I could see him. The sy	nonym of "hide"
	is			
	a) reveal	b) cover	c) uncover	d) adore
1	B Mr Ashraf is v	ery He is g	enerous with his guest	S.
	a) host		b) hostess	
	c) hosting		d) hospitable	
!	9 As as	s I am concerned, th	ey are the most honora	ible people i have ever
	met.			
	a) for	b) long	c) far	d) soon
1	I get angry	those who tr	eat their kids nervously	1.
	a) to	b) about	c) of	d) with

a 15-year-old boy

I will play a game with a 15-year-old boy. He is my son's friend.

ولد عمره ١٥ عامنا

15-year-old boys

أولاد عمر كل منهم ١٥ عاميًا

All the players in our team are 15-year-old boys.

- لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها أسم: second/minute/hour/day/week/month/year/decade/century

We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday.

- في حالة وجود كلمة (time) بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (s') في حالة المفرد و(s) في حالة الجمع: He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.

debate

مناظرة (جدال) غالثًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

The law was passed after a long and sometimes

angry debate.

discussion

مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)

After a long discussion with her father, she

decided not to take the job.

too = as well

في نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أيضنا

I like English, and he likes it too,

I will travel to Paris as well.

either

بمعنى أيضًا في نهاية الجملة المنفية

I don't like English, and he doesn't like it either.

move to

ينتقل إلى

I've just moved to this town.

move in

سکن غی مسکن جدید We moved in a new house.

move out

ينتقل من بيته

We moved out to live in a new flat.

move off

I waved to my friends as the bus moved off.

drop v. (ped)

كسقط شيئا

My daughter dropped the phone.

fall v. (fell - fallen)

The phone fell on the floor.

hard (adj.) بعد It is a hard question.

hard (adv.) بجد You must work hard.

hardly (adv.) I can hardly walk.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There was a long, and we ended up with nothing. Each one stuck to their opinions. b) discussion a) scenario d) conference c) debate 2 Did you know? A boy took his father's phone and sold it to his friend. b) 12-year old a) 12 year old d) twelve-year-old c) 12-years 3 In atime, I will be a member of Al Ahly club. b) week a) weeks' d) weeks c) week's 4 I don't eat lamb meat, I can't stand its soup, d) neither c) either b) also a) too 5 The organisers of the trip said we would move early in the morning. c) out d) to b) in a) off





Vocabulary General Exercises

			OI U.	
1	It is easy to have	e a lot of friends on	media sites.	
	a) society	b) sociable	c) community	d) social
2	Since my fathe	r's death, I have felt	verv	d) social
	a) a lone	b) only	c) lonely	d) lone
3	Daliaea	ting meat or chicke	n when they are not fre	sh She's a fusey eater
	a) nosts	b) prefers	c) objects	d) hates
4	Students have	to take whi	le answering the exerci	icar
	a) turns	b) parts	c) places	d) boods
5	My daughter he	opes to be an air	when she gradua	u) neads
	a) host	b) quest	c) hostess	d) bostage
6	The little child.	the bottle t	o the floor, and it broke	into pieses
	a) kept	b) fell	c) dropped	into pieces. (congreso)
7	The little boy do	pesn't like to go to s	chool as he suffers fron	a) filled
	a) bullied	b) bullying	c) hosted	tnere.
8	She tried to	during her ex	ams, but she was notice	a) departing
	a) behave	b) heat	c) cheat	and punished.
9	There must be a	severe punishmen	t for those who	o) cneck
	DOOKS IIIedaliv			
	a) copy	b) remove	c) list	d) poolest
10	She invited us to	o lunch. She was rea	Illy a generous	d) neglect
	a) host	b) hostess	c) guest	Linga ani
11	There has been	a lot ofaho	out the educational syst	tom and its offerts an
	students. A lot of	of parents hate chan	ael	tern and its effects on
	a) chat	b) passion	ge! c) debate	d) agramment
12	My father's advi	ce has a strong	on me and my life:	d) agreement
	a) affect	b) effective	c) defect	d) offert
13	My father's advi-	ce has me a	and my lifestyle	d) effect
	a) affected	b) effective	c) defected	d) offseted
14	The boys hid the	eir friend's book for a	a crected	d) enected
	a) love	b) laugh	c) smile	d) bata
15	l expressed my	pinion about the lo	ss of our team in a	chown on TV
	a) phone-in	b) phone-up	c) phone-out	d) phone by
16	•	foreign languages,	and Mido is doing this,	d) phone-by
	a) eitner	b) too	c) neither	d) also
17	I had no friends i	in my new school, so	o I felt really for the	e first month.
	a) only	b) lonely	c) alone	d) sadly
		*	,	_, sadiy

18	Travelling to As	wan is one of m	y enjoyable	that I can't for	get.
10	a) experiences	b) experimen	c) exper	ts d) co	onversations
10	You have to	the name	s of the students a	alphabetically to f	ind their
	names easily.				
	a) list	b) contain	c) grab	d) ci	reate
20	Lasked my coll	eague to	a photo of me a	nd our manager.	
	a) have	b) make	c) take	d) d	0
04	Lean't stay eye	n a day in such a	hotel.		
	a) torrific	h) terrified	c) terrib	le d) te	erribly
22	Hangen has de	cided to ao into	because	sne likes neiping	people.
	a) nurse	b) nursing	c) nurse	ry u) II	ui ses
23	Haneen has de	cided to be a	because sh	e likes helping pe	eople.
	a) nurse	b) nursing	c) nurse	ry a) n	urses
24	lam not sure	what I sa	w on the street ve	esterday. Please, o	don't ask me.
	a) for	b) that	c) with	d) a	bout
25	As far as I'm	: the gove	rnment is working	g hard to help us	ive well.
	a) amazed	b) concerned	d c) conce	erning d) fi	rightened
26	Your performa	nce is totally	to the last o	ne. You improved	yourself a lot!
	a) similar	b) compared	c) differ	ent d) c	lifficult
27	The phone ran	ng and I replied, I	but there was no	one the i	me.
	a) at	b) on	c) in	(a) V	Vitn
28	A	- is the one who	can get	with his students	-
	a) un	b) together	c) away	a) a	long
29					
	a) in	b) at	c) on	a) a	bout
30	Finally, we have	/e in a b	oigger house!		tongman
	a) removed	b) moved	c) spen	t d) r	nigrated
Ch	oose the Two	correct answers	of the Five optic	ons:	
31	Don't let that	nasty, old dog co	ome up here. The	synonyms of the	word "nasty"
		nd			
	a) thrilling	b) exhausting	c) disgusting	d) agreeable	e) offensive
32	My friend is	enough i	not to get scared	of any animai:	Longman
	a) brave	b) afraid	c) bold	d) generous	e) weak
33	Sohaila contir	nued to work after	er she had her bal	by. The synonyms	of the word
		re and .			1
	a) resumed	b) concealed		d) proceeded	
34	Smoking has		ct on health. It lea	ds to cancer,	
	a) either	b) too	c) neither	d) as well	e) as well as
35	lused to stud	y at night, but n	ow I don't do that	6 V V 6	a) any langer
	a) no more	b) no longer	c) any more	d) either	e) any longer



Countable and Uncountable nouns

Countable numers

هى الأسماء التى يكون لها شكل مفرد ويأتى قبلها (a/an) أو شكل جمع

Examples:

1. Regular plurals (add s)

a car 2 cars a dog 2 dogs an apple 2 apples

2. Nouns ending in (s,ss,sh,ch,x,z) add es

a bus 2 buses a box 2 boxes a quiz 2 quizzes

3. Nouns ending in consonant + y (remove y and add ies)

a baby 2 babies a city 2 cities a story 2 stories

4. Nouns ending in f/fe (remove f/fe and add ves)

a loaf 2 loaves a wife 2 wives a wolf 2 wolves

5. Irregular nouns

a man 2 men a child 2 children an ox 2 oxen a mouse 2 mice a tooth 2 teeth a goose 2 geese a woman 2 women an oasis 2 oases a foot 2 feet

no change

1 sheep 2 sheep 2 deer

1 fish 2 fish

Uncountable nouns

هى أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع ومن ثم لا يأتى قبلها (a/an) وهذه الأسماء تعامل معاملة المفرد

Examples:

1. Liquids

water/coffee/oil/milk/soup/blood/tea/ juice/petrol

2. Gases oxygen/nitrogen/hydrogen/carbon dioxide

3. Languages
Arabic/English/French/Italian/Spanish/
German

Meals breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper

5. School subjects psychology/statistics/science/ mathematics/physics/chemistry/ biology/economics

6. Sports
football/dominos/billiards/tennis/
gymnastics/squash/athletics/chess

7. Food meat/rice/butter/macaroni/cheese/ sugar/salt/bread/toast/beef

8. Abstract nouns
happiness/knowledge/freedom/
business/hatred/education/honesty/
advice/luck/courage/sadness/fun/
peace/progress/behaviour/fear/
confidence/help/sorrow/horror/
information/beauty

الأسماء المعدودة Countable nouns

يأتي معما فعل مفرد أو جمع.

- -That painting is beautiful.
- -Those paintings are beautiful.

يأتي قبل الاسم المفرد منها (a/an).

- Is there a park here?
- He ate an apple.

الأسماء القير معدودة Uncountable nouns

يأتي معما فعل مفرد فقط.

- Swimming is a popular sport.
- That petrol was expensive.

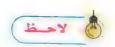
لا يأتي قبلما (a/an).

- This table is made of wood.
- We play football every week.



(a lot of/much/many (کثیر) – few – a few – little – a little قلیل some) قلیل any (ای

a lot of + مفعول عدون مفعول	فى الجملة المثبتة (كثير من)	He always drinks a lot of water. He was tired as he worked a lot.
عدد/كمية + some	في الجملة المثبتة في أسلوب العرض و الطلب	I have some good friends. Would you like some soup?
عدد - کمیة + any	فى السؤال فى الجملة المنفية	Do you want any money? There isn't any water in the bottle.
many + اسم جمع	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there are – so – too	How many brothers have you got? I didn't see many films, only a few. There are many books on the desk.
اسم لا يعد + much	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there is – so – too	How much money do you need? There isn't much furniture here. There is much sugar in the tea.
a few/few + سم جمع یعد	فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للعدد	ا have <mark>a few books</mark> here. يكفى الا يكفى have few books here. لا يكفى
a little/little + اسم لا يعد	فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للكمية	ا have <mark>a little m</mark> oney. يكفى الا يكفى l have <mark>little m</mark> oney.



only a (few مع الأسماء التي لا تعد little / مع الأسماء المعدودة

I bought only a few books.

She listened to only a little music.

a few	قليل ويكفى (مع الأسماء المعدودة)	a little	قليل ويكفى (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة)
few	قليل ولا يكفى (مع الأسماء المعدودة)	little	قليل ولا يكفى (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة)

My wife bought a few bottles of water. My wife bought few bottles of water.

Randa bought a little sugar.

Randa bought little sugar.

اشترت زوجتي القليل من زجاجات المياه (وتكفي) اشترت زوجتي القليل من زجاجات المياه (ولا تكفي) اشترت راندا القليل من السكر (ويكفي) اشترت رائدا القليل من السكر (ولا يكفي)

تستخيم many مع so / too / there are so / too / very / there is مه much مع تستخدم a lot of مع

I met such a lot of people yesterday.



Important Notes

بعض الكلمات في ظاهرها جمع ولكنها تعامل معاملة المفرد:

athletics/politics/gymnastics/mathematics/maths/news/economics/ statistics/physics/genetics/classics/electronics.

Mathematics is my favourite subject. Statistics shows progress in our economy. Gymnastics helps us to keep fit. The good news is "we passed the test."

هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى مجموعة. وهذه الكلمات من الممكن أن تكون مفردًا أو جمعًا حسب المقصود منها: team/staff/family/government/company/committee/army/couple/crew/ crowd/gang/group/navy/population/university.

The English staff is the best one in our school.

كلمة Staff مفرد لأن المقصود بها القسم كواحد من ضمن الأقسام في المدرسة. The English staff in our school are all wonderful.

ومنا حمع لأننا نقصد مجموعة المدرسين في القسم.

تعتبر المبالغ المالية/الفترات الزمنية/المسافات شيئًا ولحذا لذا تعامل معاملة المفرد:

Ten million pounds is a lot of money. Five hours is a long time to do this.



We usually have lunch at 2.00 p.m.

We had a wonderful lunch at a big restaurant yesterday.

هناك كلمات أخرى يمكن أن تكون countable أو uncountable مع اختلاف المعنى مثل:

paper - glass - coffee - time - cold - light - orange - iron - chicken

'd like some writing paper.	(ورق الكتاب/لا يعد)
I'm going to buy a paper. (= a newspaper)	صحيفة (تعد)
The window's made of unbreakable glass.	(الزجاج/لا يعد)
Would you like a glass of water?	کوب
Have you got any coffee?	القعوة (سائل لا يعد)
Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee)	فنجان قهوة (يعد)
Don't hurry. There's plenty of time.	الوقت (لا يعد)
He went to London three times.	مرات
He has black hair.	شعر (لا يعد)
I'm starting to get a few grey hairs.	قليل من الشعر (يعد)
There are two oranges on the table.	برتقال
I don't like orange. I prefer red.	اللون البرتقالي (لا يعد)
This table is made of iron.	الحديد (لا يعد)
She bought an iron yesterday.	مكواة
Do you like chicken? (* chicken meat)	لحم المجاج
We bought a chicken.	ىجلجة
The sun gives us light.	الضوء/لا تعد
We need two lights in this room.	مصباح كهربي
I want to buy a new company.	شركة (اسم يعد)
I hope to have good company.	مـُحبة (اسم لا يعد)

هناك كلمات مثل trousers/glasses/shoes/gloves تعامل معاملة الجمع. أما إذا جاء قبلها a pair of فتعامل معاملة المفرد.

My trousers are of a good material and they don't cost much. A pair of trousers is very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

من الممكن استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة مع الكميات لتحويلها إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of jewellery	a piece of furniture	a piece of luggage	a piece of information
	slice of cake/cheese a loaf of bread		a cup of coffee
a glass of lemonade		a bar of soap	a sheet of paper
a bottle of milk	a bar of chocolate	a piece of advice	a bag of chips

Language Summary

- . قبل الأسم المفرد
- قبل الاسم النكرة الذي يذكر في الجملة لأول مرة.
 - قبل الوظائف والممن والحرف.

- و للتخصيص،
- قبل الاسم الذي تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.
- ه قبل ذكر الاختراءات والاكتشافات والحيوانات بشكل عام.
- قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها الموجود منها واحد فقط.



- قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد والكميات.
- عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.
 - مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص.
 - مع الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام.

eldsimp



- مى الأسماء التى يكون لها شكل مفرد ويأتى قبلها
 (a/an) أو شكل جمع.
 - 2 تجمع بطرق مختلفة.
 - 3) يأتي معها غمل مفرد أو جمع.
 - many/a few a lot of / lots of علفت (4)

Uncountable



- مي أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع.
- لا تجمع ولا تأخذ (a/an).
- يأتي معها فعل مفرد فقط،
- much/a little a lot of / lots of علفت (



Language General Exercises

1	Mohamed doesn'	t have	money.	
	a) much	b) many	c) some	d) few
2	Most of our furnit	turein	Damietta.	
	a) are made	b) is made	c) makes	d) is making
3	Would you like	tea after	r the meal?	
	a) some	b) much	c) a	d) any
4	Fortunately, the r	newsa	s bad as we had expected.	
	a) wasn't	b) weren't	c) haven't been	d) don't
5	There to	o many passen	gers on the train. I can't get	on it.
	a) aren't	b) isn't	c) are	d) is
6	The police	to question.	two men about the ro يستجوب	bbery.
	a) want	b) wants	c) has wanted	d) is wanted
7	I have found a jol	b inclo	othes factory.	
	a) an			d) any
8	Would you like			(Longman)
	a) many		c) some	d) a
9	Can you tell me h	now tir	mes you have seen this film?	
	a) many	b) any	c) much	d) often
10	Would you like to	have	help with this project?	
	a) any	b) an	c) the	d) some
11	exercise	keeps your bo	dy fit, so you should join a g	ym class.
	a) Many	b) Much	c) A lot	d) Few
12	A bag of money	from n	ny father while he was walki	ng last night.
	a) was stolen	b) is stolen	C/ 11010 310101	d) are stolen
13	Three days	long enoug	h for a good holiday.	45 - 4
	a) weren't	b) aren't	c) haven't been	d) isn't
14	I bought a	of toothpast	te last night.	
	a) sheet	b) slice	c) jar	d) tube
15	It is very good th	nat I don't have	luggage; I can mov	e easily.
	a) many		c) much	d) a lot
16			ble; we have 4 and we need	at least 20. Language
	a) a few	b) few	c) many	d) less
17	7 There is plenty o	f meat in the fr	idge, but there isn't	d) a lot
	a) much	b) many	c) little	u) a lot

18	Mariam was lis	stening to m	usic on the radio.	
	a) a	b) many	c) one	d) some
19	My friends ma	naged to get a lot of	useful information, but	Lhaven't got
	a) some	b) many	c) any	d) few
20	One should dri	ink enough	of water daily.	
			c) quantity	d) a lot
21	Five million po	unds too mi	uch money for this villa	
	a) is	b) is being	c) are	d) are being
22		the clothes		, 5
			c) has	d) had
23	Everyone know	vs that athletics	us fit and healthy.	
	a) keep	b) are keeping	c) keeps	d) have kept
24	My son bought	t a new pair of shoes	which very ex	pensive.
	a) are	b) were	c) was	d) have
25	All the money	have to buy the	books I need to buy. W	hat can I do? . Longman
	a) is enough	b) is sufficient	c) is insufficient	d) are enough
26	I am very busy;	I have to do	today.	
	a) little	b) many	c) a lot of	d) a lot
27	I want you to e	njoy your trip and ha	ve good time.	
	a) many	b) a	c) a few	d) any
28	A: coff	fee have you drunk to	oday? B: Two cups.	
	a) How many	b) How much	c) How	d) How long
29	What Mr Osam	a does becar	use he has been very ill	recently.
	a) is	b) are	c) has	d) have
30	I was very angr	y when I found	in my soup at the re	estaurant.
	a) any hairs	b) no hairs	c) a hair	d) the hair
31	I need a	of oil and	of sugar, please.	र्भ गासमाज्य
-	a) litre/a kilo	b) bottle/a few	c) kilo/a litre	d) litre/an amount
32	One of the follo	wing sentences is no	t grammatically correc	t?
		ne water to drink durin		
	b) He told me a	n important information	on about the crime.	
		tudents waiting for the		
22	One of the falle	ind people while I was	in the village.	
33	a) My trousers a	wing sentences is gra re very expensive and	ammatically correct?	
	b) Lentils soup a	are my favourite kind o	of a good material.	
	c) Gymnastics at	en't easy sports as the	ey need a lot of practice.	
	d) Two hours are	e very long to wait for	the doctor	
	, noons an	- reig to wait lot	the doctor.	

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

1	My sister was lu	cky because she saw	that who re	escued her.	
	a) police	b) cheat	c) officer	d) bully	
2	Aya wit	th her family on how	to spend the holiday	<i>/</i> .	
	a) cheats	b) debates	c) fights	d) controls	
3	Our company ha	as alt is a v	ery ambitious one.		
	a) three-year-business plan		b) three-year-business plans		
	c) three-year's-business plan		d) three-years'-business plan		
4	Carrying a	over your should	er for a long time is l	ikely to harm you.	
		b) wallet			
5	I don't understand why someone would do that unless they are and				
	cruel.				
		b) dear			
6	After a long	with his family,	Ali decided to move	to a new flat.	
		b) phone-in			
7	The last time I went to the dentist, I was as I fear his medical				
	instruments.				
		b) broken			
8	Hany from Cairo is on the				
		b) line			
9	The medical andstaff plays a great role in fighting diseases all over				
	the world.				
	a) farming	b) engineering	c) nursing	d) advertising	
10		ıl to work in a			
		b) nursed			
11		ry when his classmat			
		b) paid			
12		e book during the ex			
		b) cheats			
13		king at the book dur		d) cheating	
	a) cheat	b) cheats	c) cheated	u) Cheathig	

14	My father made .	of the things	he had to buy.	
	a) list	b) listed	c) listing	d) a list
15			back, Omar? B: Nothir	
			c) hosting	
16		cup of coffee?		
	a) a	b) any	c) some	d) an
17	I don't have	furniture. I feel m	ore comfortable with	less furniture.
	a) many	b) much	c) some	d) a
18	8 One of the players in our teamvery tall.			
	a) are	b) is	c) be	d) is being
19	I was served	food in the wedd	ling, but it was really o	delicious.
	a) a few	b) few	c) a little	d) a lot
20	books ar	re very useful, but oth	ers are not.	
	a) Any	b) Some	c) A lot	d) Much
21	If you want to kno	ow the news, you can		
	a) much paper	b) paper	c) some paper	d) the papers
22	The train is	of transport. I reall	y like using it.	
		b) the means		d) some means
23	There isn't	traffic on the ring r	oad today.	
		b) some		d) many
24			o have? B: Three, pleas	se.
		b) many		d) few
		te know how the accid		
		b) Does		d) Was
26		a long time to wa		
			c) have been	d) were
27		to have my		
			c) a bread	
28			sharp enougl	h.
	a) isn't	b) doesn't	c) aren't	d) don't
29		had together was de		
20	a) The	b) A	c) No article	d) An
SU		ne to buy ao		* .
	a) tube	b) bar	c) piece	d) jar

Chapter 4

Key Vocabulary

as usual	كالعادة	hills	נועل
branch	فرع شجرة/فرع لشركة أو محل	immediately	في الحال
close	قريب	marked	مشار إليه
continue	يستمر	mistake	خطأ
correct	صحيح	organise	ينظم
count	يعد/يجصى	plan	خطة
crutch	عكاز	prefer	يفضل
diseases	أمراض	pretty	جميلة
downstairs	الطابق الأسفل	relax	يسترخى
expect	يتوقع	rocky tops	قمم صذرية
expression	تعبير	shore	شاطئ
follow	يتبع	thought	فكر
forever	إلى الأبد	trust	ثقة
glasses	نظارات	whistle	صفارة/يصفر
hold onto	يمسك في	Willstie	ـــــرد ,يـــــر

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

along the beach	بمحاذاة الشاطئ	find out	يكتشف/يعرف
as usual	كالعادة	jumped out of	قفز من على
as fast as I could	بأسرع ما يمكنني	prefer to	يفضل أن
climb out of	يقفز من	walked off	خرج
close to	قریب من	excited to	متحمس ل
fight them for	يقاتلهم من أجل		2 (300-00)



Novel Exercises Chapter (4)

1	I usually put my	/in my son	and he really deserve	s it.	
	a) truth	b) trust	c) true	d) truly	
2	The referee	and the game v	was over.	•	
	a) whistled	b) ran	c) coughed	d) sneezed	
3			op, so I went to their i		
			c) branch		
4	Don't worry, you	u shouldan	d think again.		
	a) relax	b) hesitate	c) worry	d) quite	
5	When I go to Ma	When I go to Matrouh, I usually stand on the and look at the sea.			
	a) bank	b) branch	c) edge	d) shore	
6	Eating healthy f	ood can protect us f	rom many serious	************	
	a) illness	b) diseases	c) dangers	d) sick	
7			walking after the oper		
	a) surprise	b) surprising	c) surprised	d) annoying	
8	I decided to spe	end my next holiday	an island in t	he Pacific.	
	a) on	b) at	c) in	d) into	
9	I realised that so face.	omething bad had ha	appened when I saw a	a sad on his	
	a) crutch	b) explanation	c) preparation	d) expression	
10	When I saw my happy.	son and daughter wa	alking together	the beach. I felt	
	a) a long	b) in	c) along	d) away	
11	My niece looked	din her fasci	inating wedding dres	S.	
			c) terrible		
12			is a match for my fav		
	a) excited	b) surprised	c) terrible	d) exciting	
13			gan to climb them eas		
			c) wells		
14			ked my teacher to		
			c) connect		
15			up a man with a		
	a) gun	b) canon	c) bullet	d) rocket	



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لمنحق المصارات.

Writing an email

New message	• • •
←→ 0	- =
From	اسم وعنوان الراسل الإلكتروني إذا وجد:
To	اسم وعنوان العرسل إليه الإلكتروني إذا وجد:
Subject	الموضوع باختصار:
(invitation - congratulation - cor	nplaint - apology - request)
اسم العرسل إليه ,	
How are you? I want to tell you that	

	موضوع الرسالة:
Best wishes	
اسم الراسل:	
· 0 📾 😨 Q	Send
0 000	40.12

You can have more information about writing emails in the booklet.







Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A good education has the ability to change the world. When we pay attention to quality education, the results can be transformational for an individual, a community and society at large. The value of investing in education is indisputable: it improves economic development, promotes peace, and lifts people out of poverty.

The right to education is not only the right to access education but also the right to receive an education of good quality. Education must be available and accessible but also acceptable and adaptable. Students must receive a quality education that enables their personalities, talents and abilities and to live a full and satisfying life within society.

The aims of education go far beyond acquiring numeracy and literacy skills. Basic skills also include life skills such as the ability to make well-balanced decisions; to resolve conflicts in a responsibility, critical thinking, creative talents, and other abilities which give children the tools needed to pursue their options in life.

Also, schools should have a sufficient number of trained teachers. All teachers should be paid competitive salaries. There should be an appropriate number of classrooms, accessible to all, with adequate and separate sanitation facilities for girls and boys.

- 1 The benefits of a good education can be noticed on
 - a) people and their families
 - b) people, their community and their society
 - c) countries, continents and islands
 - d) poor people and workers
- 2 When we invest in education, this will
 - a) make people poor and powerless
 - b) improve economic development and ignorance
 - c) encourage wars and illegal competitions
 - d) improve people's income and bring peace

3	The education provided to students must		
	a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly		
	b) be for free and be online		
	c) provide good salaries to students and their families		
	d) activate violence among students to motivate them		
4	Education should provide students with the techniques that		
	a) make them join the Faculty of Medicine		
	b) follow their options in life		
	c) enrich their argumentative abilities		
	d) strengthen their flexibility in life		
5	In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should		
	a) get paid competitive salaries		
	b) arrest students who make troubles		
	c) have power and authority		
	d) wear formal clothes with much money		
6	Educational institutions should have		
	a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions		
	b) only one classroom for all students		
	c) large playground with whiteboards		
	d) enough classrooms and separate toilets		
7	The best title for this passage is "".		
	a) How Can Education Be Good? b) Quality Education and Teachers		
	c) Classrooms and Schools d) Education Investment		
(A)	Choose the correct Arabic translation:		
1	Many young people use the internet to make new friends and spend hours chatting with them.		
	 ا يستخدم الإنترنت العديد من الشباب لصناعة صداقات جديدة وصرف ساعات في الدردشة معهم. 		
	 ل) يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين مجموعات جديدة وقضاء ساعات في الدردشة معهم. 		
) العديد من الشباب يستخدم الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء أيام في الدردشة معهم. 		
	طريق المردشة معهم. والمباب الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء ساعات في الدردشة معهم.		
2	School libraries contribute much to the development of our children's minds		
	and awareness.		
	 ضاعد المكتبات كثيرًا في تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم. 		
	 أ تساهم المكتبات المدرسية كثيرًا في تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم. 		
	 تساهم العكتبات المدرسية كثيرًا في تنمية عقول رجالنا ووعيهم. 		

نشارك المكتبات المدرسية قليلًا في تنمية مخ أطفالنا وجعلهم واعين.

- 3 No doubt that friends are either good or bad. Some of them are worthy of respect while others are hateful ones.
 - الا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر بغيض.
 - لا شكوك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم لا يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر بغيض.
 - لا شك أن الأصدقاء ليسوا طيبين ولا سيئين. بعضهم محترم والبعض الآخر بغيض.
 - لا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر كريم.
- 4 We have to rationalise the consumption of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in prices.
 - علينا ترشيد استعلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
 - ل علينا تيسير اشتراك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجعة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
 - 🔾 لدينا ترشيد اشتراك الماء والكمرباء والغذاء لمواجمة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
 - d) لدينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمقاطعة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
- 5 The educational institution seeks to deepen the democratic thought and train the young generations on positive participation.
 - المؤسسة التعليمية تسعى إلى تهميش الفكر الديمقراطي وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.
 - المؤسسة التعليمية تسعى إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطي وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة المناسبة.
 - تسعى المؤسسة التعليمية إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطي وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.
 - ضعى المؤسسة التعليمية إلى تعميق الحلم الديمقراطي وتدريب الأجيال الكبيرة على المشاركة المثبتة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 يجب أن نتعاون جميعنا مع وزارة البيئة للتخلص من الكميات الهائلة من القمامة في شوارعنا.
- a) We must all help with the Ministry of Industry to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.
- b) We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Education to save the huge amounts of garbage in our ways.
- c) We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Environment to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.
- d) We must all operate with the Ministry of Environmental to provide the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.
 - 7 لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا في حياتنا، فالإنسان لا يستطيع أن يحيا بدونها.
- a) Electricity has become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot live without it.
- b) Electrical has become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot live with it.
 - c) Electrician has become an essential part of our lives, as a person can live without it.
 - d) Wires have become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot life without it.

- 8 🛚 من الواضح أن الجرائم قد زادت بمعدل كبير هذه الأيام غلا يكاد يمر يوم دون أن نسمع عن جريمة في التلفزيون أو الإنترنت.
 - a) It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on the television or in the Internet.
 - b) Apparently, crimes have doubled at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a criminal on television or the Internet.
 - c) It is safe that crimes have decreased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us knowing about a crime on television or the Internet.
 - d) It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on television or the Internet.
 - 9 يشكل الوالدان شخصيات أبنائهما منذ بداية طفولتهم فهما يعلمانهم القيم والعادات.
 - a) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the end of their childhood, as they show them values and habits.
 - b) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
 - c) Fathers shape the characters of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
 - d) Grandmothers shape the personalities of their daughters from the beginning of their childhood, as they learn them values and habits.
 - 10 للعولمة تأثير خطير على الدول النامية. ويجب على هذه الدول أن تبدأ بجدية للاستفادة من ثمار التكنولوجيا.
 - a) Globalisation has a serious effect on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously to benefit from the fruits of technology.
 - b) Globalisation has a dangerous effect on developed countries. These countries must begin seriously to benefit from the fruits of technology.
 - c) Globalisation has a serious effect on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously benefitting from the impacts of technology.
 - d) Science c has a serious affection on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously benefit from the fruits of technology.

***********************	*******************	*********************			***************************************

***************************************		*******************			***************************************
		***********************	*************************	************************	

Al-Adwaa Test

Ch	oose the Two cor	rect answers o	f the Fi	ve optio	ns:	
1	Mona is	a very nice dre	ss for h	er friend	's wedding. I	Everyone admires
	her look.					
	a) putting upon	b) dressing	c) dres	sed in	d) wearing	e) putting
2	There's so much	to do and I don'	t know	where to	start. The a	ntonyms of
	the word "start" a	areand	db			•
	a) finish	b) initiate	c) end		d) neglect	e) pursue
Ch	oose the correct					
3	One of the main	jobs of the spec	ial force	es is to	the	city centre and
	other important					
	a) police	b) nurse		c) close		d) stop
4	Don't look at my	answer sheet. T	hat's	***********		
	a) cheating	b) cheat		c) cheat	ed	d) cheater
5	The students ask	ed me to have t	he lectu	ire on Mo	onday	Friday.
	a) instead	b) except for		c) instea	d of	d) except
6	I read a wonderfo	ul book about		of Gama	Abdel Nass	er.
	a) a life	b) the life		c) life		d) living
7	My posi	tion when I play	footba	ll is a goa	alkeeper.	
	a) favourite	b) cool		c) stress	ed	d) distant
8	I had no close	with othe	er boys a	at school	, so I feel lon	iely.
	a) articles	b) conversation	ns	c) advice	2	d) friendships
9	Please do not he	sitate to	me if	you want	anything.	
	a) communicate	b) connect		c) collec	t	d) contact
10	oldest li	on is roaring in i	its cage	now.		
	a) A.	b) An		c) The		d) No article
	When I leave sch					
	a) a	b) an		c) the		d) no article
12	She asked me for	advic	e about	how to	revise her le	ssons.
	a) an					d) few
	Walking to					
				c) the		d) no article
	I was so thirsty ar					
	a) the glass	b) pair of glass		c) a pair	of glasses	d) a glass

15	5intelligent you are, the better marks you will get.					
	a) The much	b) The most	c) The more	d) More		
16	There isn't	pharmacy nea	ir us. We can't get any i	medicine.		
	a) many	b) some	c) few	d) a		

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.

Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth, 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans, air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

17	Desertification n	neansa wid	le area of trees.	
	a) clearing	b) planting	c) irrigating	d) spraying
18	The underlined v	word "its" refers to	6000000001000pa #	
	a) desertification		b) global warming	
	c) environment		d) carbon dioxide	
19	Burning fossil fu	els global w	arming.	
	a) causes of	b) results of	c) leads to	d) results from
20	The synonym of	the underlined wor	d "ecological" is	
	a) environmenta		b) biological	
	c) chemical		d) material	

- 21 Using non-renewable sources of energy is not safe because it
 - a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
 - b) can be stolen easily
 - c) can be flamed
 - d) can't be moved from a place to another
 - 22 According to the passage, we the destructive effects of the global warming.
 - a) will face

b) faced

c) are already facing

- d) have never faced
- 23 The best title for this passage is ".....".
 - a) National Disasters

b) Global Disasters

c) Trees and Nature

d) Anthropogenic Activities

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد لرفع مستوى المعيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال كل الموارد الاقتصادية المتلحة بدون إسراف.
- a) Hard work is the only way to rise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.
- b) Hard working is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all unavailable economic resources without extravagance.
- c) Working hard is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economical resources without extravagance.
- d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stability in peace process and combating terrorism.

- ان لزامـًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر محلى يستعدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
- کان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستعدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
 - (ح الضطرت مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولي يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ودعم السياحة.
- 👌 كان لزامنا على مصر أن تدعو إلى اجتماع دولي يستهدف عدم استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

The best way to reach success is patience and hard work.



Units 3&4

Al-Adwaa Test



					- 00
Ch	oose the Two co	rrect answers	of the Five opt	ions:	
1	I am in heavy de	ebts. I	many people an	d I can't rep	ay them.
			b) borrowed i		
	c) lent money to		d) lent money		
	e) owe money to				
2			low marks in he	er exams. Th	e word "miserable"
	gives the same				
	-			d) depres	ssed e) pleased
Ch	oose the correct		1 1 2		
	Hana does			davs a wee	ek.
_			c) volu	-	
4	A teacher's work				
			c) play		
5					work of charities.
					d) experience
6					ould recognise him
	a) skate		c) skir		
7	We just take it				
	a) of granted				
8		_			, .
			c) stre		d) stressful
9					sects. The opposite
	of the word "cov	•			
	a) conceal			cover	d) stop
10					a great time there.
					d) gone in
11	My father				
	a) had worked	b) worked	c) is w	rorking	d) has worked
12	Ali and his famil				
	a) he gets marrie			marriage	d) married
13	Howki				,
	a) long	b) many	c) mu	ch	d) often
14	He is a space sc		•		
	a) a	b) an	c) the		d) no article

15	Egypt has	unique	location in the world.	
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
16	My father went to	hospital to visit his friend.		
	a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article

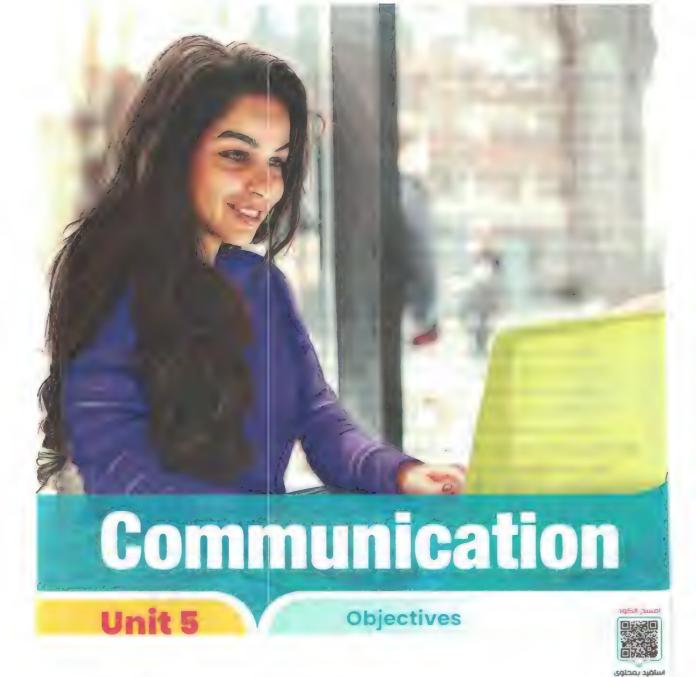
▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Interests are important to think about. But it is more important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work that way. Others can't stand it. Suzan loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, Fatma can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes. Pressure even makes her sick. She won't be able to stay very long in a pressure cause job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines. All jobs involve some degree of pressure, whether it's hitting targets, meeting deadlines or managing multiple tasks at once – some jobs more than others (surgeons or firefighters, for example). In other words, the ability to work under pressure is a skill highly sought after by employers.

17	7 According to the writer our choice of jobs is influenced by					
	a) our education b) work values	c) personality	d) salaries			
18	According to the passage working	under pressure means.				
	a) meeting a deadline	b) finishing at any time				
	c) making mistakes	d) enjoying our job				
19	In most time, pressure leads to	readdabar #				
	a) relaxation b) satisfaction	c) freedom	d) sickness			
20	A very important skill that employers always look for is working					
	a) without pressure	b) calmly				
	c) under pressure	d) personally				

21	One disac	dvantage o	of working u	ınder pr	essure for	some peo	ple is	************
	a) meetin	g the dead	dline	b	working a	lot		
	c) being l			d) making mistakes				
22	A person	should be	to	work un	der pressu	re.		
	a) honest	b) nervous	c)	calm		d) stres	ssed
23	The unde	rlined pro	noun <mark>"it</mark> " ref	ers to	**************			
	a) work va	alue		b	working u	nder press	sure	
	c) working	g with no p	oressure	d)	job			
24	Choose t	he correct	t English tra	anslatio	n:			
	نطيع الحكومة	ي كثيرًا، ولا تسا	بتلصالهما سنعانر	بر عادية لاس	، نبذل جمودًا غ	موقوتة، فلو لم	هما قنبلة	- إن الفقر والبطالة
							يما.	ان تقوم بهذا وحد
	a) Poverty	and empl	oyment are	a time b	omb, if we	do not ma	ike extra	aordinary
	efforts	to eradicat	e them, we	will suffe	er a lot.			
			. ,			we do not	make e	xtraordinary
			te them, we					
			nployment a			ve do not	make ex	ktraordinary
			e them, we					
			nployment a			unless we	make o	rdinary
-			e them, we					
25			t Arabic tra			4 4b	ec -	
	_		nd the indivi					
44			the handid					
					_ , _	-		a) يجب على الحكو
				- 1				b) يجب على الحكو
.3	الاحتياجات الخام	بن والأطفال ذوى	والمساعدة للمعوقي	د من الدعم	صل لتقديم المزي	لعمل بشكل منف	مة والأفراد ا	🧲 يجب على الحكوم
ئة.	لاحتياجات الخام	والأطفال ذوى اا	ساعدة للمعاقين	ن الدعم واله	تقديم المزيد مر	. العمل سويـًا ل	ومة والأفراد	d) يجب على الحكو
26	Write an	essay of a	bout ONE	HUNDR	ED AND FI	FTY (150)	words	on the
	following	-						
	The reaso	ns why pe	eople travel	abroad.				
	***************************************				******************	*****************		******************
	**************		*******************		***********************	*************	*************	*************************
							***************	***********************
	07009300803006006500		**********************		002000000000000000000000000000000000000	*************	***********	
	***************		*******************	*************	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	************		•••••••••
			********************		.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	****************		***********
		Assess your	P /	194	50 · 6AV/2	<u> </u>	40 A	85 100%
		progress	* Constant	in the state of th	Practise more	Take more		Well done!
	***************************************	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	***************************************			r		
	ine reaso	Assess vous	eopie travei		50 : 64% Practise more	65 : 8 Take man		85: 100% Well done!



Reading : A science article on how we may communicate in the future

الوحدة الرقيمي

Writing : An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe onlineListening : A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet

Speaking: Give a presentation

Language: Future forms will, be going to and present continuous

Life Skills: Self-management; Decision making



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

app = application (n)	تطبيق حاسب آلى	the internet (n)	شبكة الإنترنت
communication (n)	نظام الاتصال/تواصل	security (n)	أمن
connected (adj)	متصل	smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكى
hack (n) (v) - ed	اختراق/يخترق	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

Someone hacked my phone and stole important files.





Vocabulary on Reading Texts

accident (n)	حادث	flexible (adj)	مرن
business (n)	عمل تجارى	heating (n)	التدغلة
cause (v) – d	***************************************	imagine (v) – d	يتخيل
check (v) – ed	يفحص	latest (adj)	أحدث
control (v) – led	يتحكم في	lighting (n)	إضاءة
create (v) – d	يخلق/ينتج	lightning (n)	البرق
criminal (n) (adj)	مجرم/إجرامي	link (v) – ed	يتصل/يرتبط
develop (v) – ed	يتطور	machine (n)	ماكينة
device (n)	جهاز	major (adj)	رئيسى
disadvantages (n)	عيوب/مساوئ	network (n)	شبكة
driverless (adj)	ذاتية القيادة (بلا سائق)	online (adv) (adj)	عبر الإنترنت
electric (adj)	كهرباثي	organisation (n)	منظمة
empty (v) y ied	يفرغ	petrol (n)	بنزين
enough (adv)	كافر/بقدر كافر	possible (adj)	محتمل

satellite navigation (sat-nav) (n) power stations (n) محطات توليد الطاقة نظام الملاحة عن طريق الأقمار الصناعية protect (v) - ed يجمى system (n) نظام rubbish bin (n) سلة قمامة tablet (n) کمپیوتر لوحی (تابلت) safe (adi) عالمي/في جميع أنحاء العالم (adj) (worldwide (adv) آمن Workbook Vocabulary التخييم (الخروج في معسكرات ومخيمات) (camping (n shopping (n) التسوق illegally (adv) بشكل غير قانوني survey (n) دراسة/استطلاع particular (adj) خاص task (n) مهمة/مأمورية عمل recent (adj) حديث Vocabulary Check point Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 It is very easy for anyone tointo my grandfather's Facebook account. a) hack b) contact c) empty d) control 2 He wasn't sure whether he had locked the door, so he went to a) create b) click c) check d) control 3 The machine has a safety which switches the power off if there is a fault. b) device c) instrument d) machinery 4 We have a new computerised in the library. a) system b) security c) image d) control 5 Never share your personal information if you want to be online.

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

(be) known as	معروف ک	in particular	على وجه الخصوص
a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	information about	معلومات عن
as often as I can	بقدر ما أستطيع	listen to	يستمع إلى
break into	يقتحم	live on	يعيش على
by accident	بالصدفة	lose money	يخسر مالًا
collect + (someone)	يصطحب/يوصل شخصنا بسيارة	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
collect information	يجمع معلومات	on your phone	على تليفونك
communicate with	يتواصل مع	on the internet	على الإنترنت
connect to	يتصل بـ	on business	في عمل
connect with	يربط بـ/ يتناغم مع شخص	outside world	العالم الخارجي
do a survey	يقوم ببحث شامل	take control of	يسيطر على/يتحكم في
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	protect from/against	يحمى من/ضد
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	send messages to	يرسل رسائل نصية اـ
hack into	يخترق	• . I . I A	قلق بشأن
important to/for	مهم ا	worried about	ملق بسان

Derivatives

Verb		N	oun	Adjective	
apply	يطبق	application applicant	تطبيق/نموذج طلب وظيفة طالب الوظيفة	applicable applied	قابل للتطبيق تطبيقي
communicate	يبلغ/يتصل	communication communicator	تواصل/اتصال محاور	communicat	tive مئرِيح/تواصلی
control	يتدكم	controller	تحکم/قیادة مراقب/مشرف	controlling controllable controlled	متسلط/مسیطر مطیع/مذعن مراقب/موجه
create	يخلق	creation creativity creator	خلق/تكوين إبداع خالق/بديع	creative	إبداعى/مبتكر
develop	يتطور	development developer	تطور/تنمية مطور	developed developing طور)	متطور نام (في مرحلة الت

hack	يخترق	hacking (uncountable) hack (countable) hacker	اختراق اختراق مخترق/قرصان	hacked	مُخْتَرِقٌ
imagine [®]	يتخيل	imagination imaginings	خيال خيالات/تصورات	imaginable imaginary imaginative	ممكن تخيله خيالى واسع الخيال
incriminate ابجریمة	يتهم شخصنا	crime criminal	جريمة مجرم	criminal	إجرامى
secure	يؤمن	security	أمان/حماية	secure	مأمون/مطمئن

⁻ I can't imagine that we lost the cup.

⁻ The new employee has imaginative thoughts.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرانف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
connected	متصل	linked/joined	disconnected/detached غیر متصل/منفصل
control	يتحكم في	command/dominate	follow/surrender يتبع/يستسلم
develop	يتطور	advance/flourish	decline/decrease يتدهور
disadvanta	ages بعيوب	demerits/drawbacks	advantages/merits مزایا
empty	يفرغ	clear/evacuate	fill/occupy يملا
enough	كاف	adequate/sufficient	inadequate/insufficient غير كاف
heating	التدفئة	warming/boiling	cooling/freezing تبرید/تجمید
illegal	غیر قانونی	unlawful/banned/ unauthorised	legal/lawful/authorised قانونی
major	رئيسى	main/primary/leading	minor/secondary/trivial ثانوی/تافه
safe	آمن	secure/protected	insecure/risky غير آمن/خطير
security	أمن	safety/protection	insecurity/danger عدم الأمان/الخطر

The antonym of "major" is

⁻ Films help us use our imagination.

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	I like cars in general, but I like Mercedes in				
	a) particular		b) control		
	c) particularly		d) private		
2	The telephone is	s the only means of	in remote are	as.	
	a) communication	on	b) communicate		
	c) communicativ	ve .	d) communicator		
3	To solve the pro	blem of pollution, we	should use	cars.	
	a) petrol-powere	ed	b) electrical		
	c) electronic		d) electric		
4	Teachers must h	nave the ability to	control of their	classes.	
	a) do	b) play	c) take	d) make	
5	My computer is	connected t	he wifi, but there is r	o internet.	
	a) with	b) to	c) into	d) up	
6	It is illegal to ha	ve a gun with you wit	hout a special licens	e. The antonym of the	
	word "illegal" is				
		b) banned		d) minor	
7	l asked them to	empty the house at o	nce. The synonym o	f the word "empty"	
	is"				
		b) occupy	c) evacuate	d) unclear	
8	The thieves ma	naged to break	the house and ste		
	a) up	b) off	c) into	d) with	
9	Our teacher is v	eryas he has		echnique in teaching.	
	a) imagination		b) imaginable		
	c) imaginary		d) imaginative		
10	It is important	to think well before			
	a) making		b) doing		
	c) breaking		d) collecting		

(be) able to + (inf.) Birds are able to fly using their wings. قادر على

قابر على(be) capable of + (v-ing) Birds are capable of flying using their wings.

(have) the ability to + (inf.) Birds have the ability to fly using their wings. لديه القدرة على

(someone/something) + enable + (someone/ something) + to + (inf.) يـُمكُن من

Wings enable birds to fly.

electric (adj)

كمربائني أي يعمنل بالكمربناء (لوصيف الأدوات والأجهزة) - Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries.

electrical (adi)

كمربائــي أي يتعامل مــع الكهرباء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)

- My father works as an electrical engineer.

electricity (n) الكهرباء

We can't do without electricity in our daily life.

alectrician (n) عامل فنی کمریاء

A company needs four electricians to be employed.

electronic (adj) الكتروني

The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.

experience

الخبرة (ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة وممارات من خلال عمل معين) (لا تعد) They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience in the field of engineering.

3 experiences مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات في الحياة (تعد)

She had some interesting experiences while she was travelling to many countries.

experiment تجربة عملية/علمية (داخل معمل) Teachers usually do simple experiments in the laboratory.

task

ا was given the task of organising the school trip. ا معمـة أو عمل صعب أو غيــر محبوب يقوم

mission

مكان لمكان آخر للقيام بها

He went on a mission to Japan. بعثة أو مأمورية ينتقل فيها الشخص من

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The first of the secretary was to file some letters.
 - a) mission

b) mask

c) task

- d) trip
- 2 This job requires a lot of to get it.
 - a) experiment

b) experiences

c) experts

- d) experience
- 3 I got a/an to install electrical systems in my new flat.
 - a) electricity

b) electrical

c) electrician

- d) physician
- 4 Having healthy foodus to build our bodies well.
 - a) is able to

b) enables

c) has the ability

- d) capable of
- 5 I chose the cleverest assistant for a to London.

a) mission

b) task

c) mansion

d) picnic





Vocabulary General Exercises

1	I have to	my work for mistake	es before I hand it in.	
	a) collect	b) create	c) check	d) calculate
2	help p	eople to communicate	with each other and	d also to use
	the internet eas	sily.		4 4130 10 430
	a) Intelligent ph	ones	b) Smartphones	
	c) Smile phones		d) Start phones	
3	During my holic	day, I like to go	as it is cheaner tha	n staving in
	expensive hote	ls.	as it is circuper tha	ii staying iii
	a) visiting	b) heating	c) climbing	d) camping
4	To get the job. t	the applicants need to	have at least 5 years	, camping
	a) experience	b) experiences	c) experiment	d) ovports
5	You have to brin	ng photos of	ou when you first in	in the club
	a) modern	b) recently	recent	d) socure
6	I think someone	has tried toi	nto my computer W	bat da vev think
	I should do?		into my computer. w	
		b) hack	دا لانا	(Longman)
7	Smoking is one	of the causes	of lung diseases	d) attack
	a) minor	b) major	of laring alseases.	d) man
8	The governmen	t pays great attention	to the reads	a) mean
	a) net	b) circle	c) website	. all over Egypt.
9	I haven't heard t	thenews. Can	VOLI tell mo what ha	a) network
	a) late	h) later	you tell me what ha	s nappened?
10	Electricity is pro	b) later duced in what we call	L) idlest	d) lately
	al power station	s b) energy stations		15 1 -
11	I have a useful	that helps me to	loarn English on my	a) solar energy
	a) machine	b) security	instrument	smartpnone.
	We met our old:	friends in the street	c) instrument	a) app
-	a) in	b) through	accident, so w	e were all so happy.
13	People like to ha	ave many electronic	C) Dy	a) for
	a) cars	h) hikes	at their nome:	5.
14	A recent	b) bikes	c) devices	a) carpets
6 . 8	debt now.	shows that a large pe	ercentage of people	are getting into
	a) statue	b) survey	c) ann	d) bill
15	for the i	job should be sent to t	he personnel manage	u) Dill
	a) Applications	b) Communications	C) Developments	d) Movements
		- Communication is	C) Developments	d) Movements

16	Nowadays, there is little	real betwee	n parents and th	ieir children.
	a) comment b) com	nparison c) ap	plication	d) communication
17	My account was easily	into as my pa	ssword was so e	asy.
	a) broken b) pick	ked c) ha	cked	d) backed
18	Kareem behaved in a/an	way when so	me people tried	to nack his phone.
	a) smart b) mal	ware c) lin	ked	d) empty
19	I am sorry. I didn't mean	to step on your foot.	It was a/an	•
	a) chance b) opp	c) in	cident	d) accident
20	These days, smallco	an't survive due to the	e economic depr	ession الركود الاقتصادى.
	a) tablets b) task	c) bu	usinesses	d) surveys
21	One of the of th	is job is the flexible v	working hours.	
	a) cons b) adv	rantages c) di	sadvantages	d) demerits
22	I don't know how some f	families live	2000 pounds a I	month.
	a) on b) with	h c) at		d) into
23	We all must work togeth	er for the of	our country.	
	a) develop b) dev	veloped c) de	eveloper	d) development
24	My friends and I	helping the old ma	n who needed h	elp yesterday.
	a) can b) we	re able to c) ha	ad the ability	d) were capable of
25	Mekky is a very	actor. His works are	creative and wo	thwhile.
	a) depressing b) ima	aginative c) be	oring	d) imaginary
26	The police are trying to l	keep security everyw	here. Security is	an antonym
	for"			(Langmun)
	a) danger b) safe	ety c) se	ense	d) comfort
27	This part of the form is o	only to those	who have a driv	ving license.
	a) applicable b) app	olication c) ar	oplicant	d) apply
28	Studying hard and revisi	ing regularly is very i	mportant	any student.
	a) to b) wit	h c) b	У	d) from
	oose the Two correct an			
29	lasked my teacher to			
	a) connect to			ommunicate
	d) communicate with	e) contact wi	th	
30	This room has under flo		nderful? The ant	tonyms of the
	word "heating" are			
	a) warming b) cooling	g c) signing	d) deleting	e) freezing
31	There is a plan to	the building in on	ly five minutes II	n case of
	emergency.		A :	
	a) install b) fill	c) evacuate	d) empty	e) clean
32	2 Turtles in water			
	a) able to exist	b) are able to		re capable to exist
	d) are capable of existing	e) capable of	existing	



Future forms

(be) going to + inf. -Y

٤- مضارع بسيط present simple

هناك العديد من أشكال التعبير عن المستقبل وهي:

will + inf. -1

٧-ing + (am - is - are) مضارع مستمر

مصدرالفعل .Subj. + will + mf

TIMELINE past present future

USAGE الاستخدام

For prediction with no evidence (based on guesswork)

تنبؤ بدون دليل (يعتمد على التخمين). He will win the first prize as I think he is clever. We will probably be there for about five or six days.

For future facts

I'll be forty-seven next year.

للتعبير عن حقيقة في المستقبل

For quick decision

My phone is ringing; I will answer it.

لاتخاذ قرار سريع

Offer & request
Will you open the door for me, please?
I will lend you the money you need. Don't worry.

العرض والطلب

Threat & promise

I'll get you a nice present.

I'll call the police next time you come here.

الوعد والتهديد

- We can use "will" with present evidence with adverbs like:
 (probably definitely certainly surely ...)

 Look at those dark clouds; it will probably rain.
- We can use "will" with the following words:

 promise expect predict hope think believe perhaps I'm sure

 Scientists predict that we will live on the moon in the future.

With some time conjunctions:

مع الروابط الزمنية:

(after/as soon as/before/until/when/by the time/ ...)

When Samir comes/has come, he will eat his dinner. We won't send the email until Ali confirms/has confirmed it.

be going to

مصدر الفعل . Subj. + (am / is / are) going to + inf.

الاستخدام USAGE

For future plans, decisions and intentions. We can use "going to" with the following:

خطط مستقبلية وقرارات ونوايا.

(plan - intend - intention - (have) decided - (have) made a decision)

l am going to buy some clothes online this afternoon.

lam going to study medicine. That's my plan.

I have decided to travel. - I am going to travel to London.

Watch out! You are going to fall in the hole.

Watch out or you will be robbed.

ولكن لاحظ الجملة التالية:

For predictions with evidence.

التنبؤ بدليل.

Look at the sky. It is going to rain. She is pregnant. She is going to have a baby.



Important Notes



لأحظ الجمل التالية:

promise – expect – predict ... + will + inf. He promises he will do his best to come first.

promised - expected - predicted ... + would + inf.

He promised he would do his best to come first.

أما مع عدم وجود فاعل فنستخدم بعدها (to + inf.).

He promises/promised to do his best to come first.



يتم استخدام Will غالبًا للتفاصيل والتعليقات على الحدث.

I am going on holiday. I will be away for a week.

I am going to do some walking. Oh, that'll be nice.



لاحظ الجمل التالية:

Liverpool is a very good team. I think it will win the final match. (تنبؤ قائم على رأى شخصي) These players are very big. I think the match is going to be very difficult.

(تنبؤ قائم على دليل مرئي)





Language General Exercises

1	That's my phone	e. Ianswer it.		
	a) will	b) am going to	c) shan't	d) could
2	I have applied for	or the job and I hope I	it.	
	a) will get		b) am getting	
	c) get		d) am going to get	
3	Iin the	hospital where I have		ng post.
	a) am probably v	working	b) will probably wo	
	c) am probably o	going to work	d) would probably	work
4	Tomorrow, I	the match with r		
	a) will watch		b) am watching	
	c) watching		d) am going to wat	ch
5	The twins	seventeen next we		
	a) turning		c) are going to turn	
6	I think we	the match.		(Langman)
	a) are going to w	vin .	b) are winning	
	c) win		d) will win	
7		less driver! He		
	a) will crash	b) is going to crash	c) is crashing	d) crashes
8	جر hire hire	a car to travel arou استأ	nd London as planner	d.
	a) am going to	b) may	c) would	d) will
9	A: I'm going on I	holiday to Europe this	October. Should I take	e an umbrella?
	B: Yes, perhaps i	t		
	a) is raining		c) probably rains	
10		is room doesn't look v		down.
		b) is going to fall		d) falls
11		10 next Frida		(l'ungman)
	a) has been	b) will be	c) is being	d) is going to be
12		voice in the class or yo		
	a) will send	,	b) will be sent	
4.00	c) are going to se		d) are going to be so	ent
13	Look! He			
4.4		b) is going to fall	c) falls	d) has fallen
14	be careful or you	b) are going to cut		al) as a
15		sy to clean your room,		d) cut
	a) am going to cl		b) are cleaning	
	c) would clean	- GII	d) will clean	
	-, with with the		W/ WIII CICCIT	

16	I want to be the	first to congratulate M	lona as her birthday	tomorrow.
		b) is being		d) will have been
17	My brother is say	ing money, he	a new bike.	
		b) is going buying		d) is going to buy
18	I think my broth	era doctor. A	all of us predict that.	
		b) is going to be		d) would be
19	1 to Sha	rm El Sheikh as plann	ed.	(Longman)
	a) am going to g	o b) am going	c) will go	d) go
20	Our team are att	acking hard. They	a goal.	
	a) are going to so	core	b) will score	
	c) are scoring		d) score	
21	My friend is very	intelligent. I think, he	the test easi	ly.
	a) is going to pas		b) will pass	
	c) is passing		d) would pass	
22	Ramy is studying	g medicine. He	the first doctor in th	e family.
			c) is being	
23	A: Do you have a	any plans for the weel	kend?	
	B: I my	friends on Saturday n	norning.	
	a) will meet	b) am going to mee	et c) meet	d) will be met
24	A: Why are you t	curning on the televisi	on?	
		ne educational progra		
	a) will watch	b) am watching	c) will be watched	d) am going to watch
25			in the competition	
	a) would particip	pate	b) is going to particd) will be participat	ipate
	c) is participating			ing
26	-	ay so tomorrow		d) to materials
	a) is going			d) is going to
27	A: We haven't go	ot any tea. B: OK. I	some.	ط) بيميناط جمه
	a) am going to g	get b) am getting	c) will get	a) would get
28	Will you open tr	ne window, Mednat?	This sentence expresse c) intention	d) threat
00	a) oner	lowing centences isn'	t grammatically correct	+7
29	a) I promise! wil		e grammatically correct	
	* 1	udy. I think it is going to	o rain.	
	c) Be careful or y			
		40 next month.		
30			rammatically correct?	
	a) My son will m	arry again. He has deci	ided to do that.	
	b) Ali is studying	hard. He will get high	marks.	
		n going to give you a lo		
	d) Mona will pro	bably attend the party		rt (1) Lessons 1 & 2 205
			P3	rt (1) Lessons 1 & 2 205

Test yourself



(Lessons 1 & 2)

)	Vocabulary			
1	A: Are you going	g to Al-Fayyoum for a	reason? B: N	lo, just for a holiday.
	a) flexible	b) particular	c) recent	d) lighting
2	The telephone I	ines are down, so	are very difficult	in this area.
		b) communications		
3		isas I can ben		
	a) hard	b) light	c) flexible	d) stiff
4		tal phenomenon ظاهرة		
		b) Thunder		
5	There was no ev	idence that the suspec	t was with	the crime.
		b) communicated		
		htened at the airport b		
	a) Security	b) Maturity	c) Community	d) Insecurity
7	I found learning	Chinese to somehow a	an impossible	*******
		b) mission		
8		ve, so we needed to fill		
		b) lightning		
9		n our phones are used	to listen to music ar	nd watch some
	videos.			
	a) tabs	b) gaps	c) taps	d) apps
10	The word "sat-na	sa اختصار لـ sa short for	itellite	
	a) navigation	b) navy	c) naval	d) nave
11		is expected to		
		b) create		
12		major new developme		
	a) psychology	b) physiology	c) biology	d) technology
13	The secret inform	nation on my Facebool	k account was lost in	
	a) hack	b) hacked	c) hacker	
14		onsidered a tea		
45		b) worldwide		
13		the room quite quickly		
	ין כוכנוונ	b) electrical	c) electricity	a) electrician

)	Language		
16	My younger brother 15 nex	xt Monday.	
	a) will be b) is going to be	c) is being	d) going to be
17	I am sure it an exciting mat	tch tomorrow.	
	a) is going to be b) is	c) is being	d) will be
18	She is travelling to Paris tomorrow.	She the Eiffel To	wer.
	a) will probably visit	b) is probably going	to visit
	c) is going visiting		
19	I expected he his exams ea	asily.	
	a) would pass b) is passing		d) is going to pass
20	Sallyher friends soon. That		
	a) is meeting b) is going to mee		
21	My family promised theyn		
	a) would take b) are going to ta	ke c) to take	d) will take
22	I am going on holiday with my fami	ily to Italy. I am sure I	it.
	a) are enjoying	b) will enjoy	
	c) are going to enjoy	d) should enjoy	
23	It's my birthday next Tuesday. I		
	a) am being b) am going to be		d) will be
24	Don't come late again or I		
	a) are going to b) shan't		d) will
25	Look over there! He off his		A) C-11-
	a) is falling b) is going to fall		d) falls
26	I have planned. I lunch wit		
	a) will have	b) am havingd) would have	
07	c) am going to have He is filling the bucket with water. I	•	
21	a) will wash		
	c) has washed	d) is going to wash	
28	l expect my sonhigh mark		
	a) gets	b) will get	
	c) is getting	d) will be getting	
29	What time your plane take		
	a) will b) is	c) does	d) should
30	Although prices are sky-high in Lor		
	made up my mind.		
	a) am going to live	b) will live	
	c) won't live	d) was living	



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

antivirus software (n)	برنامج مضاد للفيروسات	lock (v) – ed	يغلق
click (v) – ed	يضغط على (رابط)	password (n)	كلمة المرور
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر/التسلط الإلكتروني	phishing (n)	التصيد/الاحتيال
download (n) (v) - ed	تحميل/يحمل من الإنترنت	posting photos	نشر الصور
downloading malwar	e (n) تحمیل برمجیات خبیثة/ضارة	scam [®] (n)	احتيال
hacking (n)	القرصنة (على الإنترنت)	uploading personal details	
link (n)	رابط	ة على الإنترنت	رفع بيانات شخصيا

Don't reply to this email; it may be a scan,



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening

قدرات	data (n)	بيانات
حساب (بنکی/علی	delete (v) - d	يمسح
عنوان	details (n)	تفاصيل
إعلان	embarrassing (a	محرج
تقريبا	employment (n)	توظيف
حساب بنکی	excited (adj)	فرحان/مبتهج
يتنمر	experience (n) (v	تجربة شخصية/يجرب d - (
حريص	free (adj) (adv) = fr	ee of charge = for free مجانا
يغير	funny (adj)	مضدك
تعليق/يعلق	furious (adj)	غاضب جدًا
كارت ائتمان	google (v) – d	يبحث على محرك البحث (جوجل)
	حساب (بنکی/علی عنوان اعلان تقریبا حساب بنکی یتنمر حریص یغیر تعلیق/یعلق	delete (v) - d details (n) details (n) idetails (n) embarrassing (a employment (n) excited (adj) experience (n) (v private (adj) (adv) = fr funny (adj) furious (adj)

happen (v) – ed	يحسث	recognise (v) – d	يعرف/يميز
horrible (adj)	فظيع	rude (adj)	وقح/قليل الأدب
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	scary (adj)	مخيف
join (v) – ed	يلتحق بـ/ينضم إلى	socialise (v) – d	يختلط (اجتماعياً)
kids (n)	أطفال/صغار	support (v) – ed	لودعة
post (n) (v) – ed	منشور/ينشر (على الإنترنت)	surprise (v) – d	يندهش
properly (adv)	تمامنا	ugly (adj)	قبيح الشكل
really (adv)	حقًا	website (n)	موقع إنترنت

Workbook Vocabulary

allow (v) – ed	يسمح	frighten (v) – ed	يرعب/يخيف
(be) in trouble (v)	یکون فی ورطة	provide (v) – d	يزود
believe (v) – d	يصدق	steal (v)	يسرق
dishonest (adj)	مخادع/محتال	trick (v) – ed	يخدع
document (n)	وثيقة	unwanted (adj)	غير مرغوب فيه

Vocabulary Check point

1	My father was	when I failed	d my exam. He deci <mark>ded</mark>	to punish me.
	a) pleased	b) scary	c) furious	d) careful
2	After writing the	message, I	it as I didn't want to a	nnoy my friend.
	a) dated	b) deleted		
3	Don't tell me the	summary of what	happened, I want the	***************************************
	a) scams	b) briefs	c) accounts	d) details
4	The government	salaries are now tr	ansferred to the emplo	yees' bank
	a) maths	b) accounts	c) boxes	d) amounts
5	I think it was	of them not t	o phone and say that the	hey weren't coming.
	a) wonderful	b) rude	c) scared	d) excited
6	To get information	n about my projec	t, I decided toit	to see what I will find
	a) goggle	b) google	c) log	d) download
7	My little son put	me in a/an	situation yesterday. l	was very upset.
	a) embarrassing	b) embarrassed	c) amusing	d) supported

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

build friendships	يبنى صداقات	on the internet	على الإنترنت
believe in	يصدق/يؤمن بـ	safe place for	مکان آمن لـ
complete a form	يكمل/يملأ استمارة	stay safe online	يبقى آمنا على الإنترنت
do it online	يفعل شيئا على الإنترنت	read about	يقرأ عن
get for free	يحصل على شيء مجائا	socialise with	يختلط اجتماعيا مع
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	steal from	يسرق من
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	think about	يفكر في
advert for	إعلان لـ	worried about	قلق بشان
comment about	تعليق على	write about	یکتب عن
complete with	يكمل بـ	in details	بالتفصيل
delete from	يمسح من	make comments on	يعلق على
plenty of	وفرة من	careful about/with	حريص على
keep a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة من	click on	ينقر على
look like	يبدو كأنه/يشبه	rude to	وقح مع

Just reading them may help!

Derivatives

1	/erb	Noun	1	Adject	ive
account	يمثل/يشرح/يعلل	account accountant accountancy	حساب/رصيد محاسب علم المحاسبة	accountable تفسیرہ	مسئول/ممكن
allow	يسمح	allowance	إجازة/أجر /مصروف		
care	يعتنى	care carer	رعاية/عناية راعِ (مقدم الرعاية)		حذر/حريص ممتم
embarrass	يحرج/يريك *\$	embarrassment	إحراج	embarrassed embarrassing	محرج/خجلان

⁻ Dad neverembarrasses me.

⁻ He knows well that embarrassment will harm my feelings.

⁻ My cheeks get red when I'membarrassed.

employ	يعين/يوظف	employee employer employment unemployment	موظف صاحب العمل عمالة بطالة	employable	أ عاطل عن العمل قادر على العمل
frighten	يغيف	fright	خوف/هلع	frightened frightening frightful	خاثف/مذعور مخیف/مرعب کریه/بغیض
an बड़ि, मंतर हमा कर क्रमान्त्रक और नहीं कृति हार तक के	de trap sign and some specifies of the sign state of the sign sign sign sign sign sign sign sign	fury	غضب/سخط	furious	غلضب/ثائر
trick	يخدع/يحتال	trick trickery trickster	خدعة مراوغة/تحايل مخادع/محتال	tricky trick	مخادع

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرابط Synonym	المضاد Antonym
careful	حريص	cautious/concerned	غیر حریص/معمل careless/incautious
change	يغير	alter/adjust	preserve/remain يحفظ/يظل
embarras	محرج sing	awkward/uncomfortable	غیر محرج/مناسب elegant/convenient
employ	يوظف	hire/enlist/retrain	fire/discharge يفصل من العمل
funny	مضحك	comical/humorous	serious/unfunny جاد/غیر مضحك
furious	غاضب جدًا	very angry/raging/boiling	calm/quiet هادئ
horrible	فظيع	unpleasant/awful	attractive/pleasant جذاب
lock	يغلق	close/shut	open/unlock يفتح
personal	شخصى	private/individual	علم/شائع public/common
scary	مخيف	frightening/terrifying	normal/calming طبیعی/مهدی
socialise	يختلط (اجتماعيًا)	mix/mingle	dissociate/separate ينفصل اجتماعيكا
ugly	قبيح	unattractive/bad-looking	beautiful/pretty جميل

You can make your own notes and mind maps to remember them.

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	The internet and	social networking site	es help us to	many friendships.
	a) take	b) click	c) build	d) attach
2	Robbers are thos	e who stealo	ther people.	
	a) of	b) with	c) by	d) from
3	There are a lot of	advertiseme	nts on the internet.	
	a) a trick	b) trickster	c) tricky	d) trickery
4	I can't answer suc	h an embarrassing qu	estion. The opposite	of "embarrassing"
	is ""			
	a) uncomfortable	brawkward	c) inconvenient	d) convenient
5		ocialise with others to		
	"socialise" is "			
	a) separate	b) dissociate	c) mix	d) shut
6	To open any file, j	ust on the m	enu icon.	
	a) pick	b) trick	c) click	d) clip
7	I like to spend tim	e talking and	with people to build	new friendships.
	a) social	b) sociable	c) socialisation	d) socialising
8	Please, walk quiet	tly so that you don't	the birds away	y.
	a) frightening	b) frightened	c) fright	d) frighten
9	It was so	driving through the d	lesert at night.	
	a) scar	b) scared	c) scare	d) scary
10	Several people	on my last post	. I was very happy wi	th what they said.
	a) commented	b) excited	c) completed	d) clicked
		Notes on Vo	cabulary	Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.
a	+ to + مفعول + to +	i nf. عسم ا allowed h	im to play here.	
a	llow + v-ing/noun	l allowed p	laying here.	

The email was only a scam to take my money. غش – عملية احتبال scam skim I usually skim the newspapers in the morning. يقرا أو يتصفح سريعنا لمعرفة الفكرة الرئيسية فقط دون تفاصيل We scanned the list until we found our friend's scan يفحص أو يتصفح بدقة للبحث عن شيء محدد If I like anything on the internet, I download it download ... from onto my computer. يحمل أو ينزل من الانترنت When I finished my research, I uploaded it to the upload ... to يرفع على الإنترنت internet. unload He parked his vehicle and began to unload it. يقوم بتفريغ الحمولة (سيارة مثلًا) You must upgrade your computer version as it is upgrade very old. يرقى – يصعد (من أقل لأعلى) You must update your computer programs more update بحدث often. Choose anyone. You are free. حر/مجاني free - Dad is free of/from any disease. free of/from - This drink is free of/from alcohol. خال من/لا يعاني من (مرض) Say your opinion freely. freely Vocabulary Check point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 You must be careful when you files from the internet. d) upgrade c) overload b) upload a) download 2 From time to time, we must the programs and applications on our phones. d) up-to-date c) update b) download a) upload 3 Parents mustn't allow for any reasons. d) smoke c) smokes b) smoking a) to smoke 4 To find the piece of information I wanted, I the whole site. d) scanned c) phished a) skimmed b) scammed



Vocabulary General Exercises

1	on "nex	t" when you have finis	hed filling out the for	rm.
	a) Download	b) Load	c) Select	d) Click
2	You must	the car when you le	ave it. It is not safe he	ere.
	a) look	b) lock	c) unlock	d) locker
3	There is a strong	between lun	g diseases and smoki	ing.
	a) link	b) connect	c) communication	d) website
4	When people be	gan speaking rudely w	ith each other the sit	uation became
	a) relaxing	(i) excited	c) confusing	d) ualy
5	Don'tpr	ograms from untruste	d websites to your co	mputer.
	a) download	b) upload	c) load	d) load
6	You should give	of your education	n and experience on t	he application form
	a) components	b) documents lownload new games a	c) accounts	d) details
7	Children like to d	lownload new games a	and movies	the internet.
	a) to	b) of	c) from	d) by
8	The email said it	b) of was from a bank, but w	we all knew it was rea	lly a
	a) software	b) lock of my students after a	c) scam	d) hack
9	When I met one	of my students after a	long time, it was hard	tohim.
	a) recognise	b) show	c) realise	d) understand
10	called	orrying people by send	ding them messages	on the internet is
	a) security	b) anti-virus	c) cyberbullying	d) shoplifting
11	Someone has trie	ed to trick me into givi	ng confidential سرية ir	oformation over the
	internet. This is ca	ed to trick me into giving alledb) virus nave on our computer	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	(Longman)
	a) bullying	b) virus	c) phishing	d) scamming
12	The we l	nave on our computer	and mobiles are very	important.
	We mustn't lose t	hem.	,	····portart.
	a) people	b) letters	c) data	d) hackers
13	I have uploaded a	all my personal	on this website Lan	n so frustrated now
	a) software	b) accounts	c) details	d) components
14	My brother is an .	in a great con	pany in Alexandria	a, components
	a) account	b) accountancy	c) accountable	d) accountant
15	When you want t	to remove unwanted	programs from your	computer, you can
	install an	. 4		
	a) antivirus	b) antibiotic	c) anticipation	d) anticlimax
16	It was; th	ney just wanted the cre	edit card details so th	ev could steal
	money.			(Longman)
4.	a) malware	b) bullying	c) cyberbullying	d) a scam
17	have to	this old version of Wir	ndows to enjoy havin	g more programs.
	d) upload	b) download	c) upgrade	d) overload

18	l usually just	the news	paper in the	morning. I read I	neadlines.
	a) ckim	b) scam	c) s	scan	d) count
10	Did you know th	atis a	computer p	rogram or somet	hing that is harmful
	to the computer	system?			(Longman)
	a) hardware	b) phishing	c) 1	malware	d) scam
20	You must	a note of ev	erything you	hear from your t	teachers.
20	a) make	b) do	c) :	safe	d) scan
21	Our cha	ange hegan in	the 1980s.		
	a) sociable	b) social	c) :	society	d) socialism
22	I think that my d	laughter is a ve	rv	haracter. She like	es meeting and
22	discussing peop		,		-
	a) sociable	h) social	c)	society	d) socialism
00	The magician pe	erformed a	in whic	h he made a rabl	bit disappear.
23	tricky	b) trickster	()	trick	d) truck
0.4	Chanding too m	uch time	the inter	net is harmful to	d) truck your mental and
24	4 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1			ince is that the to	,
	physical health. a) on	h) in	c)	at	d) with
	I never allow	D) III	idents are ta		
25	I never allow	wrille su	duents are ta	cheated	d) anyone cheat
	l applied for a jo	b and thou asl	rod mo to	an applica	tion form
26	l applied for a jo	b) full	ed me to	fill in	d) complete in
	a) fill out	D) IUII	orios about v	ork?The word"fi	unny" is the antonym
27	Do you rememb	erany runny su	ories about v	VOIK: THE WORD IN	anny is the anteny
	of""	b) corious	()	humorous	d) attractive
-00	Try to be more	coroful with vo	ur evams Th	e synonym of the	word "careful"
28	is "	Lareiui witti yo	ui exams. In	e syllollylli or the	
	a) careless	b) contious	c)	raging	d) pleasant
C.L.	oose the Two co	b) Cautious	of the Five	ontions:	or productive
29	Menna	. her father in i	nis appearant	de and mestyle.	e) alike
	a) looks like	b) likes	c) is like	d) similar	e) ance
30	My teacher son	netimes allows	bet	ween sessions.	e) ate
	a) eating	b) to eat	c) to eating	d) us to eat	cation form and wait
31	The secretary a	t the company	asked us to	the appli	cation form and wait
	for the interview		a) 6.11	d) fill in	e) complete in
	a) fill out	b) complete	C) IUII	u) IIII III	
32	Our grandfathe	er used to tell u	s some runn	y stories about p	eople in the past.
	The antonyms	or tunny are	and	ac d) attractive	e) unfunny
	a) careless	b) serious	c) numorou	s d) attractive	
33	Drivers must be	careful when	ariving espe	cially in city cent	res. The synonyms
	of "careful" are			d) concerned	e) incautious
	a) careless	b) cautious	c) raging	u) concerned	



Future forms

Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

(am, is, are) + v + ing

استخدام المضارع المستجر للتعبير عن المستقبل.

الاستخدام USAGE

أحداث تم الترتيب لها مسبقًا. .To talk about actions that you have arranged to do I am meeting my friends in the club tomorrow evening.

(المناسبات الاجتماعية أو الأنشطة التي تقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلًا تحتاج إلى ترتيبات ... لذا تستخدم مع



زمن المضارع المستمر).

We can use "present continuous" with the following:

(arrange – make arrangements – prepare)

Amira is visiting her aunt; she has arranged everything.

- عدم القدرة على فعل شيء في المستقبل، تعنى وجود ترتيبات لفعل شيء آخر.

I can't attend your wedding tomorrow. I'm travelling with my father to France.

Present Simple

المضارع البسيط

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة المواعيد الثابشة (القطارات/الطائرات/الأتوبيسات/السينما/ البرامج التلفزيونية/الحصص المدرسية).

The train to Tanta leaves at 6:30 tomorrow morning. The English lesson starts at 2:30.

Future Continuous (will be + v.ing)

المستقبل المستمر

جدث سوف يكون مستمرًا في وقت محدد في المستقبل.

Ali will be playing a match with his friends this time tomorrow. At 5 tomorrow, I will be sleeping.

مع الترتيبات في المستقبل.

I can't meet you at 7 p.m. tomorrow because I will be watching the match.



Future Perfect (will have + P.P.)

المستقبل التام

حدث سوف يكتمل حدوثه قبل وقت معين في المستقبل أو في خلال فترة معينة.

In two hours, we will have finished our work.

By 2025, I will have graduated from Tanta University.



Important Notes



لاحظ: استخدام .be about to + inf في المستقبل القريب.

The audience are in their seats, and the performance is about to start. Hurry up. The coach is about to leave.



أيضـًا من الممكن استخدام .be + to + inf للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الترتيبات الرسمية.

The Prime Minister is to watch the final match in the stadium.



Language Summary

I will turn on the fan because it's hot.



I will have done my homework by 9 tomorrow morning.

I will be doing my homework at 7.30 tomorrow.





Funtanna forms



The bus leaves at 6 tomorrow.



I am going to join the football team next week.

I am meeting the school manager next week.



Language General Exercises

	Illy licx	(Sulfiller Hollady III)	Marina. I have arrange	d) will spand
	a) have spent	b) spend	c) am spending	a) will spend
2	According to the	timetable, our exams	in May.	85 A 245 m m
	al about	h) ctarts	c) will start	d) are starting
3	Tomorrow, I	my friends for dir	nner. We have already	reserved the tables
	at the restaurant			
	a) am meeting	b) will meet	c) meet	d) meeting
4	He to Ar	merica tomorrow. He's	s got the tickets.	
	a) will fly	h) is flying	c) flies	d) is going to fly
5	We made all the	arrangements; we	a wedding part	y.
	a) are going to give	ve	b) give	
	c) will give		d) are giving	
6	Marwan	. married next week.	Everything is arranged	d.
	a) will got	b) is going to get	c) is aettina	d) gets
7	John to	omorrow morning. H	e has accepted my in	vitation and booked
	a flight			
	a) meet	b) am meeting	c) will meet	d) am going to mee
8	Look at the sche	dule! The first train to	Aswan at 5:0	00 a.m.
	a) leaves	b) is leaving	c) is going to leave	d) will leave
9	This museum	at 9:00 a.m. tor	morrow.	
	a) will open		b) opens	
			Discourse to appear	
	clopen		d) is going to open	
10	c) open A: to Ca	nada tomorrow? B: Ye	es, I have got the ticket	and the visa. Langua
10	A: to Ca		es, I have got the ticket b) Are you travelling	; and the visa. yma g
	a) Do you travel		b) Are you travellin	: and the visa.
	a) Do you travel c) You will travel	ry for my daughter's s	b) Are you travellin d) Are you going to	and the visa. Languri g o travel uld you like to come
11	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having	ty for my daughter's s	b) Are you travellind) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Work of would have	g o travel uld you like to come d) has
11	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having	ty for my daughter's s	b) Are you travellind) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Work of would have	g o travel uld you like to come d) has
11	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having A: Are you leaving	ty for my daughter's s b) going to have ng this evening? B: Ye	b) Are you travellin d) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Woo c) would have	g o travel uld you like to come d) has
11 12	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having A: Are you leavin a) is going to lea	ty for my daughter's s b) going to have ng this evening? B: Ye	b) Are you travellind) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Work of would have so, my train	and the visa. Length of go travel uld you like to come d) has
11	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having A: Are you leavin a) is going to lea	ty for my daughter's s b) going to have ng this evening? B: Ye	b) Are you travellind) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Work of would have so, my train	and the visa. Longma g o travel uld you like to come d) has
11	A: to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel We a part a) are having A: Are you leavin a) is going to lea c) will leave Dina can't see he	ty for my daughter's s b) going to have ng this evening? B : Ye ave er friends this afterno	b) Are you travellind) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Work of would have so, my train	and the visa. Length of go travel uld you like to come d) has
11 12	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having A: Are you leavin a) is going to lea c) will leave Dina can't see he	ty for my daughter's s b) going to have ng this evening? B: Ye ave er friends this afterno b) helps	b) Are you travellind) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Work of would have so, my train	and the visa. Language travel uld you like to come d) has 7:15. nother in the kitche d) was helping
11 12 13	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having A: Are you leavin a) is going to lea c) will leave Dina can't see he a) is helping I can't meet you	ty for my daughter's s b) going to have ng this evening? B: Ye evening this afterno b) helps tonight because I	b) Are you travellin d) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Woo c) would have es, my train	and the visa. Longing g travel uld you like to come d) has 7:15. nother in the kitche d) was helping he airport. d) going to meet
11 12 13	A:to Ca a) Do you travel c) You will travel Wea part a) are having A: Are you leavin a) is going to lea c) will leave Dina can't see he a) is helping I can't meet you	ty for my daughter's s b) going to have ng this evening? B: Ye evening this afterno b) helps tonight because I	es, I have got the ticket b) Are you travellin d) Are you going to uccess tomorrow. Wor c) would have es, my train	and the visa. Longing g travel uld you like to come d) has 7:15. nother in the kitche d) was helping he airport. d) going to meet

200	16	This bus	exactly at 10:30 in th	e mornina.	
		a) leave	b) leaving	c) is leaving	d) longer
	17	Salwa to	London next week. H	Her flight leaves at 7 in t	the evening
		a) going to fly	b) is flying	c) will have flown	d) would be
	18	I to Lon	don next Friday. I've p	acked my luggage	a) would fly
		a) will travel	b) am going to travel	c) am travelling	15
	19	When he arrives	dinner with	him. I have just decide	d) travel
		a) am having			
1	20		Il my dreams in life.	c) have	d) will have
		a) will achieve	b) would achieve	el to ochio	
	21	I my fath	ner what you said. I pro	c) to achieving	d) to achieve
7		a) won't toll	b) and not not	omise,	
	22	Somehody is kno	b) am not going to te	ll c) am not telling	d) don't tell
		a) am going	ocking on the door. I	and open it.	
	23	Stop piling up	b) would go	c) will go	d) have gone
r	20	س stop pilling up	يك your lessons. You	fail.	
	24	d) WIII	b) would	c) are going to	d) will be
1	C*+	riarly to	France tomorrow. His		
		a) is going to trave		b) is travelling	
	NE			d) travels	
			tennis after school too	łay?	
		a) going to play		b) played	
_		c) play		d) probably playing	
2	26	I that mo	ountain one day.		
	_	a) am climbing	b) am going to climb	c) will be climbed	d) will climb
2	. #	Look, the sky is re	ally dark, Iind	doors.	
		a) will be staying	b) will be stayed	c) stay	d) will stay
2	.0	it is predicted that	ordinary people	on space holidays in th	e next fifty years
		a) are going	b) are going to go	c) will go	d) will be going
2	9	everything is prep	ared for my sister's we	dding nevt week This n	agans that
		al my sister will ma	arry next week	b) my sister is going to	marry post wook
2		ci my sister is getti	ng married next week	d) my sister marries nev	t week
3	υ.	ana is about to si	eep soon. This means		
		a) she will sleep so		b) she is going to sleep	soon
3	1 1	she is sleeping so	oon	d) she sleeps soon	
		a) future fact	o) intention	orrow. This sentence is a	
32			Faculty of Medicine T	c) threat his sentence is a/an	d) promise
	ē) intention			
33			dria leaves at 10 o'clo	c) predictionck. This is according to a	d) fact
	â) intention	quick decision	c) prediction	d) timetable
				- prediction	uj timetable

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

)	Vocabulary			
1	It was so	Few people attende	ed the wedding par	ty.
	a) embarrassed	b) wonderful	c) amusing	d) embarrassing
2	means	putting photographs	online.	
	a) Posting photo	5	b) Downloading i	malware
	c) Scamming		d) Cyberbullying	
3	She had had a d	ream in which	monsters were ch	asing her.
	a) scarv	b) scared	c) frightened	d) pleasant
4	It is known that	fame الشمرة always	people, but no	ot my father!
	a) exchanges	b) changes	c) charges	a) challenges
5	Yesterday, I got	up late, missed my tra	in, lost my mobile a	nd injured my leg.
	It was a/an	day.		
	a) incredible	b) horrified	c) terrified	d) horrible
6	and had	cking technologies ha	ve made it possible	to steal users' accounts
	and misuse thei	r private information.		
	a) Fishing	b) Skimming	c) Scanning	
7	I saw some adve	erts different	jobs in Cairo and Al	exandria.
		b) for	c) on	d) from
8	All drivers shoul	ld really know how to	a flat tyre.	45.4
	a) buy	b) change	c) take	d) have
9	We all	our colleague Adel to	overcome his serior	us disease.
	a) support	h) allow	c) give	a) let
10	Computer	has become a rea	I threat over the las	t decade. It leads to
	a lot of problem	ns.		
	a) downloading	b) uploading	c) hacking	d) account
11	You need to up	odate yours	oftware regularly t	o look for and remove
	viruses on your	computer.		
	a) malware		c) antibiotic	d) antibodies
12	2 The largest com	npany in our town has	600	
	a) employers	b) employments	c) employees	d) employable
13	3 The special wo	rd you need before yo	ou can sign in a Fac	ebook account is called
	a			
	a) key	b) secret	c) passport	d) password
1	4 I never	my students to waste	e their time. I alway:	s instruct them.
	a) let	b) make	c) allow	d) prevent

1	Readers can	the author's lates	it novel to read on a	Computer or tablet
	a) upload	b) unload	c) offload	d) download
	Language			download
16	3 Wein tl	ne forest next Friday as	arranged.	
	a) will camp	b) are going to camp	c) are camping	d) would camp
17	According to the	timetable, the exam	at 12 p.m.	Trodia carrip
	a) finish		b) finishes	
	c) will finish		d) is going to finish	
18	I can't attend you	ur birthday party tonig	ht because I	my uncle at hospital
	a) will visit	b) going to visit	c) am visiting	d) to visit
19	Amalhe	er birthday party next v	veek. She has made a	a lot of preparations
	a) gives	b) will give	c) is giving	d) is going to give
20	Tarek! What time	your friend to	omorrow?	a) is going to give
	a) are you meetin		b) you will meet	
	c) you are meetin	g		
21	He will introduce	us to his friends as soo	on as we	
	a) arrived	b) will arrive	c) arriving	d) have arrived
22	Al-Ismaily is a ver	y good team. It	the match.	a) Have allived
	a) would win	b) is going to win	c) will win	d) are winning
23	I can't watch the	film in the cinema with	you as it at 6	5:30 and I have work
	at this time.			
	a) will be started	b) starts	c) is going to start	d) is starting
24	There is no doub	t that weout o	of petrol one day.	
	a) will run	b) are going to run	c) are running	d) would run
25	Mum to	the dentist on Monday	/ morning.	
	a) will go	b) going to go	c) goes	d) is going
26	I need to get in sh	nape. I on a die	et.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	a) will go	b) am going to go		d) have gone
27	Look at the chicke	en on the edge of the r	oof. I think it	fall down.
	a) would	b) going to	c) is going	d) is about to
28	Take your umbrel	la with youyo	u will get wet.	
	a) and	b) so	c) or	d) but
29	Amr in B	oston University. That i	s his aim.	
	a) is studying		b) may study	
	c) will study		d) is going to study	
30		at seven o'clock sharp	Ο.	
	a) starts	b) will start	c) is going to start	d) is starting

Chapter 5

Key Vocabulary

allow	يسمح	fresh	منعش
believe	يصىق	group	مجموعة
bottom	الأسفل	interested	مهتم
crazy	مجنون	kneel	يركع
dangerous	خطير	leader	زعيم/قائد
dead	ميت	sail	شراع
different	مختلف	spade	جاروف
dry voice	صوت جاف	Space	

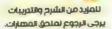
Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

allow me to	يسمح لي أن	from up the hill	من أعلى التل
at the end	في نهاية المطاف	in front of me	أمامى
burned by the sun	احترقت من الشمس	knelt down	ركع
come out from behind	يخرج من الخلف	left here by a ship	غادر من هنا على سفينة
dream of	يحلم ب	on your own	بمفردك
flying above	تحلق فوق	to my surprise	لبهشتى
from the start	من البداية	work for	يعمل لدى



Novel Exercises Chapter (5)

	1	A has a	long wooden hand	le and a flat piece of	metal and is used for
		digging.			
		a) sword	b) spade	c) spam	d) knife
	2	It'd be crazy to	go out in this heavy	rain. Crazv is similar i	n meaning to
			,	and and the second an	
		a) not sensible	b) not polite	c) common	(Longman)
	3	My father alway	is advises me not to	continuon	a) quiet
		a) right	h) flight	get into aat	school.
	4	I'm beginning to	o that too shin.	c) figure	d) fight
	•	a) decide	b) hoar	profession isn't as e	asy as I thought it was.
	=	The shild I make	D) riedr	c) realise	d) kneel
٠	,	a) knot	was so short that I	down to talk to	o him.
	•	Walana 1	D) reeled	c) kicked	d) spent
)	we have chosen	Ali to be the	of our group as he	is the best one.
		a) waiter	D) leader	c) pirate	d) employer
-		rasked the tram	to رجل المرور to	give me to the	ne post office
		a) infections	b) destinations	c) directions	d) tavic
8	5	Communication	is companies should	n't anvone to	obtain بتحصل على
		beigniai illiotti	ation about their cus	stomers.	
		a) let	b) make	c) allow	d) prevent
9	1	rd like you to wr	ite a few notes while	the lecture is still	in your mind
		a) burned	b) fresh	c) different	d) dead
10	,	i coulan't swim i	n the sea as the way	es were too high and	Lituare
		a) 2016	D) attractive	c) interesting	d) dangerous
11		A sailor is some	one who works	the navy	d) dangerous
	i	a) for	b) as	c) against	d) out
12	!	spoke in a very	low with my	mother as my father	r was asloon
	6	a) cry	b) shout	c) noise	was asieep.
13	i	t was a pity that	nearly all the passer	ngers were w	than the seed of
	ë	arrived.	an the pussel	igeis weie W	nen the ambulance
	i	a) alive	b) survived	c) dead	d) daseb
14	1	When the minist	er arrived at our scho	ool, some students w	d) death
	a				
) flats	b) flags	c) clothes	d) cianale
15	A	is a pie	ce of material used t	o control wind nave	r on a ship.
	a) sale	b) seal	C) sail	d) cell
			To the total of	C/ Sall	u) Cell







A reflective essay

· It is an essay in which the writer examines his/her experiences in life.

- مقال التدبر يكتب فيه الكاتب عن خبراته وتجاربه في الحياة وكيفية الاستفادة من هذه التجارب. ويتكون من،

1. Introduction المقدمة:

It should be more direct to explain what experience that he/she will talk about.

2. The body الموضوع:

It explains how the writer has changed or what he/she has learned. What things caused him/her to change.

3. Conclusion الخاتمة:

The writer sums up why the change is beneficial and how it will affect him/her in the future.

A blog

It is a personal website in which a person can write about his/her personal life and make comments.

The problems children might have with the internet.

Children, who are among the most active internet users, are unfortunately prone to a number of threats and problems. If you allow your children to spend much time surfing the web, it's important to know what threats they face to be able to deal with. The most common problems that face children are loneliness, depression and anxiety. Parents should be aware of what their kids see and hear on the internet. Also, who they meet and what they share about themselves.

You must talk with your children, using tools to protect them and keep an eye on their activities. They must never post or reveal personal information such as addresses or phone numbers.

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many periods in a person's life. Each period has its pleasures and pains and the happiest person is the one who enjoys what each period gives him without wasting his time in useless things. Childhood is a time when a child relies on parents who offer him everything he needs, such as food, clothes and money. During this period, there are a few responsibilities. A child finds pleasure in playing in the rain or on beach sand. But, a child has pains since he is not free to do what he wishes and he is always told what to do or to be punished for what he has done wrong.

When a child becomes a young man, he or she starts to earn his or her own living, and becomes free from the discipline and the control of school and parents, and accepts responsibilities. However, if they work hard, they can have the great happiness of seeing themselves make sustainable progress in their professions to build up for themselves their own position in society.

Wisdom and the ability to help other people come with the old age. Old people can enjoy seeing their children doing great things in life. Also, they may feel the happiness of having passed their life safely. At the same time, they may suffer from loneliness and illness.

1	There are period	ds of life mentioned in the passage.	
	a) two	b) three	
	c) four	d) five	
2	The underlined word "the	ney" refers to	
	a) children	b) young people	
	c) grandchildren	d) old people	
3	A child is not free to do	what he wishes. The synonym of "wishes" is "	N
	a) desires	b) dislikes	
	c) hates	d) refuses	
4	Young people are usuall	yaccording to the passage.	
	a) lazy	b) wise	
	c) hardworking	d) inactive	
13		delutati	
色		، مستدام	المعشة

5	The happiest persons are those w	ho	
	a) spend much time in bed	b) waste time	
	c) enjoy good and bad things	d) play all the t	
6	There are responsibilities	in the first period of	of our life.
	a) many b) a lot of	c) little	d) not many
7	A suitable title for this passage is	# ## ## ## ## ## ## ## ## ## ## ## ## #	
	a) Childhood and its trouble	b) Old age and	loneliness
	c) Periods of life	d) Youth and h	nardworking
A)	Choose the correct Arabic transl	ation:	
	Scientists make achievements and		nelp us to cope with the
•	changes in our world.		
	ت في عالمنا.	عوقنا على التعامل مع التغيرا	 a يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات ت
			b) العلم يقوم بإنجازات واكتشافات تب
	_		ر يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات ت
			d) قام العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تس
2			
_	health care and solving the probl	ems of housing and	d transport.
	سين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلاء	موال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحر	 a) فى وقت السلام، يمكن استخدام الأه
	الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلات.		
or dead	سين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل التلوث والمواصلان		
	حسين الرعاية المهنية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل.		
3	Modern technology plays an imp	ortant role in the p	progress of industry,
	agriculture, education, medicine	and surgery.	
			 ا تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهم
			لعبت التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهما (ا
) التكنولوجيا الحديثة تلعب دورًا مهم
) تلعب التكنولوجيا الأخيرة دورًا مهما
4	The great development in indust	ry has led to an inc	rease in the amount of
	carbon dioxide and this has led t	o climate change a	and global warming.
	بن مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.	قلة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربو	الدى التطور العظيم في الصناعة إلى
	ن مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.		
	إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.	بادة مبلغ الأكسجين مما أدى) أدى التطور الكبير في الصناعة إلى زير
	بن مما أسى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.	بادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربر) ادى التطور الكبير في الصناعة إلى زيا

- 5 Our historical monuments are priceless treasures, so we should do our best to protect them.
 - ان آثارنا التاريخية كنوز لا تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.
 - (b) إن لحظاتنا التاريخية كنوز تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.
 - إن لحظاتنا القديمة كنوز ليس لها ثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.
 - d) إن آثارنا التاريخية كنوز ليس لها ثمن، لذا لا يجب أن نبذل قصاري جهدنا لحمايتها.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 يجب على كل فرد تعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لأن الحياة أصبحت معتمدة عليمما بشكل أساسي.
- a) Everyone should teach computer and internet skulls because life has become dependent on them mainly.
- b) Should everyone learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.
- c) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become independent on them mainly.
- d) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.

7 لقد أصبح التلفزيون وسيلة لنشر المعرفة ويستمتع بمشاهدته الكبار والصغار على حد سواء.

- a) Television has become a means of spreading knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children alike.
- b) Television has become a way of publishing knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children on the same level.
- ci Broadcasting has become a means of publishing knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children alike.
- di TV has become a means of spreading knowledge, and the elderly and children enjoy it like.

8 تعتبر حياة الريف أكثر جمالًا من حياة المدينة لما يتمتع به الريف من مناظر طبيعية خلابة وهواء نقى.

- Rural life is more beautiful than city life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and pure air.
- b) City life is more beautiful than rural life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and pure air.
- Rural life is more beautiful than city life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and dirty air.
- d) Rural life is most beautiful than city life because of the city's fantastic landscapes and clean air.

- 9 الإنسان بطبيعته محب للطبيعة والجمال، فهو يبحث عن الجمال في كل شيء حتى بين الأشياء الغربية.
- a) People are by nature lovers of nature and beauty, they seek for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
- b) Man is by natural a lover of nature and beauty, they run for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
- c) Man is by nature a lover of nature and beauty, he searches for beauty in everything, even among ordinary things.
- d) Man is by nature a lover of nature and beauty, they search for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
 - 10 المواطنة تعنى أن يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق وما عليهم من واجبات.
- a) Citizen means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and homework.
- b) Citizenship means that the people of the some country are equal in terms of their laws and duties.
- c) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and duties.
- d) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their writes and duties.

	ons concerning f				
*************************	0011-1211-111-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-1	*****************		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	>>>===================================
************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				040000044404400000000000000000000000000
************************		*******************	****************	**************************************	*******************

	110000000000000000000000000000000000000				
	*******************		*****************		***************************************
	************************		<pre><pre></pre></pre>	************	******************
*************************	404044444444444444444	***************		V2000000000000000000000000000000000000	
		*************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,	
		*****************		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
				***************************************	*****************
******************************	***************************************	••••			
				,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	100010000000000000000000000000000000000
		******************		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	



Al-Adwaa Test

		d			Ų.
ı	ı	í	ľ	7	١
	۹	ā	Ā	å	J

Ch	oose the Two cor	rect answers	of the Five opt	ions:		
	Eating a lot of sw word "major" are	eets is a majo	or cause of tooth		e antonyr	ns of the
	a) minor	b) leading	c) warming	d) seco	ondary e	adequate
2	Children should	be prevented	from using the i	nternet		acquate
	a) everyday	b) every-day	c) every day	d) dair	v e	daily
Ch	oose the correct	answer from	a, b, c or d:	,	,	dany
	The email looked			it it was a	n evamnl	of
	a) antivirus	b) phishin	a c) lock	ing	d) uple	adina
4	The email says I h	nave won a pr	ize, but I don't be	elieve it L	think it's a	adirig
	a) scam	b) click	c) link	211676161	d) char	nge
5	Upload your	details. In	clude vour name	e. address	and phor	ige number in
	the space provide		,	-,	and prior	ie ildilibei ili
	a) personnel		al c) pers	onality	d) pers	onally
6	My schedule is qu	uite I co	uld arrange to m	eet with	ou any da	v next week
	a) stuck	b) sticky	c) flexi	ble	d) rubh	erv
7	The new modern	are e	nabling more pe	onle to w	ork from l	nome
	a) internet	b) hacks	c) con:	tacts	d) com	munications
8	The police are sea	arching for the	em as they enter	ed the co	untry	munications
	a) legality	b) illegaliv	c) lawf	illy	d) easil	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
9	Don't come late p	please, the tra	inat 5 p	m	G/ Cusii	y
	a) leaves	b) is leavin	a c) will	eave	d) is an	ing to leave
10	I've booked five	seats for the n	ew play. My fam	ilv and I	it i	the theatre
	a) are watching	b) will wat	ch c) shall	watch	d) wate	h
11	The boys are colle	ecting some d	ry branches. The	V	a fire	
			b) are i		arric.	
	c) are going to ma	ake	d) will	make		
12	Watch out or you	into t	the hole.	Marke		
	a) will fall	b) are falling	og c) fall		d) are o	oing to fall
13	Hassan has decide	ed that he	Omra in Me	ecca next	month	ong to fair
	a) will perform			erforming	month.	
	c) is going to perfo		d) will I	be perforr	nina	
14	I don't think I	able to fi	nish this research	h on time		
	a) am going to be		b) wou			
	c) am being		d) will I	oe		

- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are some who question whether globalisation is really something new. Companies in Europe and North America, supported by their governments, were opening up the rest of the world, searching for cheap raw materials. They transported these back to their own factories and produced manufactured goods, then sold them at a huge profit. The world became linked by trade and business.

This view is correct, but what it underestimates is the scale and speed of the changes that have taken place in the last thirty years or so. And the key role in these changes is that of computer technology, because it underlies all of them. Thanks to developments in digital technology, for example, it is now possible to move vast amounts of money around the world in seconds. Currency trading now goes on almost 24 hours a day, and it has been estimated that the amount of money traded has gone up by several thousand per cent in the last forty years. Decisions taken in a stock market in one country can have a disastrous effect on countries on the other side of the world, and entire national economies can be destroyed almost overnight.

It affects us all, and it relates not just to areas like trade, business and economics, but also to culture, entertainment, what we eat, how we communicate with each other and even how we see ourselves, our relationships and our lives.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Recent changes are different from what has happened before because of b) transport a) computer technology d) culture c) business 18 The world at first became linked by b) the internet a) technology d) currency c) trade and business 19 Economies of different countries can be affected by the decisions of b) goods a) trading d) stock market c) computer technology 20 Globalisation affects everything even the way we with each other. b) communicate c) entertain d) estimate a) connect

- - a) digital technology

b) stock market

c) hard currency

- d) means of transport
- 22 Which sentence is the best summary of what the text says about globalisation?
 - a) How transport has developed.
 - b) The effect of stock market on economy.
 - c) The advantages of globalisation.
 - d) Computer technology and communication.
- 23 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
 - a) communication

b) globalisation

c) culture

d) economy

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- تعتبر القراءة من الوسائل الرئيسية والأساسية لنعضة مختلف الشعوب والحضارات.
- a) Reading is one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of difficult peoples and civilisations.
- b) Consider reading is one of the mean and essential mains for the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.
- c) Reading is one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of difference peoples and nurseries.
 - d) Reading is considered one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

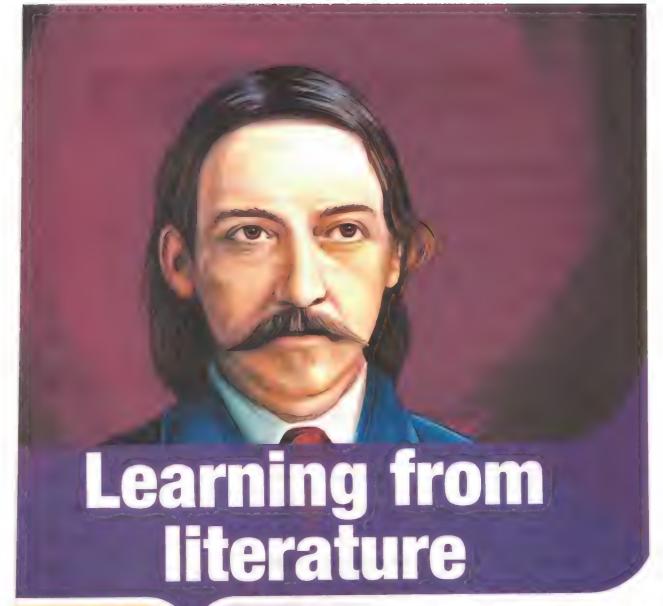
Poverty and unemployment are time bombs. Unless we exert efforts to uproot them, we will suffer a lot.

- الفقر والتوظيف قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جمودًا لاقتلاعهما، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.
- الفقر والبطالة قنابل شديدة ما لم نبذل جهودًا لاقتلاعهما، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.
- 🔾 الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جهودًا لاقتلاعهما، فإننا سنعاني كثيرًا.
 - [ن] الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جهودًا لزرعهما، فإننا سنعاني كثبرًا.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

What the world would be like without means of communication.





Unit 6

Objectives

Reading

: A biography on Stevenson; A poem, The Gardener

Writing

: A short review of a poem; A book review

Listening: A conversation about Robert Louis Stevenson

Speaking: Polite requests

Language: Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

Life Skills : Communication; Critical thinking





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

currant row (n)	صف من العنب/الزبيب	novel (n)	رواية
dig (v)	يحفر	plot (n)	قطعة أرض زراعية
gravel (n)	حصى	poem (n)	قصيدة
literature (n)	الأدب	poet (n)	شاعر
hay (n)*	ةش/تب <u>ن</u>	poetry (n)	شعر
		THE LAW TO	

Fortunately, my cat fell on a pile of hay.



تقراءة تصوص الاستماع والقراءة قدم بمسح الصورة على هالفك



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

adventure (n)	مغامرة	kidnapped (adj)	مختطف
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	lawyer (n)	محام
case (n)	حالة/قضية	line (n)	سطر/خط
choice (n)	اختيار	lock (v) – ed	يغلق/يحبس
consider (v) – ed	يعتبر/يضع في الاعتبار	piracy (n)	القرصنة
discuss (v) – ed	يناتش	pirate (n)	قرصان
discussion (n)	مناقشة	popular (adj)	محبوب
form (n)	شكل	publish (v) – ed	ينشر
full-time (adj) (adv)	دوام کامل	rhyme (n) (v) – d	قافية الشعر/يتناغم
gardener (n)	جنايني	rhythm (n)	الإيقاع
helpful (adj)	مفید/متعاون	romantic (adj)	رومانسي
improve (v) – d	يحسن	sailing (n)	إبحار
issue (n)	قضية	Scottish (n) (adj)	إسكتلندي الجنسية

serious (adj)	جاد/خطير	unwell (adj)	مريض/معتل الصحة
suppose (v) – d	يفترض	warm (adj)	دافئ
tools (n) treasure (n)	أ <i>دوات بسيطة</i> كنز	wish (v) – ed	يتمنى
Workbook Vocab	ulary		
call (v) – ed	يسمى/يدعى	favour (n)	معروف/جميل
compare (v) – d	يقارن	manager (n)	مدير
iov (n)	فرح	sentence (n)	جملة

Vocabulary Check point

1 I think the real for man is health, not money.				
	a) pressure	b) adventure	c) treasure	d) measure
2	The farmer has b	rought some	for his animals to e	at.
	a) water	b) hay	c) gravel	d) mud
3			ays busy in the	
	a) picking	b) dragging	c) sailing	d) digging
4			his case. I'm not an expe	
			c) poet	
5			of lo۱ مظاهر of lo۱	
			c) popular	
6	The child was	by a gang v	vho asked his family for	a big ransom.
	a) hijacked	b) stolen	c) rhymed	d) kidnapped
7			d of El-Sadat.	
			c) biography	d) geography
8	Pollution is one	of the most	problems that face tl	he whole world.
			c) lawful	
9			olay for the national tear	
			c) Polish	
10			actions and imagi	
	a) thinks	h) naints	c) supposes	d) appears

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

(be) best known for	معروف جيدًا ک	for a while	لفترة من الوقت
(be) born	يولد	form of	شکل من
a piece of writing	قطعة مكتوبة	from different times	من أوقات مختلفة
a variety of forms	مجموعة متنوعة من الأشكال	get away from	يبتعد عن
arranged in	مرتب/منظم في	go for me	يذهب من أجلى
bring to	ينحضر إلى	hear about	يسمع عن
compare to	بشبه ب	keep the gravel walk الحصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات	يلزم الطريق المفروش ب
compare with	يقارن بـ	kind of	نوع من
different to/from	مختلف عن	learn about	يعلم عن
do a favour	يسدي معروفًا	make a film	ينتج فيلمئا
do a job	يقوم بعمل/بوظيفة	popular with	محبوب لـ
do something for	يفعل شيئًا من أجل	put away	يرتب
each other	بعضمم البعض	sail from to	يبحر من إلى
follow rules	يتبع القواعد	were made into films	حولت إلى أفلام

Derivatives

Ver	b	No	oun	A	dject	ive
venture *	يغامر	adventure adventurer	مغامرة مغامر	adventu	rous	جریء/متھور
	Min-Out-of-State and Min-Opt-off- dip last dip dip dip	biography biographer	سيرة حياة شخص كاتب سيرة	biograph		متعلق بسيرة ث
joy	يمرح	joy	مرح/فرح	joyful	مفرح	فرحان/مسرور/
kidnap	يخطف	kidnapping kidnapper	اختطاف/خطف خاطف	kidnapp	ed	مختطف

⁻ I like adventures.
- I used to be an adventurer when I was young.
- My actions seemed to be adventurous.

قانونی/مشروع	lawful	قانون محام	law lawyer	and applicate the law for the decision and another field the law to	and the second s
متعلم أدبى	literate literary	الأدب	literature	and the second s	
شائع/شعبی/متداول	popular	انتشار/شعبية	popularity	پنشر/یروچ/ینتشر popularise	
شعرى (متعلق بالشعر)	poetic	الشعر شاعر	poetry poet		
خطير/عنيف	serious	خطورة	seriousness		
ed مغروض/افتراضی/مزعود	suppose	افتراض/ظن	supposition	يفترض/يظن	suppose
		كنز	treasure		
		أمين صندوق	treasurer	يعز/يبجل	treasure
		وزارة المالية	treasury		
		سخان/أداة تدفئة	warmer		
دافئ/ودي/حميم	warm	ىغاء/حميمية	warmth	يدفئ/يسخن	warm
		تسخين/إحماء	warming		

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Meaning	المرابط Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
بعيد	remote/distant	near/close	قرب
يحسن/يطور	enhance/develop	هور decline/damage	يتد
فرح	charm/delight	sadness/sorrow	حزر
محبوب	favoured/beloved	محبوب unpopular/disliked	غير
خطير	dangerous/severe/tough	safe/facile/calm	آمن
غريب	unfamiliar/deviating	familiar/common/ conventional فداشائع/تقلیدی	مألو
ناجح	fruitful/favourable/ profitable	unsuccessful/losing/hopele ناجع	
دافئ	heated/hot	cold/freezing	بارد
يأمل	desire/aspire	spurn/reject اینبد	یابی
	بعید یحسن/یطور فرح محبوب خطیر غریب ناجح دافئ	بعيد remote/distant party enhance/develop charm/delight favoured/beloved dangerous/severe/tough unfamiliar/deviating fruitful/favourable/ profitable ties heated/hot	remote/distant near/close بعيد enhance/develop decline/damage يحسن/يطور charm/delight sadness/sorrow فرح charm/delight sadness/sorrow فرح محبوب favoured/beloved unpopular/disliked محبوب dangerous/severe/tough safe/facile/calm familiar/common/conventional فريب fruitful/favourable/ profitable unsuccessful/losing/hopele ناجع heated/hot cold/freezing



1	Can youme a favour and pick my children up from school?			school?	
	a) take	b) give	c) do	d) make	
2	His birthday wa	s a occasion	on which we were all v	ery happy.	
	a) joy	b) joyfully	c) joyfulness	d) joyful	
3	My friends com	pare me Moh	ammad Salah as we b	oth have curly hair.	
	a) at	b) for	c) to	d) by	
4	What attracts m	e in these verses is the	e amazing ex	pressions.	
	a) poetically	b) poet	c) poem	d) poetic	
5	l am a	oerson. Everyone asks	me for help once they	/ see me.	
	a) helping	b) help	c) helpful	d) helpless	
6	You must	the rules of the pla	ce if you want to stay	here for long.	
	a) seek	b) run	c) create	d) follow	
7	Watching films is one of my hobbies.				
	a) adventurer		b) adventurous		
	c) adventuring		d) adventure		
8	Mohammed Salah's all over the world is a pride for all Egyptians.				
	a) popularity		b) popular		
	c) popularise		d) population		
9	Pollution is one of the most serious problems all over the world. The synonym of				
	the word "serious" is "".				
	a) safe	b) simple	c) dangerous		
10	The writer's new novel is very successful and has won many prizes. The antonym				
	of "successful" is	## ###################################			
	a) losing		b) profitable		
	c) popular		d) favourable		

	und die die die die die die die die die di
publish ئا/مجلة/صحيفة) بنى للمجمول	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
ome out تابـًا/مجلة/صحيفة) – يبنى للمجهول	The true city to triber the triber to the city to the
biography الشخص يكتبها شخص آخر	Famous people have different biographies written about them.
autobiography لشخص يكتبها الشخص نفسه	He published his autobiography last year.
ان/سنة) + (be) born in)	- My sister was born in Alexandria. - Ali was born in 2002.
غ/يوم) + (be) born on)	تاری) His mother was born on 21st August 1979.
(be) born into	Nora was born into a good family.
(be) born with + (dis	Madonna was born with a small hole in her heart.
at the age of = aged	At the age of 30, Ali got married for the second time.
in the age of	They inherited this house which had been built in the age of their grandfather.
success	The company achieved a great success under the new leadership.
5 (be) a success الناجع	Taking part in the competition was a success.

successful

ناجح

You should work properly to be successful.

	kidnap فدية)	يخطف شخصنًا (طمعنًا في	Two businessmen were kidnapped by terrorists.
	hijack	يختطف (عربة/طائرة)	The plane was hijacked by two armed men on a flight from London to Cairo.
6	capture	يأسر/يقبض على	- The town was captured by enemy troops after 10 days fighting.
			- She was captured at the airport as she had illegal drugs.
	arrest	يلقى القبض على	He was arrested for shoplifting سرقة المعروضات yesterday.
	imprison	يسجن	They were imprisoned for possession of drugs.

Vacabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Many famous footballers were bo	ornpoor families and now they give
	money to the poor.	
	a) of	b) into
	c) with	d) in
2	The plane was and all of	the crew were killed.
	a) arrested	b) hijacked
	c) kidnapped	d) captured
3	A lot of novels and stories are	every year by many great writers.
	a) published	b) come out
	c)spread	d) punished
4	Taha Hussein wrote about his child	dhood suffering and struggling in his
	a) biography	b) autobiography
	c)magazine	d) notes
5	My father died 66 years o	ld.
	a) in the age of	b) at the edge of
	c)aged	d) when he is

Unit 6



Vocabulary General Exercises

	1	Ahmed Shawky	is considered one o	of the greatest	in Arabic literature.		
		a) poets	b) poems	c) poetic	d) poetry		
	2	The path isn't p	aved. It is full of	500016336805 0			
				c) saddle	d) gravel		
	3	•		t the police could			
			-	c) capture			
				t is surrounded by w			
			b) forest				
	5	*	as food for ca		(Longman)		
			b) hay		d) tea		
	6		·	ology, we can live an	easier life.		
		a) At		c) in	d) With		
	7	•		ny parents before ma	aking a decision.		
				c) discuss			
	8				els, plays and poems.		
				c) culture			
	9			l "plots" can be repla			
		a) plans		c) fields	d) dreams		
	10	Does "hit"	with "sit"?		(Longman)		
		a) read		c) write	d) rhyme		
	11	Mohammad Salah's success is really a of hard work, not a chance.					
				c) reason			
	12	Our English tea	cher has always bee	en very with	n his students and		
		colleagues.					
		a) popular	b) populate	c) liked	d) fame		
•	13	He usually wea	rs suits. It is really	to see him in	jeans.		
		a) familiar	b) common	c) foreign	d) strange		
	14	Ali had to wait	for when h	e went to apply for t	the job.		
		•		c) whole			
	15			ok the car, what wou			
		a) Discuss	b) Think	c) Suppose	d) Suspect		

16	She is not a goo	d pianist as sl	ne has no sense of			
	a) rhyme	b) rhythm	c) verse	d) plot		
17	The governmen	t is trying har	d to solve the	of homeless children		
	everywhere.					
	a) issue	b) tissue	c) form	d) itch		
18	Hanan left home	e to travel, ho	ping for excitement an	d		
	a) adventure	b) furniture	c) creature	d) structure		
19	We have a two-	acre	of land which we use to	o grow vegetables. (Longman)		
	a) plate					
20	Don't walk on th	ne plants in th	e garden. You must			
			b) keep the			
	c) make the grav	vel walk	d) keep the	gravels walk		
21	Literature come	s in a	of forms poetry, nove	ls, etc.		
			c) many			
22	The poor child v	vas born	a disability that pr	events him from walking.		
			c) in			
23	On the beach, th	ne children us	ed toa small h	ole in the sand to bury their		
	eggs.			(Longman)		
	a) sit	b) cut	c) dig	d) beg		
Ch	oose the Two co	rrect answer	s of the Five options:			
	The writer's new					
	a) published		b) came out	c) was published		
	d) was come out			C) Tras published		
25			writer wasin	to a film.		
	a) turned	, ,	b) made	c) taken		
	d) placed		e) put	-		
26	We can walk if it	's not far. The		"far" are and		
	a) remote		b) near	c) close		
	d) safe		e) distant			
27	I could hear strange voices outside the room. The antonyms of the word "strange					
	are and			,		
	a) familiar		b) conventional	c) unpopular		
	d) deviating		e) safe			
28	The writer's last	novel which v	vas published last year	was		
	a) a success		b) succeed	c) successful		
	d) succession		e) success			

Language

Verbs followed by (-ing form)

admit (to)	يعترف بــ	involve	يشمل/يتضمن	recomm	یوصی بـ
avoid	يتجنب	resist	يقاوم	fancy	يتخيل (تستخدم للاقتراح)
suggest	يقترح	risk	يخاطر	delay	يۇجل
practise	يمارس	postpone	يؤجل	prevent	يمنع
consider	يعتبر	enjoy	يستمتع ب	escape	يهرب
mind	يمانع	finish	ينهى	forgive	يسامح
imagine	يتخيل	deny	ينكر	miss	يفتقد
understand	يفهم	go	ينهب	dislike	يكره

- The criminal admitted to committing the crime.
- He enjoys meeting people from other oultures.
- My brother suggested spending the weekend on the beach.

Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

decide	يقرر	wish	يتمنى	offer	يعرض
agree	يوافق	swear	ومسقي	need	يحتاج
promise	يعد	determine	يصمم	prepare	يجمز/يعد
hope	يامل	fail	يفشل	attempt	يحاول
plan	يخطط	expect	يتوقع	prove	يثبت
manage	يتمكن	threaten	ചായ്	neglect	يعمل
refuse	يرفض	intend	ينوى	can't afford	لا يتحمل
seem	يبدو	arrange	يرتب	deserve	يستحق

- I have decided to play a match with my friends.
- He asked me for some money, but I refused to give him any.
- -Do youwant to some with me to the party?
- Ali proved to be the oleverest in the class.

Make your own mind maps to memorise these verbs and expressions. You can draw circles on a sheet of paper and write each group in a different circle with different colours.

S Verbs followed by (object + to + inf.)

advise	ينصح	permit	يسمح	tell	يخبر
recommend	یوصی ب	instruct	يعلم/يخبر	order	يامر
expect	يتوقع	ask	بطلب	warn	يحنر
encourage	يشجع	persuade	يقنع	teach	يعلم
force	يجبر	allow	يسمح	remind	يكذكر
invite	يدعو	promise	يوعد	request	يطلب

- He advised me to study and revise regularly.
- I managed to persuade my wife not to travelalone.
- Parents encourage their children to be good citizens.





(advise – recommend – encourage – allow – permit + (v-ing))

He doesn't allow smoking in his office.

I often encourage playing football on Fridays.

The company recommends using their buses instead of private ones.

Expressions followed by (-ing form)

feel like	يرغب في	It's no good	ليس من الصالح
It's worth	يستحق	It's no use	لا فائدة من
can't help	لا يستطيع التوقف عن	(have) difficulty (in)	لديه صعوبة في
can't stand	لا يستطيع تحمل	(be) busy	مشغول
can't stop	لا يستطيع التوقف	41	
What/How about?	ما رأيك؟ (اقتراح)	(have) fun	يمرح

⁻ This film is worth watching more than once.

⁻ My mother has difficulty (in) climbing up and down the stairs.

⁻ It's no use eating fast food.

5 Expressions followed by (to + v-ing)

look forward to	يتطلع إلى	(be) used to	معتاد على
object to	يعترض على	(be) accustomed to	معتاد على
contribute to	يساهم في	take to	يعتاد على
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	owing to	, ini
(be) exposed to	معرض اـ	prefer (v-ing) to (v-ing)	ىقضل عن
own up to	يعترف ب	prefer (v-ing) to (v-ing)	OF OE

- We look forward to livingon a remote island.

- All people object to usinghorns late at night.





Language General Exercises

1		his time bef		
	a) to waste	b) wasting	c) of wasting	d) both b & c
2	The teacher thre	atened the lazy stude	nt him out of	the class.
	a) sends	b) sending	c) to send	d) sent
3	The manager arr	b) sending rangedsome	of the workers to kno	w their problems.
	a) to meet	b) meeting	c) to meeting	d) meet
4	Please, don't bot	ner me. I'm busy	my homework.	
	a) to do	b) did	c) doing	d) to doing
5	Do you mind	b) did some photos of	your wedding on Face	ebook?
	a) sharing	b) to share	c) in sharing	d) to sharing
6	My father taught	t us people w	ith respect.	
	a) treats	b) to treat	c) treat	d) treating
7	Do you fancy	on a day trip to	Alexandria next week	?
	a) to come	b) come	c) to coming	d) coming
8	I dislike	away from my family f	for a long time.	
	a) to be	b) to being	c) be	d) being
9	We're planning	to Europe for o	our holiday next year.	
	a) flying	b) to fly	c) fly	d) to flying
10	Mona offered	us do the washi	ing up.	
	a) to be helped	b) helping	c) to help	d) help
11		around doing not		
		b) sitting		
12	My son was very	annoyed. He seemed	bad marks in	the exams.
	a) to get	b) getting	c) to getting	d) get
13		the report, se		
	a) writing	b) write	c) to write	d) to writing
14	It's no good	to revise your voc	abulary at the last mir	nute.
	a) trying	b) try	c) to try	d) tried
15	We look forward	Egypt a bette	er place.	
	a) to see	b) to seeing	c) seeing	d) to being seen
16		ord the house		
4.7	a) buy	b) to buy	c) buying	d) to buying
17	Thopea	new car instead of the b) buying	e old one.	(Longman)
10	My friend	D) buying	c) to buying	
18		its the midye		(Longman)
	a) will spend	b) to spend	c) spending	d) spend

19	We mix	ing with bad friends b	ecause of their terri	ble behaviour. (Longman)
	a) prefer	b) wouldn't like to	c) fail	d) avoid
20	attendi	ng all today's meeting	gs. I finished my task	S.
	a) In addition to	b) In addition	c) Addition to	d) Addition
21		hard, my daughter co		
		b) to study		
22		many historic pla		
	a) visiting	b) to visit	c) to visiting	d) visit
23	It is a holiday tor	morrow, so we could o	go together	•
	a) sailing	b) to sailing	c) to sail	d) sail
24	Our national tea	m is expected	in the next World	Cup finals.
		b) playing		
25		warda well-k		
	a) to join	b) for joining	c) join	d) to joining
26		our town objected		
	a) to build	b) to building	c) build	d) building
27	I couldn't negled	this invitation	on to his wedding pa	arty.
	a) accept	b) to accepting	c) accepting	d) to accept
28	What a hot day!	I feel like for	a swim in the sea in	Alexandria.
	a) go	b) going	c) to go	d) to going
29	I couldn't talk to	him. He couldn't stop	his homev	vork.
	a) do	b) to do	c) doing	d) in doing
30		taking the mor		
		b) refused		
31		ed me my frie		
	a) phoning	b) phone	c) to phone	d) to phoning
32		s allows our f		
	a) phoning	b) to phone	c) to phoning	d) phone
33	Which of the fol	lowing sentences is IN	ICORRECT?	
	a) My father sug	gested leaving his new	job.	
	b) I don't really e	njoy going to the oper	a.	
		er neighbour of stealir	-	
	d) He objected to	o visit that frightening	place again.	
34	Which of the fol	lowing sentences is Co	ORRECT?	
	a) I promised hel	ping her with her prob	olems.	
	b) She agreed br	inging her new laptop	with her.	
		taking the train to Asw		
	d) I don't mind to	o watch this movie aga	ain.	

)	Vocabulary			
1	are very	bad as they live on	attacking and robbin	g ships at sea.
			c) Burglars	
2			story in, he i	
			c) verse	
3				in the island.
			c) treason	
4			for the night and take	
	a) looked	b) lucked	c) blocked	d) locked
5	The writer's new	collection of short s	storieslast we	eek.
	a) was come out	b) came out	c) published	d) came in
6	The diplomat wa	sand two r	nillion dollars was den	nanded for his release.
	a) hijacked	b) captured	c) kidnapped	d) arrested
7	My son won the	writing competition	12. I was so	proud of him.
	a) aged		w/ 1111011111015	
	c) at the age of		d) all the mention	ed
8	Some animals us	ually holes	in the sand to bury th	neir eggs.
	a) drill	b) dig	c) look	
9	row is a	line of plants that h	ave small fruits.	
	a) Currant	b) Current	c) Bad	d) Fruitless
10	is long g	grass that has been	cut and dried, often u	sed as food for cattle.
	a) Case	b) Plot	c) Gravel	d) Hay
11	My husband always	ays buys red roses fo	or me on my birthday.	How
	a) romantic	b) horrible	c) funny	d) comic
12	The writer became	ne well-known beca	use his novel was	**********
	a) success	b) a success	c) a successful	d) successfully
13	Students can't ge	et jobs beca	ause they have to atte	nd college every day.
			c) full-time	
14	My friend is a ver		was borna	
			c) in	
			ple whatever their so	
	a) exciting	b) fair	c) bias	d) unfair

Language 16 Menna hopes the Faculty of Medicine one day. d) to joining c) joins b) joining a) to join 17 My son suggested to the club today. d) to go b) went c) going a) goes 18 Ahmed avoidedhis old friends at the wedding yesterday. d) meeting b) to meet c) to meeting a) meet 19 The girl decided a new dress before attending the party. d) buy c) to buying b) buying a) to buy 20 The old man denied my money last week. d) to stealing b) to steal c) stealing 21 My father advised early to keep healthy. c) to sleeping d) sleep b) sleeping a) to sleep 22 Thousands of peoplelooking at the Pyramids. They are wonderful! b) promise c) dislike d) enjoy a) decide 23 Children deserve well respected and treated. b) to be c) having been d) be a) being 24 Do you think we will be able to afford on holiday this year? c) to going d) go b) going a) to go 25 I think this nice story is worth by all students. d) read c) reading a) to read b) to reading 26 The principal to using the mobile phone at school. a) agreed b) refused c) objected d) enjoyed 27 Hala agreed to her younger sister. a) apologise b) to apologise c) apologising d) to apologising

a) cleaning 29 I regret this old car as it breaks down a lot.

b) with cleaning

c) to buying d) buying b) buy a) to buy

28 My wife was busy the flat, so she didn't go out with us.

- 30 The headmaster doesn't allow to school late.
 - d) with coming c) came b) coming a) to come

c) cleans

d) to clean

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

activities (n)	أنشطة	fair (adj)	عادل
author (n)	مؤلف	grown-up (adj) (n)	راشد/بالغ
candlelight (n)	ضوء الشمعة	hate (v) - d	یکرہ
clear (adj)	صاف <i>ٍ ا</i> واضح	hop (v) – ped	يقفز على قدم واحدة
describe (v) – d	يصف	season (n)	فصل في السنة/موسم
differently (adv)	باختلاف	situation (n)	موقف
dress (v) – ed (n)	یرتدی ملابس/فستان	subject (n)	موهنوع
especially (adv)	خصوصنا	seem (v) – ed	يبدو
exciting (adj)	مثير	verse (n)	بیت (فی قصیدة)

Workbook Vocabulary

brief (adj)	مختصر	repeat (v) – ed	يكرر
broken (adj)	مكسور	summary (n)	ملخص
narrate (v) – d	يروى (قصة - حكاية)	trace (m)	**************************************
fun (adj) (n)	ممتع/مرح	toy (n)	لعبة أطفال

I'm grown-up now, and I'm aware of what's going on.

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

a) running b) hopping c) repeating d) breaking 2 I don't want to know the details, please give me a of the topic. a) summary b) verse c) subject d) narration 3 We didn't find a torch, so we used to see in the darkness. a) lamp b) season c) candlelight d) lightning 4 I can't write well as a result of my finger. a) healthy b) wealthy c) hopped d) broken 5 The sky is today. I think it is going to be a nice day. a) clean b) clear d) muddy c) cloudy 6 I asked my teacher fornotes of the lesson I didn't attend. a) hidden b) deleted c) broken d) brief

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at night	ليلا	stay in	يبقى في
by day	نمارًا	the other way	على العكس تمامـُا
go past	يمر أمام	write about	یکتب عن
look for	يبحث عن	in my opinion	فی رأیی
in brief	باختصار	have fun	يمرح
at different times	في أوقات مختلفة	nave run	

Derivatives

Verb		No	un	Adje	ctive
break العمل	يكسر/يتوقف عر	break breakage	استراحة كسر/حطام	breakable broken	قابل للكسر/هش مكسور/متعطل
clear	يوضح/يظمر	clarity	وضوح/اتضاح	clear	واضح/ظاهر
describe*	يصف	description	وصف	describable descriptive	
dress ظف الجرح	يلبس/يداوي/يند	dressing	ملابس من يساعد الممثلين على ا ضمادة/خليط من السوائل	dressed dressy	لابس متانق/انیق
narrate	يروى	narration narrator	سرد/لخبار راوِ/قصاص	narrative	روائی/قصصی
repeat	يعيد/يكرر	repeat repetition	حدث مكرر تكرار/إعادة	repetitive repeated repeatable	متکرر متکرر/معاد یمکن تکراره
situate رکز معین	یعین/یضع فی م	situation	حالة/موقع	situated ن معین	قائم/واقع في مكار
specialise	يتخصص	special specialist specialty	شیء خلص أخصائی/خبير اختصاص/تخصص	special specialised	خاص/مخصوص متخصص

⁻ I can describe the suspect for you.

⁻ The suspect is easily describable.



⁻ I have the description of the suspect.

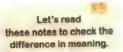
Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
brief	مختصر	short/compressed	long/lengthy/detailed طویل
broken	مكسور	crushed/damaged	intact/complete سليم/كامل
clear	صاف ِ/واضح	apparent/bright/cloudless	ambiguous/cloudy/foggy غامض/غیر واضح/غیر صافر
describe	يوصف	explain/detail	يخفى conceal/hide
especially	خصوصنا	particularly/specifically/ exceptionally	generally/normally/commonly
exciting	مثير	inspiring/astonishing	ممل boring/dull
fair	عادل	unprejudiced/impartial	prejudiced/partial متحيز
grown-up	كبير/بالغ	adult/mature	immature/teenager/ adolescent غير ناضج/مراهق
narrate	یروی	describe/detail	conceal/hide/suppress يخفى
repeat	يكرر	duplicate/do again	يوقف stop/cease

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	it is wrong for c	hildren to go to bed	day.	
	a) on	b) by	c) in	d) for
2	We have decide	ed to meet each other	er different ti	mes.
	a) on	b) of	c) at	d) by
3	The boy was inj	ured so his mother p	out a on his	wound.
	a) dress	b) dressing	c) dressed	d) dresser
4	My father is a	in heart surg	ery. He is a famous su	rgeon.
	a) special	b) specialised	c) specialty	d) specialist
5	The sky is clear t	today. It is going to I	oe a nice day. The synd	onym of "clear"
	is ""		,	
	a) cloudy	b) bright	c) hide	d) foggy
6	You should be fa	air when dealing wit	h your students. The a	antonym of "fair"
	is ""		•	
	a) apparent	b) crushed	c) prejudiced	d) justice
7	I have to	my wallet as I can'	t find it.	-//
	a) write about	b) look at	c) look for	d) go past
8		in the middle o		
	a) situated	b) situate	c) situation	d) situates

Notes on Vocabulary



	quiet	هادئ	We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby.
1	quite	إلى حد ما/تمامنا	The food in the canteen is usually quite good.
	quit	يغادر (يترك العمل)	He quit his job after an argument with a colleague.
	lay – laid – laid يضع/تضع البيض/يجمز		 He laid his hand on my shoulder. The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food. John was laying on the table for lunch.
2	lie – lay – lain	ينام/يرقد	Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.
	lie – lied – lie	d بنکی	She lied to her father about her exam results.

Vecabulary Check point 3

1 You mustn't on a	a cold surface for long as it may hurt you.
a) lay	b) lie
c) laid	d) lain
	whe canwalk without a stick.
a) hard	b) hardly
c) harden	d) hardy
	ered that my son to me about his exam results.
a) laid	b) lay
c) lied	d) lain
4 I could answer the test in	half an hour as it was easy.
a) quite	b) quiet
c) quit	d) quietly
5 My wifeher job	to look after our baby.
a) quite	b) quiet
c) quit	d) quietly



Vocabulary General Exercises

1	I really enjoye	d your party, it was re	eally	
	a) funny	b) fun	c) clear	d) brief
2	lt was a very g	good party. We	a lot of fun there.	
	a) had	b) spent	c) did	d) went
3	You have to	on the path in	order not to damage	e the small plants.
	a) do	b) stay	c) make	d) score
4	In my	, plastic will disappea	ar when we stop depo	ending on it.
	a) idea	b) mind	c) opinion	d) brief
5	Children must	n't use the cooker un	less are ther	e to help them.
	a) grown-up	b) grown-ups	c) kids	d) toddlers
6	I saw some bir	ds on the tre	e.	(Longman)
	a) hoping	b) hopping	c) helping	d) heaping
7	He lost all his	money and he is in a d	difficultat th	e moment.
	a) situation	b) position	c) station	d) activity
8	Before the nev	v lesson, I always give	my students a brief.	of the last one.
	a) summer	b) situation	c) summary	d) sum
9	We had to hav	e dinner bya	as there was a power	cut.
	a) TV	b) wax	c) lamp	d) candlelight
10	Think of the w	ord whichwi	ith "eight".	
	a) hops	b) plots	c) narrates	d) rhymes
11	is a re	gular repeated patter	n of sounds in music	speech, etc.
	a) Verse	b) Poem	c) Rhyme	d) Rhythm
12	After the baby	had slept, his mother	him gently	down on his bed.
	a) lied	b) lay	c) laid	d) lain
13	I like to have so	ome in my ho	ouse to keep the child	dren amused.
	a) toys	b) trays	c) machines	d) kevs
14	The students a	re very worried. The e	xam difficul	t for them.
	a) seems		b) appearsd) all the mention	
	c) looks		d) all the mention	ned
15	wost Egyptians	speak in En	glish. They can't spea	k it perfectly.
	a) native	b) perfect	c) broken	d) smashed

16	The club arrange	es social and cultural	for its mer	nbers.
		b) subjects		d) problems
17		to tell me what has h		ot in detail.
	a) in particular	b) on brief	c) in brief	d) on show
18	I was ill in bed a	nd I was eager to be	outside wit	th my friends.
	a) play	b) played	c) plays	d) playing
19	Lookm	y key while you're in	the street. I think I h	nave lost it there.
	a) at	b) up	c) for	d) like
20	Three boys	past us on mour	itain bikes last weel	<.
	a) went	b) made	c) did	d) took
21	We want to do t	hings as we	don't want to do th	e same things.
	a) differently	b) different	c) difference	d) differences
Ch		rrect answers of the		
		g walks, especially in		ms of the word
		and		
	a) generally	b) intere		c) specifically
		e) amaz	ingly	
23	I've got some ve	ery exciting news for	you. The antonyms	of the word "exciting"
	areand			
	a) dull	b) borin	g	c) interesting
	d) fair	e) clear		
24	We stopped by	Ali's house for a brief	visit. The synonym	s of the word "brief"
	are and			
	a) long	b) short		c) compressed
		e) matu		
25	The main chara	cter narrates the stor	y. The synonyms of	the word "narrates"
	arean			
	a) dresses	b) repe	ats	c) hops
	d) describes	e) detai		
26	The building of	the new tower has b	een	
	a) a successful	b) succ		c) success
	d) a success	e) succ	eed	
27	Ryham married			-)
	a) in the age of		ne age of	c) aged
	d) at the age of	e) ageir	ng	

Language



افعال تتبع بـ ing- أو to + inf دون تغير في المعنى:

like	بعي	love	بحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل
start	أعبي	begin	يبدا
continue	يستمر	intend	يئوى

l like to play football.

= I like playing football.

He started to study English.

= He started studying English.



١- عند وجود كلمة would أو اختصارها d' قبل الأفعال السابقة لابد أن يأتي بعدها (to + inf.). I'd like/hate/prefer/love to go to school early.

٢- إذا كانت would تعبر عن زمن الماضي.

'd (like - prefer - love ...) to have + P.P.

It's a pity we didn't visit Ali. I'd like to have seen him again.

'd rather - 'd prefer استخدامات

prefer rather (1)'d prefer + to + inf. (1) 'd rather + inf. - I'd prefer to have lunch. - I'd rather have lunch. (2) prefer + v-ing + to + v-ing(2) 'd rather + inf. + than + inf. - I prefer studying to sleeping. - I'd rather study than sleep. (3) 'd prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf. (3) 'd rather + فاعل + past simple/past - I'd prefer to study rather than sleep. perfect - I'd rather he played well.

٧) أفعال تتبع بـ ing أو (to + inf.) مع اختلاف في المعنى:

stop (to + inf.)	يتوقف لكى يقوم بالفعل.	
stop + (v-ing)	يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل.	
When he saw the restaurant, he stopp He decided to stop smoking as he felt	ed to eat. (the reason why he stopped) so ill. (He no longer smokes.)	
go on + (to + inf.)	ينتقل من عمل لآخر	
go on + (v-ing)	يستمر (في القيام بنفس العمل)	
After he finished his maths homework My son went on studying English all r remember (to + inf.)		
remember + (v-ing)	يتذكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم في الماضي).	
I remembered to phone her. (I remembered phoning her. (I phone	nbered first, then I phoned her.) d her and now I remember that.)	
forget (to + inf.)	ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم).	
forget + (v-ing)	قلم بالفعل ونسى أنه قام به (الفعل تم).	

I forgot to go to that meeting. (I forgot so I didn't go.)

I forgot going to that meeting. (I went to the meeting, but I forgot the action.)

try + (to + inf.)	يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا
try + (v-ing)	يـُجرب فعل شيء ليري النتيجة

She tried to answer all the questions.

Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

regret (to + inf.)	يأسف لفعل شيء سوف يقوم به لأنه مضطر لذلك (الفعل لم يتم بعد).		
	The state of the s		
regret + (v-ing)	يندم على فعل قام به (الفعل تم).		

I regret to say that your interview was not successful. (I am sorry to say that.) I really regret being so rude to my friend.

(The action here took place in the past and the regretting takes place now.)

Extra Points

suggest/recommend + v-ing

= suggest/recommend that + فاعل آخر + inf. or (should + inf.)

I suggest going for a swirn. = I suggest that we (should) go for a swirn.

see – hear + مفعول + inf. see – hear + مفعول + v-ing

رؤية واستماع الحدث كله

رؤية واستماع جزء من الحدث

I heard them talk about global warming. It was a very useful programme. I saw my friend All playing but I left before the end of the match.

1 the first – the second – the third – the last ... + n. + to + inf.

Hana was the last person to come to the party.

ask – decide – know – remember – forget – explain – understand

- هذه الأفعال إذا جاء بعدها أداة استفهام نستخدم .to + inf.

We asked him how to get to the station. I haven't decided where to go yet.

make + مفعول + inf. = cause + مفعول + to + inf.
make + مفعول + inf. = force + مفعول + to + inf.
let + مفعول + inf. = allow + مفعول + to + inf.

يجعل ...

بجعاء/بجير ...

... 2011

My teacher always makes me study. (= causes me to study) I only did it as they made me do it. (= forced me to do it) He let me go out with my friends. (= allowed me to go out)

- ولكن في حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم بعدها .to + inf.

He was made to come early.





Language General Exercises

Noha would ra	ther lunch in	the club.	1) 4 1, 1		
a) to have	b) have	c) having	d) to having		
I soon began	what the pro	blems were.			
a) to understan	ding	b) understand			
clunderstands		d) to understand			
My wife prefer	s cooking at home	fast food.			
a) to buy	b) than buy	c) to buying	d) than buying		
4 Would you like	out for a m	eal tonight?			
a) going	b) to going	c) go	d) to go		
E Dalia would pr	efer lunch in	the club.			
a) to have	b) have	c) having with such bad people.	d) to having		
6 You should ave	oid friends w	vith such bad people.			
a) to making	b) makes	c) making	d) to make		
7 The police pay	erallow int	his area.			
a) parking	b) park	c) to park	d) to be parked		
8 Marwa recomi	mended tha	t new restaurant. Sne :	said it was good.		
a) trying	h) to try	c) to trying	d) that try		
9 I really regret	up late; I mis	sed the first lecture.	(Longman)		
a) staving	b) to stay	c) to staying	d) for staying		
a Hikalistaning	I really regret				
a) talking	h) to talk	c) to talking	o) talk		
11 Please remind	a) talking b) to talk c) to talking d) talk Please, remind your brother me the book he has borrowed.				
a) getting	b) to get	c) to getting	d) get		
to The police for	cod the criminal	the truth about th	ne thert.		
-\ tall	h) telling	c) to telling	d) to tell		
13 Would you like	e the summe	er noliday with us ili ri	OIL Jaiu: (Longinum		
a) to spending	b) spend	c) spending	a) to spend		
44 Leonsidor	Luyor and Aswa	in my best memory ev	ver.		
alvicit	h) to visit	c) to visiting	d) visiting		
15 I'll never forge	etdown in th	ne middle of the road.	It was terrible.		
	Like brook	e to breaking	a) Droke		
16 What a terribl	e thing! You forgot	the important	documents.		
a) signing	b) sign	c) to signing	d) to sign		
17 I forgot	my medicine, so I	took it twice.			
a) taking	b) to take	c) take	d) to taking		
18 Stop	noise; your father is	asleep.	(Longma		
a) to making	b) making	c) make	d) to make		

1		30 minutes.			our area. It took them			
		a) deliver	b) to deliver	c) to delivering	d) delivering			
	20	I was driving alo something.	ng the motorway wh	en I saw a restaurant,	so I stopped			
		a) eat	b) to eat	c) to eating	d) antina			
	21	a) eat b) to eat c) to eating d) eating 1 My father usually stops						
		a) to get	b) getting	c) to getting	d) get			
	22	Jehan regrets	her time before	ore yesterday's exams.	a) get			
		a) for washing	b) wasting	c) to waste	d) will waste			
	23	I remember	this young mar	before when I was in	Alexandria ((
		a) meeting	b) to meet	c) to meeting	d) had met			
	24	regretted	my mother with th	e housework yesterda	v as she was really ill			
		a) neiping	b) to help	c) not to help	d) not beloing			
	25	On my first day	at school, I remembe	er into the c	lassroom and seeing			
		rny teacher.						
		a) to go	b) went	c) to going	d) going			
	26	remember	the Queen in Lo	ondon. It was a wonder	rful day			
		a) meet	b) to meet	c) meeting	d) to meeting			
	27	a) meet b) to meet c) meeting d) to meeting ladvised my children their time before the exam.						
		a) to waste	b) wasting	c) not to waste	d) not wasting			
	28	l always hear the birdsin the mornings.						
		a) to sing	b) to singing	c) singing	d) sings			
	29	I suggest that she	e to the hos	spital tomorrow.				
	00	a) is going	b) will go	c) go	d) going			
	30	My brother decid	led not to eat a lot aga	ain to lose weight. This	means hea lot.			
		a) stopped eating	enjoyed eating	c) regretted to eat	d) forgot eating			
	31	mane that	I have a memory that I have met Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria before This					
		means that						
		a) I went on to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria						
		b) I regret meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria						
		c) I forgot to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria						
	32	d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria						
		l remembered to do my homework before going to bed. This means that						
		b) I remember tha	b) I remember that I do my homework					
		c) first I remembered, then I did my homework						
		d) first I did my homework, then I remembered						
5	33	I forgot to bring n	ny mobile. This mean	s that				
		at my mobile is wi	th me now	b) my mobile isn't w	ith me now			
		c) my mobile will l	oe with me	d) I didn't buy a mot	oile			
				, , , , , , , ,				

	Vocabulary						
1	I like to read Fre	nchto kno	w how they have prese	erved their culture.			
	a) literate	b) adventure	c) literature	d) furniture			
2	Our teacher always it very easy for us to understand our lessons.						
	a) takes	b) makes	c) helps	d) does			
3	I couldn't measure the of the street where I live. It is very long.						
			c) length				
4	My dad is an old	d man; he needs to I	ive in a place	2,			
-	a) quiet	b) quit	c) quietly	d) quite			
5	Take care of tha	t box. What inside it	is				
_	a) breakable	b) dressing	c) broken	d) repeated			
6	During summer	r. I like to stay with n	ny family Ale	xandria.			
	a) at	b) on	c) in	d) for			
7	The footballer h	The footballer had to after he was injured.					
·	a) hope	b) crawl	c) run	d) hop			
8	Llike outdoor	l like outdoorsuch as hiking or climbing.					
0			c) toys	d) briefs			
9		At the party, her jewels sparkled in the					
	a) situation	b) description	c) candlelight	d) toy			
10	Menna was pla	ving happily with he	er new when	her father came.			
	a) toy	b) subject	c) activity	d) joy			
11	1 Mr Rady	the money on the	e table to persuade the	e man to sell his car.			
	a) lav	b) laid	c) lied	d) led			
12	2 Her mother tol	d her to he	rself in her nicest cloth	nes.			
	a) dress	b) clear	c) describe	d) narrate			
1:	3 Families,	those with young	children, benefit from	the health programme			
	a) nearly	b) especially	c) excitingly	d) fairly			
14	4 It was impossil	ole to see everything	g during ourV	visit to Paris.			
	a) bare	b) pure	c) brave	d) brief			
1	5 Go along this r	oad, then go	the supermarket th	nere and you will find			
	the station.						
	a) by	b) past	c) for	d) straight			

)	Language					
16	Hove	luring summer. I s	swim nearly every day.			
	a) to swimming		c) swim	d) swam		
17	7 I'd likeout with my family. This makes me happy.					
	a) go	b) going	c) to going	d) to go		
18	I hate	verything to the		_, ge		
	a) to leave		c) to leaving	d) leaves		
19	Could you explai		his maths problem?			
			c) to answering	d) answer		
20		comic fi				
		b) watching		d) to watching		
21		that his sister		wy to watering		
	a) going		c) has been	d) is going		
22	I don't always rec	ommend		- , 10 gonig		
			c) to study	d) to studying		
23	I really try to forget this very bad man who made me annoyed.					
		b) to meeting				
24	l regret t	o the cinema. It w	vas not a very good film.			
	a) go	b) to go	c) going			
25	still remember	to Alexan	dria as a reward for my s			
	a) take		c) to be taken			
26	My sister hates		gets nervous every time			
			c) flies	d) flew		
27 /	My favourite play	er intends	this year. He can't play			
i	a) retire	b) to retire	c) not to retire	d) retiring		
			What a lovely surprise!	9		
î	a) expect	b) fancy	c) predict	d) stand		
29 7	The accused boy	denied t	he ruler from his classm	ate's bag.		
ĉ	a) stealing	b) to steal	c) stolen	d) steal		
		a fine for dr	iving his car fast.			
ā	a) to pay	b) pay	c) paying	d) paid		
2	Unit 6					

Chapter 6

Key Vocabulary

advantage	ميزة	move	يتمرك
alive	على قيد الحياة	prevent	يحول دون/يمنع
cannon	مدفع	reach	يصل إلى
careful	حنر/حريص	sinking	غارقًا
contact	يتصل ب	slowly	ببطء
cry	يبكى	supplies	إمدادات
enter	يدخل	weapons	أسلحة
fort	حصن	well defended	محصن
including	بما فيها/متضمئا	wind	رياح
medicines	ادوية	WIIIG	

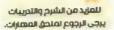
Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a good servant to him	خادم جيد له	made us all move	جعلنا جميعنا نتحرك
at all	على الإطلاق	move towards	يتحرك نحو
at the other side	في الجانب الآخر	on the island	على الجزيرة
at the same time	في الوقت نفسه	one side of the boat	جانب واحد من القارب
big enough for	كبيرة بما يكفى لـ	prevent the boat from	يمنع القارب من
easy for them to	سمل بالنسبة لمم أن	stay on	يبقى على
far from	بعید عن	take it down	ينزل شيئًا للأسفل
fell down	سقط	to get there first	للوصول إلى هناك أولًا
fire his gun	يطلق النار من سلاحه	to put food and more ۱ الأسلحة في	weapons into لوضع الطعام والمزيد من
from a different direction	من اتجاه مختلف On	walk a little way	يمشى قليلًا
impossible for them	مستحيل بالنسبة لهم	we're finished	انتمينا



Novel Exercises Chapter (6)

1 Stories about often include a search for buried treasure.							
	a) applies	b) supplies	c) pirates	d) flags			
2	Our brave soldie	ers our cour	ntry against any attacks				
	a) define	b) reflect	c) surround	d) defend			
3	I sometimes	rny friends by	ohone and email.	(Longman)			
	a) commute	h) connect	c) communicate	٠			
4	He was arrested	as he had	nis gun at some people	in the street.			
	a) fired	b) fined	c) framed	d) found			
5	The enemies co	uldn't get into the to	own as it was well	****** 9			
	a) organised	b) arranged	c) defended	d) dressed			
6	There were 30 st	tudents in the class,	only ten girls.				
	a) containing	b) including	c) enclosing	d) consisting			
7	They had a/an	over their enemi	es as they had guns but	their enemies didn't			
	a) disadvantage	b) demerit	c) con	d) advantage			
8	The clever pilot	could the pi	ane from damaging.				
	a) predict	b) move	c) prevent	d) remove			
9	The pirates load	ed the and f	fired towards the ship.				
		b) cannon		d) raft			
10		The thief the woman and tried to rob her.					
	a) attacked	b) attached	c) attracted	d) attended			
11	When we	the station, the tra	in was about to leave.				
	a) got	b) arrived	c) went	d) reached			
12	All world countri	es should stand aga	inst the spread of mass	destructive			
	a) supplies	b) forts	c) weapons	d) medicines			
13	The was ha	rd to get through as	there were hundreds of	of soldiers around it.			
	a) fort	b) forth	c) entrance	d) beach			
14	They decided to	this old fend	ce and put up a strong	wall.			
45	a) take in	b) take down	c) take up	d) take to			
10	aren't any market	ne Journey, we will to	ake a lot of food	just in case there			
	aren't any market	s there.	c) receipts	(Longman)			
	o subblies	D) makers	c) receipts	d) chefs			







When you write a review of anything, especially a poem, you should follow the following steps:

- 1 What is the poem you are going to write about?
- 2 Who is the author of the poem?
- 3 Do you think the rhyming is good or not?
- 4 What is the main idea of the poem and why the author wrote this?

Model Essay

A review of a poem

I m A u m al	ction
Introa	uction

"Bed in Summer" is a delightful poem written by Robert Louis Stevenson. It describes the innocence and joy of childhood. The poem describes the speaker's reluctance to get out of bed in the morning during the summer season. The speaker wants to stay in bed and enjoy the coolness and comfort that it offers.

Main body

The writer's use of vivid imagery and personification creates a visual image of the summer morning. The imagery of the garden full of butterflies and birds that sing on every tree helps to convey the speaker's sense of excitement. It's a good length for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme as I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

Conclusion

In conclusion, "Bed in Summer" is a beautiful poem that captures the essence of childhood and the joys of summer.



Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The World Cup is one of the biggest sporting events in the world. This great football championship features(1) players from thirty-two nations. The World Cup was created in 1928, and the first World Cup games were held in Uruguay in 1930. It was an all-male contest at that time. The first women's World Cup was held in China in 1991. Surprisingly, football is not quite as popular in the United States as basketball, or baseball, but it is still popular around the world.

People all over the continents often get up in the middle of the night or skip work to watch their nation's team compete. People in the winning nations celebrate their teams' victories. When Pelé played for Brazil in 1970, his team won the World Cup. This team is considered one of the greatest. Pelé is regarded as the best football player by many fans. Brazil has won a total of five World Cups, far more than any other nation. Another matchless (3) player was Maradona who was regarded as one of the greatest footballers who played the game, and was awarded FIFA Best Player of the 20th Century, but he was not a good idol like Pelé. He was known for drug addiction and he was arrested in Argentina for cocaine possession.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	From the	context of the	passage,	which is	the best	antonym	for "victories"?

- a) Wins.
- b) Happiness.
- c) Results.
- d) Defeats.

- 2 Who is Pelé?
 - a) A cocaine addict.
 - c) An average football player.
- 3 In America, basketball and baseball are football.
- a) more popular than
 - c) as popular as
- 4 People all over the world admired Maradona despite
 - a) his bad behaviour
 - c) his matchless talent

- b) A Brazilian team.
- d) One of the greatest football players.
- b) less popular than
- d) more dangerous than
- b) leading his team to the World Cup
- d) scoring so many goals

(3) لا يقارن

(1) مشم

(2) لقيم

- 5 The FIFA Best Player award goes to players who b) have achievements in the game a) addict drugs d) deal in drugs c) take part in the World Cup 6 People leaving work to watch their nation's team matches are the game. b) hardly interested in a) crazy about d) might be arrested c) have no affection for 7 The first women's World Cup was held in b) Uruguay a) Africa d) South America c) Asia (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: 1 Man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure, hope and despair, happiness and sadness, but in all cases, it should be filled with achievements. a يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والانتصار، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات. ل يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات. ر الأحوال يجب (حيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشال، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والفرح، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.
 - ان تمتلئ بالإنجازات. Increasing production and improving its quality is the only way to increase our national income which helps to raise the standard of living.

d يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يمكن

- إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هي الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومي مما يساعد على رفع مستوى معيشتنا.
- b) إن تقليل الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هي الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة بخلنا القومي مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.
- 🤇 إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هي الوسيلة الأخيرة لزيادة دخلنا القومي مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.
- d) إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هي الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومي مما يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة. 3 Every child has the right to lead a happy life and the government must do
 - everything possible to make sure that children survive and develop.

 (a) لكل طفل الحق في أن يعيش حياة كريمة ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما في وسعما للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال على قيد الحياة ونموهم.
 - b لكل طفل الحق في أن يعيش حياة علاية ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما في وسعها للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال على قيد الحياة ونموهم.
 - لكل طفل الحق في أن يعيش حياة سعيدة ولا يجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما في وسعها للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال
 على قيد الحياة ونموهم.
 - d) لكل طفل الحق في أن يعيش حياة سعيدة ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما في وسمما للتأكد أن الأطفال يحيون وينمون.

- 4 The Suez Canal is the greatest waterway between the east and the west. It has become an important source of national income.
 - قناة السويس هي أكبر مانع مائي بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامنًا للدخل القومي.
 - قناة السويس هي أضيق ممر مائي بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامـًا للدخل القومي.
 - 🔾 قناة السويس هي أكبر ممر مائي بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامـًا للدخل القومي.
 - d) قناة السويس هي أكبر ممر رملي بين المشرق والمغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرًا هامـًا للدخل القومي.
- 5 Reading literature introduces us to other people's experiences and cultures which are very different from our own.
 - تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على خبرات وثقافات الآخرين التي تختلف تمامـًا عن ثقافاتنا.
 - تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على الخبرات والثقافات الأخرى التي تختلف تمامـًا عن ثقافاتنا.
 - تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التي تتشابه معنا تمامـًا عن ثقافاتنا.
 - ضاماً عن ثقافاتنا.
 ضاماً عن ثقافاتنا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 تلعب النوادي الرياضية دور الهاما في المجتمع، كما تقدم خدمات عظيمة للشباب، وتساعدهم على قضاء أوقات الفراغ بشكل مفيد.
- a) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.
- b) Sports clubs play an important rule in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.
- c) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their empty time in a beneficial way.
- d) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also include great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a benefit way.
 - 7 تبذل الحكومة قصاري جهدها لحل معظم مشاكل المجتمع ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل المواطنين.
- a) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and rise the standard of living for all citizens.
- b) The government is doing every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
- c) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
- d) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the level of living for some people.
- 8 من الضروري أن تجيد تحدث وكتابة اللغة الإنجليزية لكي تحصل على فرصة عمل جيدة فهي اللغة الأكثر تحدثًا في العالم الآن.
- a) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and talking English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
- b) It is necessary to be good in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
- c) It is necessity to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
- d) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

- 9 للصحافة دور كبير في تنمية الوعى العام تجاه القضايا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية. فهي تعرض المشاكل وتقدم لها الحلول.
- a) The press has a minor role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
- b) The press has a major role in developing public awareness towards economical and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
- c) The newspaper has a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
- d) The press has a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
 - 10 تتمتـع مصر بالكثير من المواقع الأثرية القديمة والمنتجعات السـياحية الحديثـة، وكل هذا يجعلها من أعظم الدول الجاذبة للسياح.
- a) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that pull tourists.
- b) Egypt has many modern archaeological sites and ancient tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.
- c) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist beaches, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.
- d) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.

3	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the
	following:

"The importance of teaching literature in schools."	

	220002210240104010400000000000000000000

(2000442177000000000000000000000000000000	

	101320089990058809910000000000000000000000000

***************************************	***************************************

***************************************	**********
l used more than l used the right l used a topic	wrote the lused the right
4 new vocabulary. structure. sentence.	conclusion. punctuation.
Allen Accessors	***************************************

Question Sent



Al-Adwaa Test



1	I wanted to it	correct answers o	the rive option	s:	
·	"improve" are	mprove my French	n to travel to Pari	s. The syn	onyms of the w
		b) describe		d) dia	a) davalan
2	Young people	's style of life is ver	v different	Ours	e) develop
	a) with	b) for	c) about	d) to	e) from
Ch	oose the corre	ct answer from a	b.cord:	4/10	e) Iron
3	I tried to	on my good for	ot while holding o	nto my fri	and Pamu
	a) hope	b) crawl	c) run	into my m	d) hop
4		about the life of s			d) nop
	a) research	b) biography	c) novel	********	d) biology
5	The cause of the	ne accident is a big	Mercedes that w	as comina	the
	a) another	b) other	others	as coming	theway
6	The driver of the	ne car was lucky to	stav after	the terrib	u) anothers
	a) alive	b) a life	c) survivo	the terrib	ole accident.
7	Every parent	b) a life to see their	children succeed	ion ele aiu tic	a) dead
	a) locks	b) wishes	s) becomes	in their ilv	es.
8	I found these C	Ds veryw	hen I was learning) · Coolish	a) supposes
	a) helpful	b) cooperative	c) particular	, English.	-1\ L
9	Hesham likes	a rest in the	afternoon as he	inala sira d	a) nopeful
	a) to take	b) take			
		ster enjoy			d) taken
	a) playing	b) to play	s) to playing	every da	y.
1	Amina admitte	d nothow	to answer the tee)	d) play
	a) to be known	b) known	c) to know		10.1
2	I saw them	angrily, so I let	ft the room to let a	h	d) knowing
	argument.	3. 191117, 30 1 1C1	t the room to let t	nem com	plete their
	_	b) talk	c) to talk		h
		ere, but I really mis	C) to talk	-1-	d) to talking
	a) saw	b) to see	c) seeing	as.	d) seen
1		that Nabil will no	t join the team 14	DOM YOU	Want him with
	a) telling	b) to tell	c) for tolling	now you	d) to be told

- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

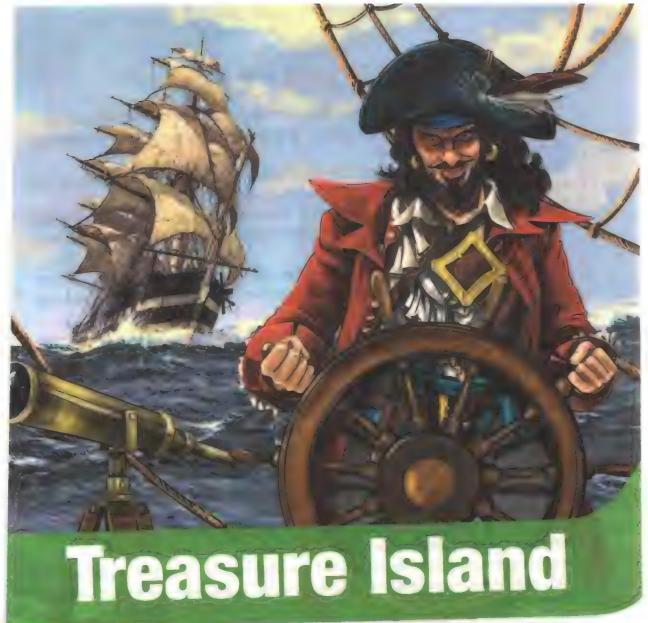
It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

.ne	oose the correct answer home	
17	The strange sound, the creaky	stairs, the darkness and the dark figure
	Sally.	
	a) screamed	b) scared
	c) cared	d) entertained
18	Sally reading ghost stor	ries.
	a) enjoyed	b) did not enjoy
	c) feared	d) avoided
19	Who does the underlined phras	se "The dark figure" refer to?
	a) The strange noise.	b) Sally.
	c) Sally's brother.	d) The ghost.
20	Sally realised it was not a ghost	when her brother
	a) stretched his hand	b) turned on the lights
	c) walked down the steps	d) laughed

e bed • إن مستقبل الحياة على الأر fforts to get rid of ts to get rid of						
e bed . إن مستقبل الحياة على الأر fforts to get rid of						
بن مستقبل الحياة على الأرا fforts to get rid of						
. إن مستقبل الحياة على الأو fforts to get rid of						
fforts to get rid of						
fforts to get rid of						
fforts to get rid of						
fforts to get rid of						
fforts to get rid of						
fforts to get rid of						
fforts to get rid of						
ts to get rid of						
efforts to get rid of						
rts to get rid of						
of childhood						
or chilanood						
اثبت الباحثون العلميو						
 اتبت الباحثون العلميو أثبت الباحثون المتخم 						
 اثبت الباحثون المنحم أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية 						
 اثبت الابحاث العلميه (d) أثبت الباحثون العلميو 						
اثبت الباحثون العلميو ords on the						
"The importance of learning a foreign language".						

لوزيد مين التدريبيات للطلب						
الرجوع للماية الخلاب عن 88						
(



Story



لقراءة نص الفصة من كتاب الصالب

Chapter (1) Summary

- The narrator of the story is called Jim Hawkins. His father owned an inn called the Admiral Benbow many years ago. A man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with a scar on his face.
- The man decided to stay in the inn. He had a large wooden box. He asked us to call him Captain. In the evenings, he told stories about his time at sea.
- The Captain stayed at the inn for months. One morning, he went for a walk along the beach. Another man walked into the inn and asked about him. He was thin and pale, with three fingers on his left hand.
- When the Captain returned and saw the man. He called the man Black Dog. Jim left them talking. Suddenly, there were loud voices and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm.
- The Captain fell over. At that moment, a doctor arrived to see Jim's father who was sick. The doctor looked at the Captain and gave him some medicine.
- The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted and Black Dog was not as bad as some of the other men.
- That evening, Jim's father died. Then, a week later, Jim saw a blind man coming towards the inn. He stopped outside the door and asked Jim to take him to the Captain who looked very surprised to see him. He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned around and left.
- The Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. Jim and his mother knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this.
- Jim thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but he knew they were in danger, so they asked their neighbours for help, but they refused. Only one of them went to tell Dr Livesy.
- They found the box key and the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight."
- Jim's mother opened the box and found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. They also found a bag with some coins inside.
- Jim asked to leave before the blind man and Black Dog return at ten o'clock. They took the money and the papers and walked as quickly as they could back towards the village, but as they walked, they heard the sound of people on the road behind them.
- His mother asked him to take the money and run as she was too weak to continue. Jim did not want to leave her, so they stopped under a bridge, where they could hide in the dark.

Practice

Chapter (1) Exercises

ers used	. to fight others during war	S
b) knives	c) tanks	a) submarines
o tell my father a	about my bad exam result.	
b) attack	c) owe	d) dare
. the woman's b	ag and ran away quickly.	
b) grabbed	c) guarded	d) brought
d these	important places for fear of	of being robbed.
b) frighten	c) guard	d) owe
the accident m	ight leave aon her	cheek.
b) scare	c) scarce	d) scaring
me a lot of mo	oney and I need it urgently	
b) owes	c) has	d) possesses
mallto	have a meal and spend the	e night at it.
	•	d) prison
ry ill, so he look	S SO	45. 1
b) powerful	2, 50, 51, 5	d) pale
isit a remote	, you need to have a sl	nip.
b) inn	c) island	a) scar
nb this high roc	ky with climbing e	quipment.
b) cliff	c) pool	d) beach
s someone to he	elp him cross the road as h	2 IS
b) powerful	c) wealthy	d) blind
ks well, cleans a	nd monitors her children ca	aretully is a real
b) guard	c) adventure	d) scar
		it is ingritering.
b) for going	c) to go	d) by going
inted m	ne and said that I was a lose	d) towards
•		u) (Oyvalus
	door asking	d) by
b) for	C) WILL	<u> </u>
	b) knives tell my father b) attack the woman's b b) grabbed d	b) attack c) owe the woman's bag and ran away quickly. b) grabbed c) guarded d

Chapter (2) Summary

- Jim could see eight men. One of them was the blind man. They ran inside the Admiral Benbow Inn. They found Bill dead. The blind man asked them to find his box.
- They found out that someone opened the box. The blind man knew that it was Jim and his mother who did that. The men started to look around the house. At this time, they heard horses coming down the road and they started to run in all directions.
- Jim ran out to see who was riding the horses. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took his mother to the village, and the others tried to catch the men who escaped on a boat.
- Jim returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police who asked him about what they wanted. He showed them the papers that he still had in his jacket. Jim wanted to take them to Dr Livesy and the head of the police, Mr Dance, agreed as Dr Livesy was a magistrate as well as a doctor. And he'd know what to do.
- They found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked them into his house. Jim showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.
- The doctor thought this might be a clue to the place where Flint buried his treasure.
 Mr Trelawney agreed with him and suggested that they should take the next boat from Bristol and find the treasure themselves.
- The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed. Then they looked at the other papers and saw a map of an island, with a big cross on it next to the words, "most of the treasure here."
- Mr Trelawney asked Dr Livesy to go to Bristol the next day as in a few days. He wanted Jim Hawkins to come as their ship's boy and Dr Livesy as the ship's doctor. The doctor agreed, but he was worried that those men who tried to find the map would look for them.
- It took them longer than they thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for the journey in Bristol, Jim stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that they might find.
- One day, a letter was sent to Jim from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the *Hispaniola* for them. Trelawney said that he had found a crew ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook. Silver also knew other men who would join them.
- Jim was surprised by this, as he thought they had to keep the news of the treasure a secret. He was very excited by the thought of the Journey and he went to say goodbye to his mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. He was very sad to leave her the next day when he travelled to Bristol with Redruth. They had just one night in the city before they were going to sail.

Practice

Chapter (2) Exercises

	e.t. 1	boorful and treated us	kindly	
		theerful and treated us	d) staff	
a) engine	b) sailors		a) Stan	
2 To solve this c	rime, the police shoul	d find a clear	D	
a) clue	b) secret	c) head	d) map	
3 Thed	ecided that she wasn't	t the killer, so she was s	set free.	
a) crew	b) magistrate	c) pilot	d) pirate	
4 We need to hi	ire a to clean t	he house and take care	e of our food.	
a) landlady	b) magistrate	c) servant	d) captain	
5 Along the new	w road, there are signs	which give us	easily.	
a) treasures	b) secrets	c) drawings	d) directions	
6 The	of the company should	l take important decisi	ons from time to time.	
a) captain	b) head	c) crew	d) magistrate	
7 Yesterday, so	me thieves tried to	the bank, but the	y were arrested.	
a) deceive	b) hide	c) steal	d) rob	
8 He tried to	from prison, but	t he was arrested last w	veek.	
	b) catch	c) escape	d) cross	
During the st	During the storm, the ship's tried to control it, but they failed.			
a) cookers	b) sailors		d) drivers	
10 In new town	s electric cables are	beneath streets.		
	b) caught	c) escaped	d) included	
44 Please there	's no need to	•		
a) cross	h) escape	c) agree	d) shout	
d) Closs	y a car when he tried t	o over the road	d near Euston station.	
a) shout	b) catch	c) cross	d) escape	
	money you can borrov		•	
	b) out	c) at	d) away	
		reparing themselves		
14 The players	b) at	c) with	d) to	
a) for	D) at	the escaped prisoner.		
a) at	b) after	c) after	d) for	
a, at	may were to the r		Treasure Island 277	

Chapter (3) Summary

- The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked Jim to take a note to Long John Silver. Jim went to the inn which Silver owned and gave him the note.
- · Silver was surprised when he saw it was from Mr Trelawney. While they were going to him, Silver talked about boats and Jim knew that he was a great sailor.
- Mr Trelawney told them that they had to leave at four o'clock that afternoon. And asked Jim to get his hat to go on the ship. When they walked onto the *Hispaniola*, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see them. He didn't like the men on this ship and he was not happy about where they were going. The crew told him they were looking for treasure which always meant danger. He didn't want to show anyone the map for fear of a *mutiny*.
- Dr Livesy thought that they had two good men on the ship: Silver and Captain Smollett. Mr Trelawney knew that Silver is a good man, but he didn't think Captain Smollett was and Jim agreed with him.
- Silver was able to walk around the ship using only a *crutch*. All the men liked him and he was a good cook. He looked after his parrot, Captain Flint, which was 200 years old.
- One night, Jim climbed inside the apple barrel to eat an apple. He heard a man talking nearby.
- Silver was saying that Flint was the captain. It was then that he lost his leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, he put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew were on the ship that day.
- · Another sailor called Dick told him that he wouldn't be able to return to Bristol after the journey. They would have lots of money. Another man said that he was tired of waiting and asked when they could attack Captain Smollett.
- Silver asked him to be patient as Mr. Trelawney had the map. They might also want Smollett to take them home. Silver threatened that they wanted to do things quickly and that's what Pew and Flint wanted to do, so Pew was blind and Flint was dead. Silver asked them to wait for the right time to kill them all.
- Jim realised that Silver was a pirate, and the other crew were part of his gang. Before Dick came to the barrel, and he heard another sailor call out: "I can see land!" It was this news that saved Jim.

Practice

Chapter (3) Exercises

a) public b) tip c) advice d) secret Why are you? The lion is in its cage. a) tired b) frightening c) pleased d) frightened This area isn't safe. You can't go sailing because of the	My friend told	me a/an and a	asked me not to tell	anyone about it.
Why are you? The lion is in its cage. a) tired b) frightening c) pleased d) frightened This area isn't safe. You can't go sailing because of the			c) advice	d) secret
a) tired b) frightening c) pleased d) frightened This area isn't safe. You can't go sailing because of the		*	s cage.	
This area isn't safe. You can't go sailing because of the		b) frightening	c) pleased	d) frightened
a) patriots b) pilots c) pirates d) parrots They led a	This area isn't s	afe. You can't go sailir	ng because of the	***************
They led a against the captain, but they failed to take the ship over. a) crew b) note c) barrel d) mutiny My son wants to buy a that can sing and repeat what we say. a) monkey b) kitten c) parrot d) puppy The coach should depend on his to study the other teams. a) helpers b) servants c) pirates d) parrots The police and arrested seven of the terrorists last week. a) saved b) attacked c) paid d) lost The price of oil is increasing daily and this will lead to a disaster. a) parrots b) spades c) barrels d) bags A of thieves were arrested while robbing the bank. a) barrel b) staff c) school d) gang My next is Paris. I'm going there next week. a) destination b) mutiny c) crutch d) situation 1 I was on for three months after the operation. a) pirates b) crutches c) pipes d) barrels 2 If you want to your goals, you should work hard. a) lose b) arrive c) reach d) do My father paid my driving lessons because I wanted to buy a car. a) with b) by c) at d) for Susan looked us very well. She's an excellent cook. a) after b) for c) up d) at The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes an	a) patriots	b) pilots	c) pirates	d) parrots
a) crew b) note c) barrel d) mutiny My son wants to buy a	1 They led a	against the capta	in, but they failed to	take the ship over.
a) monkey b) kitten c) parrot d) puppy The coach should depend on his to study the other teams. a) helpers b) servants c) pirates d) parrots The police and arrested seven of the terrorists last week. a) saved b) attacked c) paid d) lost The price of oil is increasing daily and this will lead to a disaster. a) parrots b) spades c) barrels d) bags A			c) barrel	d) mutiny
a) monkey b) kitten c) parrot d) puppy The coach should depend on his to study the other teams. a) helpers b) servants c) pirates d) parrots The police and arrested seven of the terrorists last week. a) saved b) attacked c) paid d) lost The price of oil is increasing daily and this will lead to a disaster. a) parrots b) spades c) barrels d) bags A month of thieves were arrested while robbing the bank. a) barrel b) staff c) school d) gang My next is Paris. I'm going there next week. a) destination b) mutiny c) crutch d) situation 1 I was on for three months after the operation. a) pirates b) crutches c) pipes d) barrels 2 If you want to your goals, you should work hard. a) lose b) arrive c) reach d) do 3 My father paid your my driving lessons because I wanted to buy a car. a) with b) by c) at d) for 4 Susan looked with your your goals. She's an excellent cook. a) after b) for c) up d) at The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes an	My son wants			what we say.
The coach should depend on his			c) parrot	d) puppy
a) helpers b) servants c) pirates d) parrots The police	The coach sho			ther teams.
The police	a) helpers	b) servants	c) pirates	d) parrots
a) saved b) attacked c) paid d) lost The price of oil	The police	and arrested seve	en of the terrorists la	ast week.
The price of oil		b) attacked	c) paid	d) lost
a) parrots b) spades c) barrels d) bags A	The price of oi			ead to a disaster.
A		b) spades	c) barrels	d) bags
a) barrel b) staff c) school d) gang My next is Paris. I'm going there next week. a) destination b) mutiny c) crutch d) situation I was on for three months after the operation. a) pirates b) crutches c) pipes d) barrels If you want to your goals, you should work hard. a) lose b) arrive c) reach d) do My father paid my driving lessons because I wanted to buy a car. a) with b) by c) at d) for Susan looked my very well. She's an excellent cook. a) after b) for c) up d) at The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes an				nk.
o My next				
a) destination b) mutiny c) crutch d) situation 1 I was on			here next week.	
1 I was on	a) destination	b) mutiny	c) crutch	d) situation
a) pirates b) crutches c) pipes d) barrels 2 If you want to	14 Lwas on	for three months a	fter the operation.	
2 If you want toyour goals, you should work hard. a) lose b) arrive c) reach d) do 3 My father paidmy driving lessons because I wanted to buy a car. a) with b) by c) at d) for 4 Susan looked				d) barrels
a) lose b) arrive c) reach d) do 3 My father paid	12 If you want to	vour goals, vo	ou should work hard	d.
 3 My father paid my driving lessons because I wanted to buy a car. a) with b) by c) at d) for 4 Susan looked us very well. She's an excellent cook. a) after b) for c) up d) at 15 The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes an 		b) arrive	c) reach	d) do
a) with b) by c) at d) for 4 Susan looked	13 My father paid	d my driving l	essons because I wa	inted to buy a car.
4 Susan lookedus very well. She's an excellent cook. a) after b) for c) up d) at 15 The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes an			c) at	d) for
a) after b) for c) up d) at 15 The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes an			She's an excellent co	ook.
5 The doctors could do a successful operation on my grandfather's eyes an			c) up	d) at
	15 The doctors	could do a successfu	al operation on my	grandfather's eyes an
saved him from becoming	saved him fro	om becoming		
a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) smart				d) smart
Treasure Island : 279				Treasure Island : 27

Chapter (4) Summary

- People ran to look at the island, and Jim climbed out of the barrel. They could see two low hills and a big one. Captain Smollett asked Silver to take them to the place on the map and he agreed excitedly.
- Jim told Dr Livesy, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney everything he had heard in the barrel, but they couldn't do anything as they didn't think they would attack them until they found the treasure. Dr Livesy suggested that Jim could listen and find out the sailors they could trust.
- The next morning, the *Hispaniola* stopped close to the island. The crew worked hard on the journey to the island, but when they reached it, they didn't seem to want to work. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.
- Later, Captain Smollett had a plan to take the ship. They decided to tell all the men they could trust about the plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax if they wanted to. All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go, they thought that they could find the treasure.
- Silver organised the men. Six men would stay on the *Hispaniola* and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. Jim decided to go with Silver onto the island, but Silver saw him.
- When Jim reached, he began to run as fast as he could. Then, he heard people. One of them was Silver, but he could not hear what he was saying. Then, the men had gone.
- Jim decided to follow them. After a few minutes, he saw Silver and another sailor talking. Silver asked the man who was called Tom to join him as he was a good sailor. But the man refused to work with the pirates.
- Jim suddenly heard a terrible shout, it was Alan. Tom threatened Silver that if his men hurt Alan, he wouldn't help him. Silver threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back. He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.
- Silver blew a whistle and more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. Jim was very frightened and ran away.

Practice

Chapter (4) Exercises

The referee ble	w his to start t	he final match.	
a) sword	b) whistle	c) flute	d) branch
a) sword my fri	iend Ahmed because h	e is honest and I'n	n sure he won't do
anything bad	or wrong		
	b) lie	c) trust	d) blow
Wodafone one	ned a newin o	ur street. This will I	be very helpful to me.
) coast	b) shore	c) hill	d) branch
a) Coast	ded to as he wa	as very busy doing	important tasks.
a) relax	b) shout	c) trust	d) doubt
a) relax	a dangerous W	hich needs a lot o	f money to be treated.
Cancer is a ver	b) branch	c) whistle	d) disease
a) fight	D) Diancii	Google Mans	
The place of o	ur street is on (s) held	d) trusted
a) relaxed	b) marked	• • • •	
7 I noticed the	on our teacher's	o idea	d) disease
a) expression	b) thought	c) luca	n and an
	on the north of	the Mediterranea	d) sea
	2/ 60051	c) island	u) 3ca
9 Birds lay their	eggs on the of	the sea.	d) wave
a) sure	b) barrel	c) shore	
O My daughter	came firstusua	I in the final exam	d\
a) like	b) if	C) SO	u) as
I1 I had to apolo	gise to my teacher as I	made a/an	in the class.
a) cake	b) achievement	c) wrong	a) mistake
12 They walked.	the beach duri	ng the sunrise time	e.
a) along	b) a long	c) long	d) longing
13 When the tea	cher entered the room	of the headmast	er, I walked to le
them speak fi			
a) of	b) at	c) off	
14 My father was	s very excitedsee	e me win the gold	medal in the competition
a) about	b) for	c) to	d) by
15 The young bo	oy held the bra	nch of the tree no	t to fall down.
	b) to	c) at	d) onto

Chapter (5) Summary

- Jim stopped running and then saw a man who was running very fast from tree to tree. Jim had a gun and decided to walk towards the man. When the man saw him, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down in front of Jim.
- The man was called Ben Gun who lived alone on the island for three years. Ben Gun had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails.
- Gun was left by a ship and lived on fish and fruit ever since. He told Jim that he was very rich. Jim thought he was crazy. But he told him that he could be rich too.
- Gun asked about Flint and his ship and Jim told him that he died, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. The man asked about Silver. Jim decided to tell him the story from the start, and he looked very interested.
- Gun asked Jim if Trelawney would give him money and allow him to go home on the ship if he helped him and Jim assured him as they would need his help on the ship home. He told Jim that he was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure.
- · He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. They waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. They didn't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Silver were with him on the ship.
- · When they asked Flint where the treasure was, he wanted them to go to the island and look for it, but he was taking this ship home.
- Three years ago, Gun was on a different ship. When they saw the island, he told the crew that Flint's treasure was on it. They spent twelve days looking for it, but they found nothing.
- One day, they went back to the ship and told Ben Gun to stay and gave him a gun and a spade to look for the treasure on his own.
- · Jim asked his help to return to the ship. Gun had a boat which he made himself.
- · Suddenly, they heard the sound of a gun. Jim began to run back with Gun. He gave Jim directions. They heard more guns, then Jim saw a flag flying above some trees.

Prectice

Chapter (5) Exercises

1	The of r	ny team can control a	ll the players.	
	a) servant	b) leader	c) sailor	d) group
2	All ships have	to control wind	d power during their	voyages.
	a) sails	b) engines	c) swords	d) spades
3	When we were	camping, we used	to dig searchin	ig for water.
	a) sails	b) spades	c) swords	d) sailors
4	We enjoy the	air of the sea w	hen we go to Marin	a.
	a) dry	b) dark	c) dead	d) fresh
5	After years, the	y managed to find th	e sunken ship at the	of the sea.
	a) direction	b) expression	c) sails	d) bottom
6	The teacher ask	ked me to raise my	so that he coul	ld hear me.
	a) sound		c) noise	
7		down to his knee	es and gave up wher	n the officer fired
	his gun.			
		b) believed	c) knelt	d) replied
8		n a voyage tomorrow		
	a) interesting	b) interested	c) interests	d) interest
9	The headmaste	er me to leave	school early as I wa	s tired.
_	a) let	b) denied	c) made	d) allowed
10	The police are	trying to contact the	family of the	. man.
	a) dead	b) different	c) bottom	d) sail
11	You shouldn't.	everything yo	u read. A lot of new	s is not true.
	a) kneel	b) allow	c) believe	d) lead
12		eck were quite badly		
	a) allowed	b) burned	c) made	d) believed
10	3 my sur	prise she refused to r	narry Ali although h	e is a good young man.
	a) At	b) For	c) By	d) To
14	I wouldn't drea	amletting stra	angers look after my	own grandmother!
	a) by	b) with	c) of	d) at
1	We both work	the same cor	npany. It is a multina	ational one.
	a) for	b) with	c) on	d) over

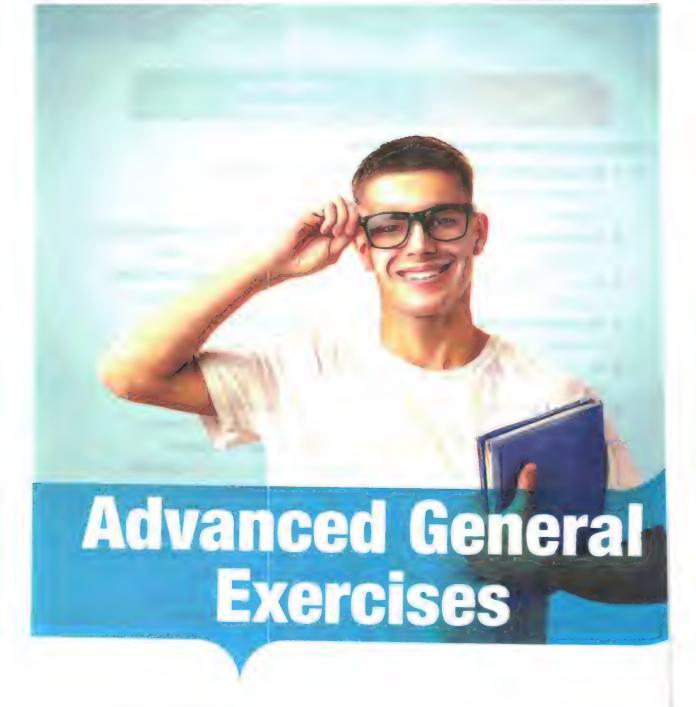
Chapter (6) Summary

- As there was no wind, Dr Livesy knew they could not take the ship, even if they wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with them. Then, they heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. They were very worried about him.
- Dr Livesy decided to take a boat to the shore with another man called Hunter. When they reached the island, they found a small fort. It was big enough for about twentyfive people and was very well defended. Then the doctor heard a shout.
- They ran back to the boat and returned to the Hispaniola. They put food, medicines and guns in the boat. And threatened Silver's men that if they tried to contact Silver, they would be dead.
- The doctor took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce.
 They took everything to the fort and returned to the Hispaniola where Trelawney helped to put food and more weapons into the boat.
- They called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with them.
- There were more people and supplies, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. Then Dr Livesy looked round and realised that the men on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon.
- It would be easy for them to hit the ship. Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell. The other pirates were getting into their boats.
- Trelawney fired his gun again and the ship started to sink, but they were near the beach and it was not difficult to walk to, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.
- The pirates were near. They had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. At last, they saw the fort in front of them. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it.
- · Before we could enter the fort, they heard another gunfire, and Redruth was dead. Trelawney was very sad.
- · Captain Smollett put up a flag. He knew that they needed the supplies that were lost in the sea. At that moment, they heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.
- The pirates could see the flag, so Mr Trelawney thought that they should take it down, but Captain Smollett refused. They heard someone shouting. It was Jim Hawkins who was still alive and safe.

Practice

Chapter (6) Exercises

1	We need to take	some with	us during our campin	ıg.
	a) communication	ons	b) entries	
	c) diaries			
2	The policeman.	his gun and	shoot the terrorist be	fore bombing himself.
	a) shouted	b) defended	c) fired	d) cried
3	Ais a lai	ge gun with wheels	. It was used during t	he wars in the past.
		b) rifle	c) sword	d) cannon
4			our country fro	m enemies.
·	a) shoot	b) fire	c) sink	d) defend
5	A is a st	rong building used l	by soldiers to defend	an important place.
	a) fort	b) cannon	c) well	d) port
6	Lhave a compla	int. I need to	the manager, please	
	a) communicate	b) contact	c) fire	d) defend
7	It is known that	should be k	ept out of the reach o	of children.
•	a) cannons	b) supplies	c) medicines	d) contacts
Я	They stole ever	vthing in my purse, .	my credit card	ds.
-	a) enclosing	b) consisting	c) supplying	d) including
q	One of the man	v of living in	a village is that you	can feel relaxed.
	a) advantages	b) contacts	c) supplies	d) disadvantages
-11	The kids watch	ed as the coin	to the bottom of th	ne pool.
	a) drowned	b) sank	c) moved	d) made
4	A leg injury ma	v the player	from playing tomorro	ow's game.
•	a) contact	b) fire	c) prevent	d) move
4		accident. They're lu		
	a) dead	b) cried	c) moved	d) alive
4	2 The others wer	ot back to the hotel.	but I stayed t	he ship to have fun.
	a) on	h) with	c) for	d) at
4	4 The bridge is fa	alling and wi	ill need a million pour	nds to repair it.
1	a) to	b) down	c) up	d) at
4	5 I don't like livin	g fardownt	own areas. I like living	g in crowded ones.
	a) with	b) to	c) from	d) for



- Advanced General Exercises
- Advanced General Exercises Answers

Advanced General Exercises



1	Waleed has given up smoki	ng, but he still has an occasional cigarette on
	the	
	a) distance	b) quiet
	c) quietly	d) distant
2	I tried to my studen	ts out about the results of the exams.
	a) seem	b) vote
	c) tell	d) sound
3	each problem does	not seem bad, but together they are quite serious.
	a) Isolated	b) In isolated
	c) In isolation	d) Insulated
4	Nabila is but I think	she is in good health.
	a) lean	b) active
	c) sound	d) leak
5	I was my teacher's	when I was at school. I was his favourite.
	a) fussy	b) better
	c) bite	d) pet
6	My father with ang	er when he knew that I failed the exam.
	a) swelled	b) spiced
	c) sustained	d) leaned
7	A lot of people hate this act	tress as she is very
	a) swell-legged	b) swell-necked
	c) swell-handed	d) swell-headed
8	People who owe huge amo	ounts of money sometimes to selling their
	houses or cars.	
	a) restore	b) lend
	c) look forward	d) resort
9	My wife has got a bad cold	, so I mustuntil she gets better.
	a) keep ahead	b) keep my distance
	c) keep my close	d) keep alive

10	Khaled was a/an, quiet man.	He is unfriendly, and not interested in	
	people.	,,	
	a) safe	b) limited	
	c) isolated	d) remote	
11	While Iin Alexandria, I met my friends in the street.		
	a) were	b) was being	
	c) was	d) had been	
12	While the lessons, Ali was cooking the food.		
	a) studying	b) was studying	
	c) I was studying	d) studied	
13			
	a) While	b) When	
	c) On	d) While in	
14	My brother the extreme cold	of Russia.	
	a) used to	b) didn't use to	
	c) was using	d) got used to	
15	I wish I were good at maths. This means that the speaker good at it.		
	a) is	b) isn't	
	c) was	d) wasn't	
16 Mona has lived in England for 5 years, so she the different culture		s, so shethe different cultures there.	
	a) is used to	b) didn't use to	
	c) be used to	d) used to	
17	The meal bad, that's why I wa	anted to vomit.	
	a) taste	b) tasted	
	c) was tasting	d) was tasted	
18	While, I was crying out of pai	n at hospital.	
	a) examining	b) was examining	
	c) I was examining	d) being examined	
19	Youssef watching the Turkish Series last night.		
	a) used to enjoy	b) would enjoy	
	c) was enjoying	d) enjoyed	
20	While shethe driving lesson, her father called her.		
	a) had	b) was having	
	c) has had	d) had had	



1	Reham with laughter at the jo	ke that I told her.
	a) sneezed	b) roared
	c) frowned	d) pleased
2	I didn't know you have bought a new car. I to see it in front of your	
	house.	
	a) chanced	b) speeded
	c) found	d) shrugged
3 I'm happy that there is a strong sense of in our neighbors.		ofin our neighourhood.
	a) society	b) smell
	c) communication	d) community
4	Your son will be looked after here. Do	n't worry on that
	a) goal	b) score
	c) sense	d) wall
5	I'veeverywhere for my gloves, but I can't find them.	
	a) hunted	b) found
	c) caught	d) fished
6	At the airport, you need to in two hours before the flight.	
	a) check	b) support
	c) desire	d) admire
7	The newspaper reports about Moamen Zakaria showed him little	
	a) aim	b) charity
	c) hunting	d) organisation
8	The United Nations decided that ther	e should be on the borders
	between the two countries.	
	a) monitors	b) killings
	c) villagers	d) founders
9	Mr Hassan refused to join any political after losing the last election.	
	a) society	b) charity
	c) party	d) compassion
10	The little chairs are not made to	
	a) suggest	b) support
	c) restore	d) regard

11	Look! This boy 100 kilograms now.		
	a) weighing	b) is weighing	
	c) weighs	d) weigh	
12	to you now?		
	a) Is this car belong	b) Is this car belonging	
	c) Do this car belong	d) Does this car belong	
13	I can't talk right now as I really busy. I will call you later.		
	a) being	b) am	
	c) will be	d) was	
14	In Chapter One, Huda Ali, and agrees to take part in the competition		
	a) meet	b) met	
	c) meets	d) is meeting	
15	Mohamed Elneny the ball to Salah who scores a goal.		
	a) is passing	b) passed	
	c) pass	d) passes	
16	Look! Hereyour father at last!		
	a) come	b) comes	
	c) was coming	d) came	
17	Hard work to success.		
	a) lead	b) is leading	
	c) is led	d) leads	
18	Neverhis lessons hard.		
	a) he studies	b) he does study	
	c) does he study	d) he studied	
19	Heher way of talking to her cl	hildren.	
	a) always criticise	b) criticises always	
	c) is always criticising	d) always is criticising	
20	Which sentence is in the Present Simp	le Tense?	
	a) We can fish in the new factory.		
	b) My mother will attend the party.		
	c) He read a new short story every day.		
	d) You are wasting your time.		

1	I think I will for the fried fish, after all.			
	a) choose	b) pump		
	c) plump	d) suggest		
2	Hams wasin getting her brother a job.			
	a) instrumental	b) tool		
	c) instrument	d) devicable		
3	It is hard to understand the workings of the party			
	a) instrument	b) tool		
	c) device	d) machine		
4	4 The manager said that he needed the report on his desk on Monday a			
•	the			
	a) least	b) latest		
	c) last	d) late		
	It is hoped that the government will in			
	education.			
	a) wasting	b) pumping		
	c) spending	d) forcing		
6	Too much dust during the storm	my clothes and they needed cleaning.		
	a) stopped	b) dirtied		
	c) frowned	d) blew		
7 We mustall our experience in solving this problem.				
	a) employ	b) imply		
	c) supply	d) reply		
8	The team's victory today has t			
	a) gained	b) wanted		
	c) beat	d) earned		
9	We didn't have any when we s			
	a) gain	b) win		
	c) losses	d) action		
10	Hospitals today are far from w			
	a) similar	b) benefited		
	c) removed	d) employed		

11	I didn't notice the thief I was t	watching the match.	
	a) during	b) since	
	c)for	d) just	
12	The couple for 7 years when I met them. It was in 2015.		
	a) have married	b) married	
	c) have been married	d) had been married	
13	My father has worked in this company 5 years ago.		
	a) during	b) since	
	c) for	d) just	
14	I haven't met my colleagues the last conference.		
	a) during	b) since	
	c) for	d) just	
15	Was it the first time that you	peen to London?	
	a) have ever	b) had ever	
	c) have never	d) are never	
16	Ia cake. Would you like some?		
	a) 've been to make	b)'ve made	
	c) 'd been made	d)'d been making	
17	l enjoyed the film as I saw many places I've never		
	a) gone	b) been to	
	c) been	d) arrived at	
18	I football this afternoon and we lost 3-2.		
	a) played	b) had played	
	c) have played	d) was playing	
19	They have lived in Europe fall.		
	a) during	b) since	
	c) for	d) just	
20	Samira is my best friend, Iher	for 5 years now.	
	a) know	b) have known	
	c) have been knowing	d) am knowing	



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	I have got a whole	of things that I want to discuss with my boss.	
	a) behave	b) host	
	c) guest	d) debate	
2	Our bus was late and so	we missed our	
	a) communication	b) contact	
	c) connection	d) link	
3	of clothing were lying all over my daughter's room.		
	a) Articles	b) Slices	
	c) Lists	d) Grades	
4	My offer was received ra	ther which made me angry.	
	a) cold	b) eagerly	
	c) coldly	d) eager	
5	There should be more on learning foreign languages in schools.		
	a) pressure	b) press	
	c) stress	d) practice	
6	The female parrot sits or	the eggs while herhunts for food.	
	a) colleague	b) matt	
	c) gate	d) mate	
7	The old woman wasan expression of delight on her face.		
	a) wearing	b) dressing	
	c) putting on	d) acting	
8	There are twoin	our local health centre and they are open 24 hours	
	a day.		
	a) plays	b) practices	
	c) locations	d) positions	
9	I feel very relaxed when I my babies in my arms.		
	a) dress	b) press	
	c) pinch	d) nurse	
10	The report about the starving children many people to tears.		
	a) removed	b) moved	
	c) made	d) nursed	

11	The police found the dead	man'sincluding his will.	
	a) paper	b) a paper	
	c) papers	d) newspaper	
12	Our teacher told us that during the exam, there is no for mistakes.		
	a) a room	b) rooms	
	c) room	d) many rooms	
13	My father once saved one-year-old boy from a fire.		
	a) a	b) an	
	c) the	d) no article	
14	My friend's father was	FBI agent when he was living in the U.S.A.	
	a) a	b) an	
	c) the	d) no article	
15	By day, I work as a	n office clerk, but at night, I work as a waiter.	
	a) a	b) an	
	c) the	d) no article	
16	My brother lives next door to Jacksons.		
	a) a	b) an	
	c) the	d) no article	
17	I took last Friday off to go to the doctor. I spentwhole day sitting in		
	his office.		
	a) a	b) an	
	c) the	d) no article	
18	I'm staying at Hilto	n Hotel near Tahrir Square.	
	a) a	b) an	
	c) the	d) no article	
19	There were only people in the meeting, so the manager cancelled it.		
	a) little	b) many	
	c) a few	d) few	
20	We have hardly heard	news of her since she travelled abroad.	
	a) some	b) any	
	c) much	d) many	



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

,	1	He was exhausted as he had a	a lot of	
		a) application	b) communication	
		c) job	d) position	
	2	The explorers their wa	ay through the jungle.	
		a) packed	b) broke	
		c) hacked	d) spaded	
	3	Everyone should thei	r children up when they go to school.	
		a) smarten	b) lighten	
		c) frighten	d) shorten	
	4		the flow of blood from the wound.	
		a) check	b) chalk	
		c) treat	d) cure	
	5		tter, everything into place.	
		a) checked	b) licked	
		c) clapped	d) clicked	
	6	This winter, the weather has b	peen really	
		a) frightful	b) frightened	
		c) fright	d) frighten	
	7	My son likes healthy food and so he always the cream of the milk		
		before drinking it.		
		a) scans	b) skims	
		c) scams	d) unloads	
	8	Critics dismissed the speech	as a politicalfor winning support.	
		a) gadget	b) machine	
		c) advice	d) device	
	9	The player said that he was n	ot a footballas he made mistakes just	
		like anyone else.		
		a) application	b) technology	
		c) machine	d) business	
	10	It's important for the intellige	ence to build up a of professional spies	
		abroad.		
		a) connection	b) business	
		c) device	d) network	

11 Look out! The girl is going to fall from the balcony. This means that		the balcony. This means that the girl		
from the balcony.				
	a) falls	b) has fallen		
	c) fell	d) is about to fall		
12	12 This museum will be 100 years old next month. This is a/an			
	a) intention	b) future fact		
	c) arrangement	d) future plan		
13	It was predicted that hehis ne	ighbours with their problems.		
	a) will help	b) was helping		
	c) was going to help	d) would help		
14	Lots of lightning and thunder doesn't	necessarily mean it		
	a) is going to rain	b) will rain		
	c) rains	d) is raining		
15	Being clever, she high marks in	the exams.		
	a) will get	b) is going to get		
	c) is getting	d) gets		
16 The company is making losses. Itsoon.				
	a) will close	b) closes		
	c) is closing	d) is going to close		
17	We think that in the future all shopping	gon the internet.		
	a) will be doing	b) will be done		
	c) will have done	d) will do		
18	A: to the zoo this week? B: OK,	it is a good idea.		
	a) Might we go	b) Are we going		
	c) Are we going to go	d) Shall we go		
19	We must hurry. The train and w	ve will miss it.		
	a) is leaves	b) leaves		
	c) is about to leave	d) going to leave		
20	At 10 o'clock tomorrow, my brother	the match on TV.		
	a) will be watching	b) watches		
	c) going to watch	d) would watch		



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Newspapers have	up some facts about the famous actor's private life.	
	a) plug	b) dug	
	c) drill	d) done	
2	Have you got any on opening a new school in Cairo?		
	a) literature	b) culture	
	c) tradition	d) chaos	
3	He was arrested for	against the government.	
	a) protecting	b) making	
	c) stealing	d) plotting	
4	! I will give yo	ou a lift to your workplace.	
	a) Get off	b) Take in	
	c) Run into	d) Hop in	
5	Please, me o	ff for a while. I want to finish my work.	
	a) lie	b) lay	
	c) drop	d) take	
6	I am reallyw	ith the idea of moving to Cairo for a year.	
	a) toying	b) playing	
	c) making	d) doing	
7	Hehis entire savings on the project, but he thinks it is hard to make		
	a profit.		
	a) adventured	b) earned	
	c) gained	d) owed	
8	Please, beaı	nd get to the point. We do not have much time for further	
	details.		
	a) shorten up	b) brief	
	c) shut up	d) abbreviate	
9	People with	skin are more likely to get a sunburn.	
	a) dark	b) black	
	c) fine	d) fair	
10	They came to	the driveway today to make it available for walking.	
	a) discover	b) gravel	
	c) ease	d) prove	

	11	Which sentence of the following is C	ORRECT?	
		a) I prefer eating fish than meat.		
		b) I'd rather to study in the early morni		
		c) I regret not to visit my uncle yesterda	ay.	
		d) I remember friends criticising my sty	le of clothes.	
	12	A: Why to Alexandria together? B: It's a good idea.		
		a) go	b) to go	
		c) not go	d) going	
	13	My mobile needn't		
		a) repair	b) repairing	
		c) be repaired	d) repaired	
	14	Let's noise because the baby	is asleep.	
		a) make	b) making	
		c) not to make	d) not make	
	15	He was made to the police.		
		a) lie	b) lying	
		c) to lie	d) to lying	
	16	I heard Dr Magdy Yacoub talking on	, .	
		a) I heard nothing he said	b) I heard everything he didn't say	
		c) I heard everything he said	d) I heard part of what he said	
٠	17	Try using this medicine. This means that		
		a) I know this medicine must work		
		b) I know this medicine won't work		
		c) I hope this medicine won't work		
		d) I want you to use it and see what wil	l happen	
4	18	Why do you go on us the san	ne stories again and again?	
		a) to tell	b) telling	
		c) to telling	d) tell	
•	19	Isleep late to keep fit.		
		a) would rather to not	b) wouldn't rather	
		c) would rather don't	d) would rather not	
4	20	The little boy was clinging to his mot	her's leg that he wanted a candy	
		bar.	•	
		a) screams	b) screaming	
		c) to scream	d) to screaming	

Answers

Advanced General Exercises

Unit 1

- 1. b) on the quiet
- 2. d) sound
- 3. c) In isolation
- 4. a) lean
- 5. d) pet
- 6. a) swelled
- 7. d) swell-headed
- 8. d) resort
- 9. b) keep my distance
- 10. d) remote
- 11. c) was
- 12. c) I was studying
- 13. d) While in
- 14. d) got used to
- 15, b) isn't
- الأمنية هنا في المضارع لذلك استخدم زمن الماضي البسيط بعد ١١٥١١ والأمنية في المضارع تعبر عن عكس الواقع.
- 16, a) is used to
- 17, b) tasted
- 18. d) being examined
- 19. d) enjoyed
- 20. b) was having
- 1. b) roared
- 2. a) chanced
- 3. d) community
- 4. b) score
- 5. a) hunted

- بمعنى (سرًا).
- تعبير بمعنى يستطلع رأيًا sound (sb) out
 - بمعنى (بمعزل عن بشكل منفصل).
 - بمعنى نحيف قليل اللحم.
 - بمعنى شخص مدلل.
 - يمعني استشاط غضبًا.
 - بمعنى مغرور.
 - تعبير بمعنى يلجأ إلى esort to-
 - تعبير بمعنى ينأى بنفسه.
 - بمعنى انطوائي.
- لأن to he يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار ط
 - لأن الفاعلين في الجملتين مختلفان فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار 🕒
 - أصل الجملة While I was in Hurghada.
- وتم حذف while I was لوجود حرف جر وفقًا للملحوظة التي تم شرحها في المحدة بالتفصيل.
 - لأنه جاء بعدها noun phrase.

 - لأنه جاء بعدها noun phrase.

 - الفعل taste هنا جاء بمعنى ذي مذاق ولا يستخدم مع المستمر.
 - الفاعل محنوف والفعل مبنى للمجهول لذلك يتبع بـ. being + P.P.

 - لأنه لا يمكن استخدام used to طنه لا يمكن استخدام
 - تم استخدام الفعل have في المستمر لأنه هنا بمعنى يتلقى دروسنا في القيادة.



- بمعنى يقعقه (يضحك بصوت عال).
- يصانف أن .chance to + inf
- تعبير بمعنى روح الجماعة sense of community -
 - تعبير بمعنى من هذه الناحية on that score
 - بمعنى يبحث عن أو يفتش.

6. a) check - تعيير يفيد تأكيد الوصول في مطار أو فندق check in. 7. b) charity - بمعنى تعاطف 8. a) monitors - بمعنى مراقبين. 9. c) party – بمعنی حزب سیاسی، 10. b) support - بمعنى يتحمل وزننا. 11. c) weighs - الفعل weigh لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة هنا لأنه جاء بمعنى (ذي وزن). 12. d) Does this car belong - الفعل belong لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة. 13. b) am - v. to be لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة. 14. c) meets - عند سرد الأحداث في قصة أو رواية أو فيلم (أي عمل أدبي أو فني) نستخدم المضارع البسيط. 15. d) passes - في التعليقات الرياضية نستخدم المضارع البسيط.. 16. b) comes - يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات مثل here. 17. d) leads - يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع المقولات المنطقية والحكم والأمثال. 18. c) does he study - عند بداية الجملة بـ Never تتبع بـ + فعل مساعد + فاعل ... 19. c) is always criticising - هذا تم استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الضيق أو الشكوي. 20. a) We can fish in the new factory. - الفعل can هنا بمعنى (يُعلُّب) وليس بمعنى يستطيع. Unit 3 1. c) plump for - بمعنى يختار أو يقرر أن يتناول. 2. a) instrumental - بمعنى لما دور فعال. 3. d) machine - بمعنى (تنظيم – هيئة). 4. b) latest - بمعنى في أبعد حد at the latest-5. c) spending - بمعنى الإنفاق. 6. b) dirtied - بمعنى جعلما متسخة. 7. a) employ - بمعنى يوظف 8. d)earned - بمعنى (يستحق – يحقق له). 9. a) gain – بمعنی مکسب، 10. c) removed - بمعنى مختلف عن.

11. b) since

- استخدمت كلمة since = because هنا بمعنى (بسبب)

12. d) had been married

- في حالة وجود كلمة دالة على المضارع التام وإشارة للماضي نستخدم الماضي التام بدلًا من المضارع التام.

+ ago - مدة زمنية + ago -

14. b) since

- since هنا جاءت مع the last لوجود اسم بعدها وليس مدة زمنية.

15. b) had ever

- lt us the first time تستخدم مع المضي التام على عكس lt is the first time تستخدم مع المضارع التام.

16. b) 've made

- معنى الجملة يعنى أنه تم الانتهاء من عمل الحلوي.

17. b) been to

18. a) played

- هناك دليل على أن وقت اللعب كان في الماضي بدليل انتهاء المباراة بخسارتنا لها.

19. b) since

13. a) a

- كلمة (fall هنا تعنى (فصل الخريف)

20. b) have known

- الفعل know لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.



- بمعنى عدد هائل. - يمعنى عدد هائل.

- بمعنى تواصل. - - بمعنى تواصل.

– بمعنى قطع.

- بمعنى (بفتور). - بمعنى (عالم عنى الله عنى الل

- بمعنی (تاکید).

7. a) wearing

- يبدو عليه wear an expression - يبدو عليه

-بمعنی (عیادة – مکتب محاماة).

- بمعنى (يحتَضن شخصـًا). - بمعنى (يحتَضن شخصـًا).

-بمعنى (يحرك المشاعر). -بمعنى (يحرك المشاعر).

-يقصد بها هنا وثائق أو مستندات.

12. c) room

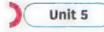
- كلمة room هنا ليست بمعنى حجرة there is no room for mistakes معناها لا مجال للأخطاء.

- كلعة one بادئة بصوت ساكن وليس متحركا واستخدام أداة النكرة هنا لأن one-year-old صفة وجاء بعدها اسم موصوف مفرد.

- 14. b) an
- 15. c) the 16. c) the
- 17. c) the
- 18. c) the
- 19. c) a few
 - a few a little
- 20. b) any

- مع الاختصارات البادئة بصوت متحرك.
- إذا جاءت the قبل اسم شخص جمع فيعني هذا اسم العائلة.
 - كلمة the whole day تعنى اليوم بأكمله.
 - التعبير only a دائمًا ما يتبع بــ
 - مع الأسماء المعدودة.
 - -مع الأسماء غير المعدودة.

المجود كلمة hardly any = almost no يمعنى تقريبًا لا hardly any



- 1. a) application
 - 2. c) hacked
- 3. a) smarten
 - 4. a) check
- 5. d) clicked
- 6. a) frightful
- 7. b) skims
- 8, d) device
- 9. c) machine
- 10. d) network
- 11. d) is about to fall
- 12. b) future fact
- 13. d) would help
 - 14. a) is going to rain
- 15. a) will get
- 16. d) is going to close
- 17. b) will be done
- 18. d) Shall we go

- بمعنى مثابرة أو جهد.
 - بمعنى يشق طريقه.
- بمعنی یهندم smarten (sb) up.
 - بمعنى يبطئ يوقف.
 - بمعنى يتضح الأمر فجأة.
 - بمعنى سيئ جدًا فظيع.
 - بمعنى يقشد -- ينزع «الوش».
 - بمعنى حيلة وسيلة.
 - بمعنى ماكينة أهداف.
- هنا بمعنى شبكة من الجواسيس المحترفين.
- الجملة تعنى أن البنت على وشك السقوط.
- الحقيقة في المستقبل تستخدم أحياننا للتعبير عن العمر أو السن.
- لوجود was predicted وهي في زمن الماضي فيستخدم معها would.
- being clever هنا لا تعتبر بليلًا لأنها قائمة على الرأى الشخصي وليس على شيء مرئي ملموس.
 - الشركة تحقق خسائر تعتبر دليلًا على قرب إغلاق الشركة مستقبلًا.
 - الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

- 19. c) is about to leave
- 20. a) will be watching

- القطار هنا على وشك المغادرة.
- تم تحديد وقت مع كلعة دالة على المستقبل فهنا نستخدم زمن المستقبل المستمر.



- 1. b) dug
- 2. a) literature
- 3. d) plotting
- 4. d) Hop in
- 5. b) lay
- 6. a) toying
- 7. a) adventured
- 8. b) brief
- 9. d) fair
 - 10. b) gravel
- 11. d) I remember friends criticising my style of clothes.
 - 12. c) not go
- 13. c) be repaired
- 14. d) not make
- 15. c) to lie
- 16. d) I heard part of what he said.
- 18. b) telling
- 19. d) would rather not
- 20. b) screaming

- dig up بمعنى ينبش عن معلومات.
 - بمعنى منشورات -- مطبوعات.
 - plot against بمعنى يتأمر على.
 - بمعنى يركب السيارة بسرعة.
 - lay ... off پئع شخصنا وشانه.
 - toy with تداعبه فكرة.
 - غامر بــ
 - بمعنى مختصر،
 - بمعنى بشرة فاتحة اللون.
 - بمعنى يضع التربة الزلطية لطريق.
- يستخدم why not + inf للتعبير عن الاقتراح.
- الجملة هنا مبنية للمجهول لذلك جاء بعدها be + P.P.
 - تتبع let's بالمصدر وعند النفي .not + inf.
- كلمة make عند استخدامها في المبنى للمجمول تتبع بـ .to + inf.
- كلمة hear عندما تتبع بـ v-ing تعنى أن الحدث لا يتم بأكمله بل تم جزء منه فقط.
- 17. d) I want you to use it and see what will happen
 - go on إذا جاء بعدها ٧-ing تعنى الاستمرار في عمل نفس الفعل دون تغيير.
 - would rather تتبع بالمصدر وعند النفي .not + inf.
 - الفعل screaming هنا بمعنى صارخيًا.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢/١٠٨٣٧

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ٤ ، ٢/١ / ٤٣/٢/١ ١





Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

Reading Text

Ecotourism(1) – is this the future?

What is ecotourism?

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered⁽²⁾ and isolated⁽³⁾. The holidays are designed to have a limited impact⁽⁴⁾ on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation.

Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving, they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem⁽⁵⁾ (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist⁽⁶⁾ anywhere else in the world. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar.









- السياحة البيئية (1)
- مهدد بالخطر (2)
- معزول (3)
- تأثير محدود (4)
- النظام البيئي (5)
- تتواجد (6)
- فرید (7)
- مستدام (8)
- المكان المقصود/مقصد (9)
- الحياة البرية (10)

The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the unique⁽⁷⁾ animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable⁽⁸⁾. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination⁽⁹⁾. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife⁽¹⁰⁾, including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

Listening Text



علم الأحياء (1)

إنسان الغاب (2)

أمتعة (4)

منزعج (5)

قَد ّم (6)

ترجئل (7)

بشكل مناسب (8)

الغابات المطبرة (3)

Luca: Last summer, I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with my friends, but to do something different.

Klara: So, where did you go?

Luca: Well, as I am studying biology⁽¹⁾, I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the orangutans⁽²⁾ there. So, I booked a holiday with an eco-tourism company and went to Borneo.

Klara: What was it like?

Luca: A bit of disaster although I did love the rainforests⁽³⁾. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an internal flight to Borneo.

But my luggage⁽⁴⁾ never arrived, so I had to buy new clothes.

The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre. And while I was leaning out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera!

Klara: Oh, no! Did you manage to get it back?

Luca : No way! The river is really deep, so I just had to leave it. But I was very annoyed⁽⁵⁾. But at least, I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre, so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the conservationists are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced⁽⁶⁾ us to the people working there. And then, we had dinner.

Klara: What was the food like?

Luca: It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very spicy. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish, though. As I was so hungry.

*Well, I am glad to hear you're not such a fussy eater anymore. What did you do every day?

Luca: We got up at about six every morning as that is when the sun rises, had breakfast and then trekked⁽⁷⁾ into the forest to learn about orangutans from the people who were looking after them.

Klara: Did you feed them?

Luca: No, they're wild animals not pets. We just observe them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up.

Klara: So, what happened?

Luca: I had to go to a hospital, but as the nearest hospital was 200 kilometres away, I had to go by a helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre. But as soon as I got back, I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook, he didn't clean the fish properly⁽⁸⁾ and everybody was sick. I am staying at home this summer.

Workbook Text

A popular problem!

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals⁽¹⁾, colourful carnivals⁽²⁾, amazing plazas⁽³⁾ and historic buildings. However, the city is a victim of its own beauty. Venice has a population of only 55,000 but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism creates⁽⁴⁾ a lot of jobs for the local population, but also causes⁽⁵⁾ many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large cruise ships⁽⁶⁾ can damage the historic buildings. The narrow⁽⁷⁾ streets can be very crowded⁽⁸⁾ and it is difficult for local people to move around the city.

قنوات مائية (1)
كرنفالات (2)
ساحات عامة (3)
يخلق (4)
يسبب (5)
سفن سياحية (6)
ضيق (7)
مزدحم (8)
سكان (9)

The local council are trying to find a solution which keeps both the tourists and local residents⁽⁹⁾ happy. They are also trying to encourage tourists to visit other beautiful sites around Venice.

Unit (

Lessons 3 & 4

Reading Text (1)

This is me on our hotel balcony⁽¹⁾ in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant⁽²⁾ here and there are loads⁽³⁾ of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers⁽⁴⁾ at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing⁽⁵⁾ and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them.





- رائع (2)
- كميات (3)
- مراهقون (4)
- مريح (5)
- معابد (6)
- ساحر/خلاب (7)

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples⁽⁶⁾ there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating⁽⁷⁾ and am really glad we went there.

Reading Text (2)

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored⁽¹⁾ – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck⁽²⁾ here at home. The weather's awful⁽³⁾ and there's nothing to do.

Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce⁽⁴⁾ in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening⁽⁵⁾ – maybe I'll have a new hobby!



- شاعر بالملل (1)
- عالق (2)
- فظيع (3)
- نبات الخس (4)
- أعمال الحديقة (5)

Reading Text (3)

- a) As I was photographing⁽¹⁾ the castle, my little brother started crying.
- b) We walked around Lisbon and I took lots of photos.
- c) We went to the shops, they are a bit⁽²⁾ expensive but my mum was happy.
- d) My uncle met us at the airport and drove us to the old part of town. It's very quiet and peaceful.
- e) We sailed⁽³⁾ along the river to see the sun going down⁽⁴⁾. It was beautiful and very relaxing!
- f) We went to Europe to visit my cousins in Portugal.
- g) My uncle decided to take us to a restaurant for lunch.
- h) He was eating an ice cream and a bird stole it! He was very upset(5).

يصور (1)
قليل (2)
أبحر (3)
تغرب (4)
منزعچ (5)

Workbook Text

Holidays Adverts

A beach break

Do you want to relax in a quiet and peaceful⁽¹⁾ place? Escape from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind⁽²⁾. Visit this amazing paradise⁽³⁾. Enjoy the sunshine⁽⁴⁾ on isolated beaches and swim in clean, clear water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the same old, boring places? Are you looking for an active holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving⁽⁵⁾, then day two takes you climbing⁽⁶⁾ in the beautiful Alpine mountains⁽⁷⁾.

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller⁽⁸⁾. You can go trekking through the Andes⁽⁹⁾ and explore⁽¹⁰⁾ ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide⁽¹¹⁾. You can enjoy peace and quiet or you can meet the local people, all without damaging the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm cruise around the Caribbean? On board our modern cruise ship, you can enjoy great food and forget your worries⁽¹²⁾ in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets and see many unusual sights⁽¹³⁾.

(T)	لم	لبدأ	A	ښ	9
		***		* *	

101		
121	اما	-
(-)	_	_

101	** *
(3)	حنه

إشراق (نور) الشمس (4)

15	
151	عوص
(-/	9

مسافر (8)

جبال الأنديز (9)

يكتشف (10)

► Video Script (Unit 1)

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact⁽¹⁾ they have on the place they're visiting?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with ⁽²⁾ tourists think about how tourism affects ⁽³⁾ their cities. They consider the advantages and disadvantages. They try to help local people cope with ⁽⁴⁾ lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising (5) the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community (6) of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the environment and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport⁽⁷⁾ if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate ⁽⁸⁾ of each other!



تأثير (1)

يؤثر (3)

ىعلن (5)

مجتمع (6)

المواصلات العامة (7)

معروف بـ (2)

يتعامل مع (4)

Lessons 1 & 2

Reading Text (1)

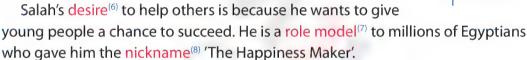
People who help

Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired (1) for his speed and ability (2) to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990.

Salah has been praised (3) for his kind and generous (4) donations to charity in Egypt. He

donated⁽⁵⁾ money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo.



- يكحترم (1)
- القدرة (2)
- امتدح (3)
- کریم/سخی (4)
- تبرع (5)
- رغبة (6)
- مثل أعلى/قدوة (7)
- لقب/كنية (8)

Reading Text (2)

Blood donors

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in World Blood Donor Day⁽¹⁾ to share information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood?

Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured (2) or need regular blood transplants (3) because they have a long-term (4) illness.

Giving blood can also have health benefits⁽⁵⁾. All donors have their blood pressure⁽⁶⁾ and iron levels⁽⁷⁾ checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can save⁽⁸⁾ lives and it is easy to do!



- اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم (1)
- مصاب (2)
- زراعة خلايا الدم (النخاع) (3)
- طويل الأمد (4)
- فوائد (5)
- ضغط الدم (6)
- مستويات الحديد (7)
- ينقذ (8)

Listening Text



Interviewer: In today's programme we're talking to Martin

Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation⁽¹⁾ biologist and founder⁽²⁾ of Lion Guardians, a conservation project (3) in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions?



Martin

: Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions roaring (4) at night when he was sleeping on the roof of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up (5), she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer: What happened next?

Martin

: She went to America to study conservation biology (6) and then moved to Kenya to research lions amongst the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing⁽⁷⁾. Did you know that sixty or fifty years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

Interviewer: So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

Martin

: There are several reasons. People have built houses in the areas that lions traditionally (8) hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack(9) the villagers' livestock(10), you know, their cows and goats. The villagers get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another

reason is prestige(11) – in Maasai culture, young men get a lot of respect⁽¹²⁾ from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer: What did Leelah do?

Martin

: She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their views (13) about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with lions; they admire their beauty but hate them for eating their cattle. She also understood the prestige that came from being a lion killer (14) and realised that she needed to persuade(15) the young men that

- محافظة على البيئة (1)
- مؤسس (2)
- مشروع (3)
- يزأر (صوت الأسد) (4)
- ىكىر (5)
- علم حماية الأحياء (6)
- يختفي (7)
- تقليديًا (8)
- يهجم (9)
- ماشية (10)
- هيبة (11)
- احترام (12)
- الآراء (13)
- قاتل (14)
- يقنع (15)

keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the advantages (16) of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer: Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

Martin

: Yes. Lion Guardians is an organisation that employs local people(17) to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to track(18) lions in the wild, so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than lion killers. The

مزایا (16) السكان المحليين (17) يتتبع (18) دخل منتظم (19) الشعور بالمدف/المسئولية (20) شغف/حب (21) مجتمع (22) معرفة (23)

organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

Interviewer: How successful is the programme?

Martin

: Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular income (19) and a sense of purpose⁽²⁰⁾. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with fondness(21).

Interviewer: And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians?

: The importance of listening to people in the community (22) and to recognise how much knowledge⁽²³⁾ local people have. By working together both the locals and conservations can benefit.

Interviewer: Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ...

Unit 2

Lessons 3 & 4

Reading Text

Working together

Lions are disappearing all over
Africa but there is some hope⁽¹⁾
now after the amazing work of an organisation called Lion Guardians, which is based⁽²⁾ in Kenya, but
Guardians help in nearby⁽³⁾ Tanzania.



The aim of Lion Guardians is to help local people to protect their own livestock⁽⁴⁾ and reduce the number of lion killings in the area.

Cattle⁽⁵⁾ are important to the villagers but they often go missing or are attacked by lions. Then the lions are killed as villagers worry about losing more livestock.

أمل (1)
مل (1)

تقع (2)

مجاور (3)

ماشية (4)

ماشية (5)

يراقب (6)

حفلات الصيد (7)

علماء الأحياء (8)

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organisation works with the community to help both the lions and the livestock and this is done by employing local people. Maasai men are chosen to become guardians as they understand lions and have the skills needed to monitor⁽⁶⁾ their movements, find missing livestock and stop hunting parties⁽⁷⁾ who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be field biologists⁽⁸⁾ and are given a sense of responsibility.

Lions are monitored every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make sure their cows are safe.

Lion Guardians are very successful. They help the future of lions as well as the local communities.

Workbook Text

Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are experts at tracking⁽¹⁾ animals and lions are the most well-known animals that they follow. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their senses(2) to follow them

When a paw print (3) is discovered, it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a recent one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs⁽⁵⁾ to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties(6) and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to the Lion Guardians,

تتبع (1) حواس (2) اثر (بصمة) مخلب (3) حدیث (4) إشارات (5) جماعات الصيد (6)

Video Script (Unit 2)

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities (1), children and teenagers (2) volunteer (3) to support older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other tasks (4) around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next generation (5).

But what about the young people? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their

community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.





everyone is happy!











محتمعات (1)

مراهقون (2)

(3) يتطوع

مهام (4)

جيل (5)

Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

Reading Text

David Copperfield

'This is Mr Quinion, David,' Mr Murdstone said. 'You're going to work for him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants(1), in London, You'll earn(2) enough money to pay for your food, and I've arranged(3) a place for you to live.'

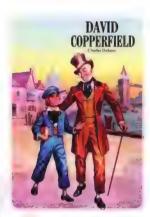
I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work. I went to a dirty old house near the river where rats(4) lived under the floors. There my job was to wash empty bottles with three other boys, and I hated (5) it.

One morning, a plump man⁽⁶⁾ came to see me with Mr Quinion.

'Ah, Master Copperfield!' the man said 'This is Mr Micawber,' Mr Quinion told me. 'You will be living at his house.'

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin, tired-looking lady – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins⁽⁷⁾, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor and that Mr Micawber owed⁽⁸⁾ money to several⁽⁹⁾ people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison because of his debts⁽¹⁰⁾. I went to see him there the next Sunday.



تجار (۱)
يكسب (2)
رتب (3)
هٔئران (4)
كرهت (5)
رجل ممتلئ الجسم (6)
توءمان (7)
توءمان (7)
توءمان (7)
مدین (8)
مدین (8)
مدین (8) مدین (9) کثیر من (9)
مدین (8) مدین (9) کثیر من (9)
مدین (8) کثیر من (9) دیون (10)
مدین (8) کثیر من (9) دیون (10)

(1) ds3

'If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends(11) nineteen pounds, he'll be happy,' he said. 'But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny, he'll be miserable(12).'

Listening Text



Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant⁽¹⁾ books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller⁽²⁾. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain⁽³⁾ people with his books, he also wanted to



change their opinions⁽⁴⁾ about the world they lived in. He hoped⁽⁵⁾ his readers would then do something to make the world a better place.

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood (6). When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison (7). Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed (8) support for most poor people so their lives were hard. When he wrote David (11) استحق (11) مالة (12) المالة (13) المالة (13) المالة (14) المالة (15) المالة (15) المالة (16) المالة (17) المالة (18) المالة (19) المال

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In *David Copperfield*, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest⁽¹⁰⁾ and good and deserved⁽¹¹⁾ to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and he had an unhappy end.

For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

رائع (1)
روائی (2)
يسلى (3)
آراء (4)
تمنی (5)
مرحلة الطفولة (6)
سجن (7)
أزال (8)
كُوفئوا (9)
صادق (10)

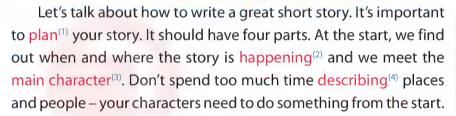
Workbook Text

The book character⁽¹⁾ David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual⁽²⁾ for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay⁽³⁾ their debts⁽⁴⁾. Factories liked to have children working for⁽⁵⁾ them because they did not need to pay them as much as they paid adults⁽⁶⁾. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were small so they could go under machines when they broke. The children were often miserable⁽⁷⁾. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity⁽⁸⁾ to improve their lives. However, some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky⁽⁹⁾ ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.

شخصية (1)
غير مألوف (2)
يدفع (3)
(4)
ديون (4)
يعمل لدى (5)
البالغون (6)
تعساء (7)
فرصة (8)
سعداء الحظ، (9)

Lessons 3 & 4

Listening Text



In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story



- يخطط (1)
- يحدث (2)
- الشخصية الرئيسة (3)
- يصف (4)
- مفاحأة (5)

solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise⁽⁵⁾ for the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

Workbook Text (1)

David Copperfield grew up with his mother and his stepfather⁽¹⁾, Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother died and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave⁽²⁾ school and work in a factory⁽³⁾. Then Mr Micawber went to prison⁽⁴⁾ and David had nowhere to live. Without a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter, Agnes, but David didn't trust⁽⁵⁾ him. Some time later, Uriah Heep played a trick⁽⁶⁾ on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her. When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted⁽⁷⁾ that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made⁽⁸⁾ him give it back to her. Then David went travelling around Europe.

- زوج الأم (1)
- يترك (2)
- مصنع (3)
- سجن (4)
- يثق (5)
- خدع (6)
- اعترف (7)
- أجبر (8)

When David returned to England, he married Agnes and he became a successful writer.

Workbook Text (2)

Tarek: In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank (1) (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough money for food, and it teaches (2) all of us to think more.

Samira: I have experienced(3) the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer Youth Association (4). In my opinion, it shows young people that they can make a difference (5), and it teaches them about other cultures (6) and communities. They are doing a great job by helping to educate⁽⁷⁾ a lot of young people.

الهلال الأحمر المصرى (8) Maher: The Egyptian Red Crescent⁽⁸⁾ helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see العمل التطوعي (9) the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work (9) for them.

Video Script (Unit 3)

People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt (1) so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them. They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose (2) them, so, they painted (3) pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember (4) it because they'll feel an emotional connection (5) to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch (6) a thousand lives.





يصطاد (1)

ينك الطعام المصري (1)

منظمة الشياب الحالمين بالغد (4)

يعلم (2)

يجرب (3)

ىحدث فرقًا (5)

ثقافات (6)

يعلم (7)

يفقد/يخسر (2)

رسم (3)

يتذكر (4)

رابط عاطفی (5)

تؤثر على (6)





Revision (1)

Reading Text (1)

Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces. She was world champion of the squash World Open in 2017, when she beat another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice reached the final in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team when she was only ten. She became World Junior Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition as an adult in 2009. She is now married to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles, but it is her success at squash that has inspired many young Egyptians to play the game.

Reading Text (2)

Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer. He is a strong player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team more than 60 times. He has scored more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved from his boyhood club Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010. He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland and joined Basel, one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.

He is still good friends with Salah. 'I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning and he has not changed,' he says.

Reading Text (3)

Why write a long book when you can write a short story? A short story can have 200 words or less. The writer can't describe many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle and an end to the story. And the story needs to be interesting, so we include important information and an interesting main character, but perhaps only one. In fact, it can be interesting to write in the first person (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the main character.

Readers can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise, a problem or something that goes wrong. Readers don't always find out what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine the end of the story.

Listening Text



Presenter: Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam

: Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday.

Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists know that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are having. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them.

Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara

My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea.

These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs!

The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned

a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir

I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!

Unit 4

Lessons 1 & 2

Reading Text (1)

New in town

It's day one at a new school in a new town(1). You've got all the paper and pens you need. You're wearing cool new clothes. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels so hard(2) because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed(3), but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.



Don't take it for granted(4) that other students will start a conversation⁽⁵⁾.

Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try asking them about their favourite subjects or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal (6) questions.

You can only make friends if you spend⁽⁷⁾ time with them! The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports⁽⁸⁾ you like. Go online or look at the noticeboard at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates (9) will feel connected to you and that connection could become a friendship.

- مدىنة (1)
- صعب (2)
- مضغوط (3)
- يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه (4)
- محادثة (5)
- شخصی (6)
- يمارس رياضة جماعية (8)
- أعضاء الفريق (9)

While you're busy talking to other students, don't forget to study. Remember to do your homework so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

Reading Text (2)

To : problems@teen-magazine.com

Subject: Help! I don't have any friends at my new

school!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I think it is difficult⁽¹⁾ to make friends.

I don't have any friends at my new school. I am always on my own⁽²⁾ at break-time⁽³⁾. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?



صعب (1)

- وحدى/بمفردي (2)
- فترة استراحة (3)

To : problems@teen-magazine.com

Subject: Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard⁽¹⁾ at school, but I'm really stressed about some exams I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very difficult. The last⁽²⁾ exam is in a subject I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library⁽³⁾ this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better⁽⁴⁾.

I need some advice about how to relax⁽⁵⁾, please.



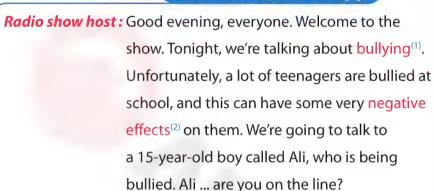
- باجتهاد (1)
- الأخير (2)
- مكتبة (3)
- يشعر بتحسن (4)
- يسترخي (5)

Unit 4

Ali

Lessons 3 & 4

Listening Text (1)



: Hi, Seleem. How are you? Ali

Radio show host: I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

: I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two Ali

boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid⁽³⁾ my rucksack⁽⁴⁾. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host: Oh, no! That's terrible⁽⁵⁾. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared (6). I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host: Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies (7) and make it clear that they shouldn't behave like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue⁽⁸⁾.

> : Yes ... you're right ... There's one teacher that I get along well with (9). I'll talk to him.



تنمر/بلطجة (1)	
أثار سلبية (2)	
أخفى (3)	
حقيبة ظهر (4)	
رهب (5)	

(5)	Ļ	می	Ŋ				
					-	-	
(6)	6	نزو	مذ				

- المتنمرون (7)

Listening Text (2)

• So, do you think moving⁽¹⁾ to a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers⁽²⁾?

Lina : As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends.

Ola: I'm not so sure about that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations⁽³⁾ with them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

(1) الانتقال (2) مراهقون (2) محادثات (3) محادثات (4) وحيدًا (4) يفضل (5)

Lina: That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time. You'll be really lonely⁽⁴⁾ for the first few months.

In my opinion, it's a good experience to have because it makes you stronger.
 Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer⁽⁵⁾ to just stay

with the people I know.

Workbook Text

Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however, he borrowed⁽¹⁾ my phone without asking. Then he dropped⁽²⁾ the phone.

Fortunately⁽³⁾, the phone did not break but I was very angry with him. Now he's not talking to me.

Maged

Fawzi always gets good marks at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh⁽⁴⁾. Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom. Now he doesn't want to make us laugh any more.

(1) أوقع (2) أوقع (2) لحسن الحظ (3) لحسن الحظ (4) لعضدك (4) لعشير إلى (5)

Omar

There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media. Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today she was pointing⁽⁵⁾ at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

Hoda

Unit 5

Lessons 1 & 2

Workbook Text

Internet use in Egypt

Every year, more and more people are connected⁽¹⁾ to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey⁽²⁾ found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication⁽³⁾ so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand⁽⁴⁾ the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried⁽⁵⁾ about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked⁽⁶⁾.

Reading Text

The Internet of Things

Linking⁽¹⁾ the world

Communication is no longer⁽²⁾ about people talking to one another, but about machines talking to machines.

This is known as the Internet of Things



ربط/اتصال (1)

متصل (1)

تواصل (3)

يفهم (4)

قلق (5)

يتعرض للقرصنة (6)

دراسة حديثة (2)

- لم يعد (2)
- خبراء (3)

(IOT). Technology is developing so fast that experts⁽³⁾ believe everyone will be connected to the IOT in a few years.

Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already, people can control their heating⁽⁴⁾ and lighting⁽⁵⁾ from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish bins need to be emptied⁽⁶⁾ and control how much water we use!

No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones, but imagine⁽⁷⁾ if you can get a driverless⁽⁸⁾ car to come and collect you using an app on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric⁽⁹⁾ and much cleaner than petrol ones. Experts think our roads will be safer as there will be fewer accidents using driverless cars.

تدفئة/تسخين (4)
إضاءة (5)
تفرغ (6)
تخيل (7)
بلا سائق (8)
کھربی (9)
مجرمون (10)
يخترق/يقرصن (11)
يسبب (12)

Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet. Computers collect information about people and businesses which criminals⁽¹⁰⁾ can steal. They use this information to hack into⁽¹¹⁾ organisations like hospitals, power stations and airports, and cause⁽¹²⁾ major security problems.

Unit 5

Lessons 3 & 4

Reading Text

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert⁽¹⁾ for a free game. I clicked⁽²⁾ on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details⁽³⁾. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam⁽⁴⁾!

My dad was furious⁽⁵⁾ because they stole money from his bank account⁽⁶⁾ and my computer stopped working properly⁽⁷⁾! Don't click on links you don't recognise⁽⁸⁾ and never give your personal details on a strange website. Oh, and remember to use antivirus software to stop thieves!

/1	175	Nel
A 1	<i>1</i> U	-

- ينقر (2)
- تفاصيل (3)
- احتيال (4)
- غاضب (5)
- حساب بنکی (6)
- بشكل مناسب (7)
- يتعرف على (8)



Listening Text



Hassan: Last week, I was reading about a new online game and saw an advert⁽¹⁾ that said I could get this game for free⁽²⁾. All I had to do was complete a form⁽³⁾ with my name, email address and credit card⁽⁴⁾ details. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course it was a scam⁽⁵⁾. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

إعلان (1)

مجاناً (2)

استمارة (3)

كارت ائتمان (4)

حيلة/خدعة (5)

2

Laila

: I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers (6) often look online to see what we've posted(7), so I decided to google(8) my name to see what they might find. It was scary⁽⁹⁾. All the photos and the 'funny' comments I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete them. I didn't realise it's almost impossible to remove(10) personal data from the internet.

أريات العمل (6)

نشر (7)

يبحث في جوجل (8)

مخيف (9)

يزيل (10)

فظیع (11)

مراهقون (12)

تعليقات وقحة (13)

3

Saeed: I love reading my friend's social media posts, but some people write really horrible(11) things about other teenagers(12). One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments(13) about how he looked and how ugly his bike is. I couldn't

believe it! These kids would never, never bully my friend at school, so why do it online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now!

Video Script (Unit 5)

Sometimes teenagers experience (1) bullying because they look different, have different abilities (2) or different opinions and experiences. If you think someone is being bullied, what should you do? Parents and teachers are there to give advice when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer (3) to help the person tell their parents. You can keep a note (4) of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully about everything they have done. Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure that they know you support them and do not like

- يتعرض لـ (1)
- يعرض (3)
- يدون ملاحظات (4)
- سلوك/تصرف (5)
- يختلط اجتماعينًا (6)

the bully's behaviour (5). Spend time talking and socialising (6) with them to help them build new friendships. Invite them to join your friends. Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.















Unit 6

Lessons 1 & 2

Reading Text

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died⁽¹⁾ 44 years later in Samoa, a small island⁽²⁾ in the South Pacific. He was not always well⁽³⁾ because the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer⁽⁴⁾ at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time⁽⁵⁾ writer.



مات (1)
جزيرة (2)
بصحة جيدة (3)
محامِ (4)
دوام کامل (5)
أدمًا (6)
فترة من الوقت (7)
قراصنة (8)

He often travelled to warmer⁽⁶⁾ places to try to improve his health. For a while⁽⁷⁾ he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although he is best known for his novels, like *Kidnapped* and *Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, Stevenson also wrote many poems and travel books. His first successful novel was *Treasure Island* – an adventure story about pirates⁽⁸⁾. His books are still very popular today and many of them have been made into films.

Reading Text

The Gardener



The gardener⁽¹⁾ does not love to talk, He makes me keep the gravel⁽²⁾ walk; And when he puts his tools⁽³⁾ away, He locks⁽⁴⁾ the door and takes the key.

Away behind the currant row⁽⁵⁾,
Where no one else but cook may go,
Far in the plots⁽⁶⁾, I see him dig⁽⁷⁾,
Old and serious⁽⁸⁾, brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue,
Nor wishes to be spoken to.
He digs the flowers and cuts the hay⁽⁹⁾,
And never seems to want to play.

(1) الجنايني/البستاني (2) الحصي (2) (3) أدوات (4) في المنابع (4) (5) صف من العنب (الزبيب) (6) قطع أرض زراعية (6) المنابع (7) المنابع (8) (8)

القش (9)

Listening Text



Teacher: This week we're studying the Scottish writer(1). Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular⁽²⁾ his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard(3) about him or read any of his works?



Nesma

: Didn't he write Treasure Island? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring (4), so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher

Did you like it?

Nesma

: Yes, it was really good. I love adventure (5) films and I enjoy reading adventure stories too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.

Teacher: Well it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island was published in 1881. And Waafa, have you read any of his books?

Wafaa

: I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic⁽⁷⁾ stories and poems.

Teacher

: Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was

a child and unwell⁽⁸⁾. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection of poems called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to get away (10) from the cold Scottish weather.

- كاتب (1)
- بشكل خاص (2)
- سمع (3)
- ممل (4)
- مغامرة (5)
- نشر (6)
- رومانسی (7)
- مریض (8)
- مجموعة (9)
- يبتعد (10)

Nesma

:Where did he go?

Teacher

As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland mainly. In fact, his first book was about his travels⁽¹¹⁾ in France. He and his family loved sailing⁽¹²⁾ and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.

رحلات (11)
إبحار (12)
ي عضر (13)

يناقش (14)

Now for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or poem by Stevenson and bring (13) it to class to discuss (14). Then...

Unit 6

Lessons 3 & 4

Reading Text (1)

Bed in Summer

In winter I get up at night
And dress⁽¹⁾ by yellow candlelight⁽²⁾.
In summer quite the other way,
I have to go to bed by day⁽³⁾.
I have to go to bed and see
The birds still hopping⁽⁴⁾ on the tree,
Or hear the grown-up⁽⁵⁾ people's feet
Still going past me in the street.
And does it not seem hard to you,
When all the sky is clear⁽⁶⁾ and blue,
And I should like so much to play,
To have to go to bed by day?



Reading Text (2)

Khaled, 4:04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly describe⁽¹⁾ the situations⁽²⁾ he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject⁽³⁾ is very interesting because everyone feels differently in different seasons⁽⁴⁾. In my opinion, poets should write about everyday life. However, I think the second verse⁽⁵⁾ is too long and its rhythm⁽⁶⁾ is too slow.

Hamid, 5:36 PM

I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day. I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes⁽⁷⁾ in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite⁽⁸⁾ boring because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities⁽⁹⁾. I think poets should write about more exciting things.

(1) يصف (2) مواقف (3) موضوع (4) مصول السنة (5) بيت شعر (5) بيت شعر (6) الفرزن الشعرى (7) القوافى (7) القوافى (8) الى حد ما

صاف (6)

Reading Text (3)

My favourite poem is *Bed in Summer* because it describes how I felt⁽¹⁾ when I was young. In summer I had to go to bed when it was light⁽²⁾ and I hated⁽³⁾ it. Like the author⁽⁴⁾ I wanted to be outside playing and I didn't think it was fair⁽⁵⁾ that everyone else was outside having fun.

It's a good length⁽⁶⁾ for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme⁽⁷⁾. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember⁽⁸⁾! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.



شعرت (1)
منضیء (2)
كَرِهت (3)
مؤلف (4)
عادل (5)
طول (6)
يتطابق في القافية (7)
يتذكر (8)

Revision (2)

Reading Text (1)

Communication is easy today. Many people use apps on their smartphones to talk to their friends. When we send a message to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular.

An example is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided to write to each other in the 1930s, and are now perhaps the longest two people ever to be penfriends. Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued to write to her. Like Nellie, Daphe lived on a farm and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

Nellie still prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology to communicate.

Surprisingly, there are now many online clubs for penfriends. They encourage people to write letters to penfriends around the world, and they are very successful. Many say that writing letters is relaxing and a warmer way to communicate than with an email or text. You do not need apps, passwords or antivirus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do'.

Reading Text (2)

Most Helpful Customer Reviews

A fantastic adventure story!

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's *Kidnapped* is not as great as *Treasure Island* or as exciting as *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, but it is full of action and really fun. I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel man and he tricks David. He arranges for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to escape with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures. I recommend this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

Not the best book for me

As far as I'm concerned, this book is too old-fashioned. The story is interesting and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters are very real. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer to read more modern books. *Kidnapped* is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

My favourite book!

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with a man called Alan Breck. Together they travel through Scotland and face many dangerous and exciting situations. I love all the details about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

Listening Text



Interviewer: Hello, today I'm talking to Professor Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about

the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

: That's true, although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer: What are you worried about?

Professor: Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages, because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to

have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer: Why is that?

Professor : Today we use computer technology for almost all our information.

> We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic, of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today guickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose a lot

of material because new technology won't be able to read it.

Interviewer: But we'll copy all the important information onto our new technology,

won't we?

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we

don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save, or we will forget the passwords to give

us this information.

Interviewer: What can we do about this?

Professor : In my opinion, we need to print more, like we did in the past. Look in

a museum and you will see wonderful old paintings, photographs, maps and so on. With care, these will be with us for a long, long time.

Interviewer: So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

: I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, Professor

but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow? We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping

it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer: It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.



Treasure Island

Chapter 1

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins:

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned an inn called the Admiral⁽¹⁾ Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn⁽²⁾. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar on his face. He looked around him.



"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay

here. Please, take this up to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs⁽³⁾. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain' stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare⁽⁴⁾ to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale⁽⁵⁾, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar⁽⁶⁾ on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"



(5) شاحب الوجه(6) علامة /ندبة

(3) منحدرات

(1) رتبة في البحرية

(6)

(4) يجرؤ

(2) حانة

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk."

"Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill.

"Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," **he replied.** "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures (1) since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts⁽²⁾ and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick.

"Help us, Dr Livesy! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs."

We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine.

The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted.

"Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible and forgot all about the strange things that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a blind⁽³⁾ man coming down the road towards the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind person help me?"

"You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed (4) my hand.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"



(3) كفيف (4)

(2) صياح/أصوات عالية

(1) مغامرات

I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned round and left.

The Captain looked at what the man gave him.

"Ten o'clock!" **he said.** "I have time!"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead.

I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but I did not want to leave my mother. We



knew that we were in a danger⁽¹⁾. We decided to go to the nearest village and ask our neighbours for help guarding the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesy. Another man said that we could have his gun.

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the captain's jacket. I also saw the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight."

We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins⁽²⁾ inside.

"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too weak(3) to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge⁽⁴⁾, where we could hide⁽⁵⁾ in the dark.



Chapter 2

Chapter Text

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"



"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the

Captain's bedroom and a man called out, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!"

The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better, and the others tried to catch⁽⁶⁾ the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped⁽⁷⁾ on a boat.

I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head⁽⁸⁾ of the police.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesy."





"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate(1) as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue as to where Flint buried his treasure!" said Dr Livesy.

"That is why those men were not interested⁽²⁾ in money," agreed Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure⁽³⁾ ourselves!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."

The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed⁽⁴⁾ of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map⁽⁵⁾ of an island, with a big cross⁽⁶⁾ on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

"Dr Livesy, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days,

we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for

the journey in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the *Hispaniola* for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew⁽⁷⁾ ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook⁽⁸⁾. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by the thought of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail⁽⁹⁾.



Story

Chapter 3

Chapter Text

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"



At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers⁽¹⁾. The helper ran after the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied.

"Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour⁽²⁾ past boats of different sizes, all preparing to go to sea.

Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.



(1) مساعدین

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

It took some time to reach the *Hispaniola*. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said. "Why not?" asked Dr Livesy.

"I was told that the destination(1) of the journey was a secret(2)," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns⁽³⁾ with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny (4)?" asked Dr Livesy.

"It's my job to keep you safe, that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship. "I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesy. "That's Long John Silver

and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is."

I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch⁽⁵⁾. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot⁽⁶⁾. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh.

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept

in a big barrel which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.

"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said. "It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."





(5) عكاز (6) ببغاء (3) أسلحة (4) تمرد (1) جهة الوصول

(2) سر

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"

"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."





Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.

"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead."

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate⁽¹⁾, and the other crew were part of his gang⁽²⁾.

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened⁽³⁾. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out:

"I can see land!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



(1) قرصان (2) عصابة

Chapter 4

Chapter Text

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of the ship. We could see two low hills⁽¹⁾ and one big one. The island was now very close.



"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked on it.

"Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust anything that he said.

I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news."

Dr Livesy's expression did not change. He asked me to find his glasses⁽²⁾ downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me.

"What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



(1) تلال (2)

I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me.

"Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and



been a better crew than I expected⁽¹⁾. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted⁽²⁾ the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the *Hispaniola* stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore⁽³⁾. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan⁽⁴⁾.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust⁽⁵⁾ about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax, if they wanted to.



(1) توقعت (3) يثق

(2) عددت (2)

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise the men. Six men would stay on the



Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake⁽¹⁾?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto⁽²⁾ the branch of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.



(1) خطأ (2)

49

Silver smiled and said, "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit⁽¹⁾ him hard on the back. He fell⁽²⁾ to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

Silver now blew a whistle⁽³⁾ and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever.



(1) ضرب (2) سقط (2)

Chapter 5

Chapter Text

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous. I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but



he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer. I decided to walk towards the man.

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down in front of me.

"Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice, "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails⁽⁵⁾.

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said.

"It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"





(2) أشرعة (1) محترق I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him.

"Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.

"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a spade(1). You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.

"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"

Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions⁽²⁾, and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.







(1) جاروف

Chapter 6

Chapter Text

Dr Livesy:

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind⁽³⁾ at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried⁽⁴⁾ about him.



I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort⁽⁵⁾. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended⁽⁶⁾. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the *Hispaniola*. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the *Hispaniola*.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage⁽⁷⁾. On the *Hispaniola*, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies⁽⁸⁾ now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent⁽⁹⁾ the boat from sinking. The wind blew from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.



(7) يمنع

(5) أفضلية/ميزة(6) موارد/مؤن

(3) حصن (4) محصن جيدًا (1) رياح (2) قلق "We must keep in this direction," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient⁽¹⁾, and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon!⁽²⁾" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.



Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollet. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us."

"It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race⁽³⁾ to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.

There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they guickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.



Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire, and poor⁽⁴⁾ Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant to him.

Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"



(3) سباق (4) مسكين (1) صبور

(2) مدفع

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.

"They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!



Part I



Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

Model (A)	Model (B)	
مستدام	يميل	
مشتملا على	متطوع	
السياحة البيئية	علم الأحياء	
نظام بیئی	مهدد بالانقراض	
محدد – مقید	كارثة	
لحسن الحظ،	جهة الوصول	
يترجل	الحياة البرية	
يبقى آمنا	تأثير على	
يغطس	يختفي من	
يجهز العشاء	مشمور بــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	
conservationist	dragon	
tourist attractions	unique	
spicy	swell up	
route	orangutan	
materials	remote	
coral reefs	fussy eater	
rain forests	trek	
isolated	insects	
find out about	make notes	
make sure	at least	



Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

لاستملاك الكمرباء.

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1) As he has an infe	ction, he isin a	special department in hosp	oital.
a) isolated	b) limited	c) existed	d) damaged
2 Luxor is consider	ed a main for	r most tourists.	
a) location	b) destination	c) cooperation	d) foundation
3 Some rare anima	Is arenowaday	ys and we should ban hunti	ng them.
a) in dangerous	b) dangerous	c) traditional	d) endangered
4 How do you like	your chicken, cool or	?	
a) cold	b) spicy	c) healthy	d) delicious
5 The ancient Egyp	tians the Pyra	mids and many other great	buildings.
a) were built	b) built	c) has built	d) were building
6 Two weeks ago, o	our school the	beginning of the new year.	
a) celebrated	b) celebrates	c) has celebrated	d) was celebrated
7 Mai usually	TV a lot when she w	was on holiday.	
a) watches	b) is watching	c) has watched	d) watched
8 they we	ere travelling to Alex, the	ey faced many problems on	the way.
a) After	b) Before	c) As soon as	d) While
A) Choose the corre	ect English translation:		
	محطات بالركاب،	قف حركة مرور مترو الأنفاق وتزدحم الد	دما ينقطع التيار الكهربي، تتو
·	-	ound stops and stations are ci	
•	-	und stands and stations are c	
·	_	ound stops and stations are c	·
•	_	ground stops and stations are	e empty with passenge
•	ect Arabic translation:	o much water ecocially in	the rain coacon to ma
•	ought season and also to	e much water especially in t	the fain season to ma
	•	o gerierate electricity. بد لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة في مو	والمستناه المستناه المسال
ن انسناء وايضا تنونيد	وسم الأمطار للسلفيد منها عي عصا	بد تنخرین انجلیز من انفاء خاصه می مو	الكهرباء.
بوستم الجفاف وأيضتًا	وســم الأمطار لتســتفيد منها في ه	ود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة في مو	تبنى العديد من الدول الســد
			لتوليد الكهرباء،
ل الجفاف وأيضـًا لجعل	وسم الأمطار لتستفيد منها في فص	بد لتخزين القليل من الماء خاصة في مو	تبنى العديد من الدول السدو
			الكهرباء.
، فصل الحفاف وأبضيًا	موسم الأمطار لتستفيد منها في	ــدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة في	تبنب العديد من الدول الس



Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

Model (A)		Model (B)	
	هادئ		يزرع – ينمو
	قلعة		مزدحم
	أعمال الحديقة		قديم – أثرى
	واثع		جئة
	يستكشف		مزعج
	مدهش		تحت الماء
	مراهق		مضغوط
	يستغل		يتنزه
	معظم الوقت		مهتم ب
	يأخذ إجازة		مشغول بــ
boring		adventure	
resort		support	
temple		attractive	
distance		in fact	
tiny		unusual	
strange		cry	
stuck		amount	
take photos		dive	
quantity		discover	
terrible		terrific	



Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

Thoose the correct a	answer from a, b, c or d:		
1) Too much stress is	n't good for you. You sho	uld have time to	
a) press	b) relax	c) depress	d) confess
2 Hurghada is consi	dered one of the most fa	scinatingin the	world.
a) resorts	b) stores	c) reports	d) regards
3 The beach was rea	allyso we could	n't find a place to sit.	
a) beautiful	b) exotic	c) crowded	d) isolated
4 It's disturbing to h	naveneighbours	with loud voices all the t	ime.
a) kind	b) tame	c) peaceful	d) noisy
S All day yesterday,	my mother the	flat and so she was so tire	d.
a) had cleaned	b) was cleaning	c) is cleaning	d) has cleaned
6 While I m	ny favourite film, there wa	as a power cut.	
a) watched	b) was watching	c) being watched	d) watching
7hearing	the explosion, I immedia	tely phoned the police.	
a) Before	b) While	c) On	d) As soon as
8 I couldn't answer t	the phone because I	a shower.	
a) was taking	b) took	c) have taken	d) take
A) Choose the corre	ct English translation:		
	ريقة لتبادل الخبرات.	ى الأهداف وإنجاز الأعمال، كما أنه ط	عمل الجماعي هو وسيلة لتحقيز
a) Teamwork is a meexperience.	neans to achieve goals and	d accomplish work as it is a	way to exchange
b) Individual work experience.	is a means to achieve goa	ls and accomplish work as	it is a way to exchange
c) Teamwork is a mexperience.	neans to achieve goals and	l accomplish work as it is a	way to change
d) Collection work	is a means to achieve goa	ls and accomplish work as	it is a way to exchange

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

experiences.

It's necessary to give interest to scientific research and space exploration as two means to cope with the progress that is happening in the world.

- a) ينبغي الاهتمام بالبحث العلمي واستكشاف الفضاء كسبيلين للحاق بركب التقدم الحاصل في العالم.
 - ل ينبغى الاهتمام بالبحث العلمي واستكشاف الفضاء كسبيل للحاق بالتقدم الحاصل في العالم.
- c ينبغي الاهتمام بالبحث العلمي واستكشاف الفضاء كمعنى للحاق بعملية التقدم الحادث في العالم.
 - d) ينبغي الاهتمام بالبحث العلمي وكشف الفضاء كمعنى للحاق بركب التقدم الحاصل في العالم.



Advanced Exercises

Choose the correct ansi	wer from a, b, c or a:		
1 It is known that the	of the country usua	ally lies in the hands of	the people.
a) destination	b) location	c) destitute	d) destiny
2 If you want to finish yo	our work on time, you have	e to now.	
a) busy yourself	b) get busybody	c) make busy	d) feel busy
3 Medhat is a fashion	He always wears t	he most fashionable cl	othes even if he does no
look good in them.			
a) victim	b) conservationist	c) lemur	d) giant
4 At the accident, the fo	rce of the made i	my car turn over three t	imes.
a) isolation	b) danger	c) impact	d) conservation
(5) Heba thinks she's over	r the but she's or	nly 40. She says she is n	o longer young, or good
at doing things.			
a) moon	b) hill	c) environment	d) island
6 each proble	m does not seem bad, but	together they are the o	opposite.
a) In isolated	b) For isolation	c) In insulation	d) For isolated
7 This kind of food is	to this area of the w	orld only.	
a) volunteer	b) unique	c) private	d) unite
8 It is to me to	go to the meetings on tim	ne to get promoted.	
a) material	b) immature	c) immaterial	d) exotic
9 seeing the s	nake, she screamed and ra	n away.	
a) During	b) While	c) On	d) Before
10 They were going onto	the highwaya fla	at tire.	
a) while on getting	b) just as getting	c) when they got	d) because they got
11 It takes drivers a long	time toon the lef	ft side of the road wher	they visit England.
a) use to drive	b) get used to driving	c) be used to drive	d) get used to drive
12 She was studying her	lessons at 10 o'clock yester	day. This means that	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
 a) she started studying 	g at 10 o'clock	b) she finished studying at 10 o'clock	
c) she was busy with h	er lessons at 10 o'clock	d) she used to take	her lessons at 10 o'clock
(3) I wish my les	ssons hard next year.		
a) studied	b) to study	c) would study	d) had studied
14 I'd rather my wife	meat and rice.		
a) cook	b) cooks	c) cooking	d) cooked
15 She late for I	meetings. No wonder she h	nas never been promote	ed.
a) came always	b) was always coming	c) always comes	d) never came
16 When you called me, I	in a meeting, so	l couldn't answer your	call.
a) was	b) was being	c) have been	d) had bee



Al Adwaa Unit Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

1) "This bird is exotic. It	is unusual and r	arely seen here."	The antonyms of the	e word "exotic" are
and		,	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
a) familiar	b) strange	c) rare	d) foreign	e) conventional
② I always my ye	arly holiday in A	August.		
a) have	b) make	c) do	d) take	e) play
Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b,	c or d:		
3 Everyone should kno	w that cutting o	lown trees	the environment	•
a) causes damage	b) does dar	maging to	c) makes damages	d) damages
4 When my brother go	t promoted as a	sales manager, h	ne was over the	•••••••••••••
a) sun	b) moon		c) earth	d) planet
5 My father is a	eater. He dislik	es many types o	f food.	
a) hungry	b) fussy		c) spicy	d) fizzy
6 The thief stole everytl	ning in my house	e mobile:	s and laptops.	
a) including	b) conclud	ing	c) containing	d) consisting
I don't think that slav	العبودية ery	in many coun	tries of the world.	
a) designs	b) coasts		c) exists	d) sticks
8 Please Ali, would you	close the windo	w? The wind is b	lowing the sheets of	paper the table.
a) of	b) off		c) from	d) about
9 I never in the	e sea when I was	a child, but now	/ I am a good swimn	ner.
a) swim			b) have swum	
c) used to swim			d) was swimming	
10 I up late as n	ny work demand	ds it.		
a) used to stay			b) stayed	
c) am used to staying			d) was staying	
11 While I was writing a	letter, my father	me to h	nave dinner.	
a) was calling	b) has calle	ed	c) called	d) calls
12 When I met Maha, I	her to m	y birthday party.		
a) inviting	b) have inv		c) was inviting	d) invited
13 hearing his f	ather's voice, he			
a) While	b) On		c) Before	d) As soon as
14) Yesterday evening, m	y family	a very wonderf	ul film together.	
a) were watching	b) watch		c) has watched	d) are watching
15 The criminal was arre	sted while	the scene of	the crime.	
a) was leaving	b) left		c) leaving	d) is leaving
16 Although we were in			-	
a) starts	b) had state	ed	c) was starting	d) started

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People find it challenging to solve problems quickly. They want to get fast results, or make money, or make life easier. Often, they don't look into the future. They don't think about the long-term consequences of their actions. The story of DDT is a good example. It is a chemical which was developed to kill insects. It was invented in 1940, and very soon it was being used effectively by farmers all over the world.

The results, at first, were successful. The chemical killed the harmful insects which ate the food plants. More crops were produced, and both farmers and industry made a lot of money, however, the chemical had effects which scientists hadn't predicted. DDT not only killed the harmful insects but it also killed useful insects. A few insects were strong. They survived and multiplied. In a few years, there were large numbers of these super insects which DDT couldn't kill. Clearly, DDT was making the problem worse. It was worthless to be used anymore.

Another problem was that the chemical did not disappear. It stayed in the ground and found its way into rivers, lakes and oceans. So, animals began to suffer from different new diseases. Humans also began to have problems, especially, in areas where DDT was widely used. Many governments stopped the use of DDT twenty years ago, but its effects are still with them.

17	Which of the following is	probably true about DDT?		
	a) It kills only harmful inse	ects.		
	b) It kills only useful insec	ts.		
	c) It kills both harmful inse	ects and super insects.		
	d) It kills both harmful ins	ects and useful insects.		
18	What does the word "con	sequences" refer to, accord	ing to the passage?	
	a) Exciting things that cou	ıld happen.	b) Boring things that o	could happen.
	c) Useful things that could	d happen.	d) Bad things that cou	ld happen.
19	Where does DDT end up	eventually?		
	a) In the ground.		b) In humans and anir	nals.
	c) Into rivers, lakes and oc	eans.	d) Into the crops that t	farmers grow.
20	Much damage to the env	ironment happens as peop	ole	
	a) want to get fast results		b) don't think about th	ne future
	c) want to make life easier	r	d) want to make mone	ey
21)	DDT was very at	first and more crops were p	oroduced.	
	a) useful	b) harmful	c) hateful	d) poisonous
22	The insects that survived	and multiplied were called	***************************************	
	a) harmful insects	b) useful insects	c) renewable insects	d) super insects
23	Using DDT was very	at first as it killed the ha	armful insects that ate	food plants.
	a) positive	b) negative	c) useless	d) weak

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغي على كل مواطن صالح أن يؤدي دوره باتقان حتى يتحقق التقدم والاستقرار.
- a) Every good citizen should perform his role perfectly to achieve progress and instability.
- b) Every good member should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and stability.
- c) Every good citizen should perform his rule perfectly to achieve progress and stability.
- d) Every good citizen should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and stability.

25) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Setting up productive projects helps to provide job opportunities for unemployed youth who are looking for jobs, so they help them to start a good life.

- a تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية
 حياة جيدة.
- ل تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العامل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية
 حياة جيدة.
- تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية
 حياة جديدة.
- ضاعد إقامة المشروعات المستهلكة على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على
 بداية حياة جيدة.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Environmental problems"	



Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

Model (A)	Model (B)
الكرم	مجتمع
يقنع	يزار
جمعية خيرية	بدلا من ذلك
مثل أعلى	ذكاء
معمة	يحترم – احترام
فوائد	يتعرف
موطن	جيل
يتتع	يتعلم من
ضغط الدم	يكتشف
طویل المدی	مؤسسمؤسس
iron levels	transplant
health	around
injured	score
admire	cancer
income	compassion
movements	traditionally
views	move to
documentary	angry with
amongst	conservation



Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My wife was ill and	the iron were s	o low.	
a) standards	b) tests	c) levels	d) stairs
2 The synonym of the	word "decrease" is "	<i>H</i>	
a) increase	b) deduce	c) introduce	d) reduce
3 My father was a ver	y man. He was	ready to give money t	o anyone in need.
a) generous	b) greedy	c) traditional	d) careless
4 Every one of us sho	uld have a mod	del to imitate.	
a) roll	b) role	c) rule	d) ruler
5 Noha no longer go	es out a lot as she	in the past.	
a) is used to doing	b) was using to do	c) uses to do	d) used to do
6 People from	om their work when they	are 60.	
a) are retiring	b) retired	c) retire	d) have retired
7 Ali used to play in t	he street, but now he	in the club.	
a) played	b) was playing	c) has played	d) plays
8 I lived in Tanta for a	short time. Now, my wife	and Iin Cai	ro.
a) live	b) lives	c) are live	d) have lived

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- تهتم الدولة بالشباب لذا تحرص على تأهيلهم بشكل مناسب، فشباب اليوم هم قادة الغد.

- a) The country cares for young people, so it is keen to qualify them suitably. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.
- b) The state cares for young children, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are today's leaders.
- c) The government cares about children, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's ladders.
- d) The state cares for young people, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately. Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Terroristic attacks are always headlines because they attract people's attention and affect their lives badly.

- الهجمات الإرهابية دائمًا ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية؛ لأنها تجذب انتباه الناس وتؤثر في حياتهم بشكل سيئ.
- الهجمات الإرهابية دائمًا ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم لا يجذبوا انتباه الناس ويؤثروا في حياة الناس بشدة.
 - الهجمات الارهائية دائمًا لا تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم بجذبوا انتياه الناس ويؤثروا في حياة الناس يشدة.
- الهجمات الإرهابية دائمًا ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يجذبوا انتباه الناس ولا يؤثروا في حياة الناس بشدة.



Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

Model (A)		Model (B)
	سكان القرء	حديث
	المركز الرئب	وصی – حام
	ماشية	خبراء
	شخصية	يراقب
	مهارات	ممر – طريق
	قريب	منظمة
	قبيلة 	يقدر
	يتأكد	يقلق على
	يقوم ببحث	بفضل
دانية	مشاركة وج	حاسة
aim	missin	ng
local	paw p	print
responsibility	emplo	oy
locate	ecosys	stem
appearance	track	
hunting	togeth	her
safe	biolog	gist
killings	exper	t
worry about	thank	s to
signs	amaze	ed
attack	misun	nderstand



Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The police use sec	curity cameras to	public areas such as air	ports.
a) look	b) glance	c) organise	d) monitor
2 Yesterday, we calle	ed the police as my brot	her went	
a) lost	b) missing	c) losing	d) missed
3 The farmer keeps	hison the farn	n.	
a) cattle	b) killings	c) kettle	d) stock
4 Some factories bro	eak the rules and	children as young as se	even.
a) donate	b) employ	c) pretend	d) hunt
(5) As soon as she	home, she will cle	ean up.	
a) comes	b) came	c) had come	d) is coming
6 This shop sells god	od clothes, they	of high-quality wool.	
a) make	b) made	c) are made	d) are making
7 My bus to Cairo	at 6 tomorrow n	norning.	
a) is left	b) is leaving	c) has left	d) leaves
8 A lot of our proble	ems with the h	elp of our parents and tea	ichers.
a) solve	b) are solved	c) have solved	d) were solving

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغي على كل فرد في المجتمع أن يؤدي دوره بإتقان حتى تتحقق الرفاهية والازدهار.

- a) Every one in society should perform his role perfectly to achieve progress and instability.
- b) Every member in the community should perform her role perfectly to achieve welfare and stability.
- c) Every good citizen should perform their rule perfectly to achieve progress and flowering.
- d) Every one in society should perform their role perfectly to achieve welfare and flourishing.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

When you make friends, you must be aware that many friends are only for fun, but when you need some advice, you should only ask wise people.

- aندما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى الفرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة
 يجب أن تسأل فقط الخبراء.
- غندما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن القليل من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الحكماء.
- عندما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة
 يجب أن تسأل فقط الكبار.
- ضدما تكون صداقات يجب أن تكون على علم بأن الكثير من الأصدقاء ستجدهم فقط فى المرح؛ ولكنك عندما تحتاج لنصيحة يجب أن تسأل فقط الحكماء.



Advanced Exercises

	,,		
1) The younger genera	ation only to be ir	nterested in money.	
a) seem	b) seems	c) seeming	d) both a & b
2 When I knew that m	ny friend Ali died, I went to	pay my lastto	him.
a) respects	b) supports	c) benefits	d) desires
3 Huda bought a very	y expensiveblous	e last week.	
a) called	b) admired	c) supported	d) checked
4 For few seconds wh	en they are taking	, the soldiers are expos	ed to enemy fire.
a) respect	b) income	c) aim	d) knowledge
5 The Egyptian runne	r won the gold medal whe	n he reached the end of	the first.
a) track	b) desire	c) speed	d) prestige
6 I am very annoyed a	as the holiday seemed to	by.	
a) disappear	b) hunt	c) speed	d) fasten
7 I to see th	e thief stealing the money	from a young child.	
a) checked	b) reduced	c) succeeded	d) chanced
The prisoner tried to	o escape over the prison wa	all in fullof the	guards.
a) sight	b) view	c) task	d) reason
This painting is orig	inal. Itanywhere	else.	
a) was existed	b) isn't existed	c) don't exist	d) doesn't exist
10 I'd hate to live in Lo	ndon because ita	all the time.	
a) rains	b) is raining	c) raining	d) rain
11 People sa	y "thank you" anymore.		
a) isn't	b) doesn't	c) don't	d) aren't
12 These trees	their leaves in the autum	n as they are evergreen.	
a) don't lose	b) doesn't lose	c) isn't lost	d) aren't lost
13 These glasses are a	bit heavy; I will take time to	them.	
a) become used to	wear	b) be used to wea	r
c) get use to wear		d) get used to wea	aring
14 It is a fact that wate	r when we heat it	w we	
a) will boil	b) boiled	c) boils	d) is boiling
15 Some men	cooking and others know	nothing about the kitch	nen.
a) are loving	b) have loved	c) had loved	d) love
16 as an acco	ountant in the same compa	ny?	
a) Are you still work		b) Do you still wor	k
c) Have you still wor	rked	d) Did you still wo	rk



Al Adwaa Unit Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

① "She looked miserable	e." The antonyms	of the word misera	ble area	nd
a) depressed	b) happy	c) contented	d) poor	e) helpless
2 All of us should	the responsibil	ity of developing Eg	jypt.	
a) keep	b) have	c) make	d) do	e) bear
Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b, c	or d:		
(3) As a striker, Mostafa M	Nohammad is su _l	pposed togo	oals, not to lose	the ball.
a) reach	b) score	c) re	ealise	d) miss
4 At hospitals, blood pr	essure isr	regularly for patient	s before surgica	al operations.
a) received	b) measured	c) do	one	d) made
(5) After the terrible fire, a	a lot of volunteer	rs wanted to give	of blood ar	nd money to the victims.
a) iron-levels	b) donations	s c) tra	ansplants	d) prestige
6 Children need to be	well by the	eir parents at home	in order not to	hurt themselves.
a) monitored	b) praised	c) be	enefited	d) neglected
7 My neighbour is famo	oushis pa	tience and good ma	anners.	
a) for	b) as	c) a	mong	d) with
8 A means a dee	p, loud noise ma	ide by an animal suc	ch as a lion, or b	y someone's voice.
a) sound	b) roar	c) w	hispering	d) clank
9 Did you go out last ni	ght oryou	u busy?		
a) did	b) were	c) ar	е	d) have
10 My son ambition	ous and he want	s to study medicine		
a) is always	b) always is	c) do	oesn't always	d) isn't always
11 Ahmed tea in t	the evening ever	y day.		
a) has usually	b) usually h	as c) u	sually have	d) does usually
12 Ten years ago, we	in a house by	the river.		
a) lived	b) will live	c) li	ve	d) living
13 That car over there	used, I have	just received it, an	d I'm happy to I	nave a brand-new one.
a) doesn't	b) didn't	c) is		d) isn't
14) What time it w	hen your father a	arrived?		
a) did	b) is	c) w	/as	d) has
15 Teacherslesson	ns for their stude	ents. It's their job.		
a) are teaching	b) taught	c) te	each	d) teaches
16 Don't leave the place	till your father	to take you.		
a) come	b) is coming	c) c	ame	d) comes
19 Part 1				

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In Britain, most schools are financed by the state. Children attend those schools for free. There are many local variations in the details of the school system. The general pattern of schooling in Britain is well-organised. All children must start school at the age of five. Many have previously attended playschools or nursery schools, but these are not compulsory.

Primary education, whether state or private, seeks to develop all aspects of the child: physical and emotional, as well as intellectual and cultural aspects. Most schools concentrate on the child's development of his or her potential, rather than on training for a particular exam.

At the age of 11, children move to different schools. These are called secondary schools, and children of all abilities go to the same school, the pupils have a set timetable of subjects, including arts subjects, such as history, English and a foreign language, as well as science subjects and sports. At the end of this period, most pupils take one of two public examinations.

After these exams, i.e. at the age of 16 or so, most pupils leave. Pupils usually take a public school-leaving examination. Their results in these exams will largely determine whether they now start to work or they can continue with higher education at a university or college.

17 In Britain most students	
a) don't pay money	b) must donate for education
c) finance their school	d) are prevented from learning
18 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to	
a) schools	b) exams
c) results	d) pupils
19children must start school when they are five	ve.
a) Most	b) Not all
c) All	d) Many
20 Children move to secondary school when they are	
a) twelve	b) thirteen
c) eleven	d) ten
(1) It is for many children to attend nursery sch	ools before the age of five.
a) necessary	b) obligatory
c) optional	d) forbidden.
22 In Britain, most schools are free as the pay(s	s) for them.
a) students	b) government
c) parents	d) charities
23education in Britain concentrates on the ch	ild's development not on particular exams.
a) Primary	b) Nursery
c) Secondary	d) University

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- أصبح تلوث البيئة من القضايا الأساسية التي جذبت انتباه العالم أجمع للوصول إلى حل عالمي.
- a) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a national solution.
- b) The environment pollution has become one of the minor issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solution.
- c) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solve.
- d) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solution.

25) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Science fiction is one of the best ways to express the future and the style of life in it. It is thought that science fiction works predicted a lot of inventions many years before their real existence.

- a) قصص الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق لسرعة المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به من المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الدعوات قبل وجودها بشكل حقيقى.
- الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به من المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الاختراعات قبل وجودها بشكل حقيقى.
- الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به أنها تعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من
 الاختراعات قبل وجودها بشكل حقيقى.
- d) الخيال العلمي أحد أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل وأسلوب الحياة به المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمي تنبأت بالكثير من الدعوات قبل وحودها بشكل رسمي.

	o make your		vords on the followed	ollowing:
 	•••••	•••••	 	
 	•••••	••••	 	

 	•••••		 	
 	•••••	••••	 	
 	•••••	•••••	 	
 		••••	 	
 	***************************************	***************************************	 	
 	•••••	•••••	 	



Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

Model (A	A)	Mo	odel (B)
	بائس		سجن
	تذكرة		فرصة
	ممتلئ الجسم		تاجر
	فارغ		يستحق
	يكافئ		مرحلة الطفولة
	معبد		ديون
	مجرم		مشابه
	سيدة تبدو متعبة		يجلس مع
	يصنع ملابس		مشكلة مع
	ياخذ بعيدا		یعتنی ب
earn money		owe	
twins		amuse	
floors		remove	
hide		injure	
revise		arrange	
healthy		twins	
lucky		storyteller	
rats		exactly	
law		repay	
dirty		miser	

Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

1 All those who trav	el abroad to study and	work much usefu	ıl experience.	
a) earn	b) gain	c) win	d) succeed	
2 I really feel tired. T	oo much work makes n	ne look		
a) deadly	b) empty	c) happy	d) miserable	
3 The school should	l be a place for education	on and also for to	be attractive.	
a) performance	b) explanation	c) entertainment	d) payment	
4 think a	a holiday because I've w	orked hard all year.		
a) earn	b) deserve	c) observe	d) owe	
5 I my hon	nework and I can watch	the match now.		
a) do	b) am doing	c) have done	d) had done	
6 Merna has	seen a lion before.			
a) ever	b) never	c) just	d) yet	
7 You needn't wash	the car, dad. I	it.		
 a) already washed 		b) had already was	b) had already washed	
c) already will was	h	d) have already was	shed	
8 Adel in t	his flat since 2015 and h	ne has no intention to leave	e it.	
a) lives	b) lived	c) is going to live	d) has lived	
A) Choose the corre	ct English translation:			
		ا غنيا يجعلها دولة رائدة في العالم بأنا		
 a) Egypt has a rich world in all field 		tory that makes it a leading	country in the whole	
b) Egypt has a rich world in all mag		ory that makes it a leading o	country in the whole	
c) Egypt has a rich in all fields.	cultural and civilised his	tory that makes it a leader co	ountry in the hole wor	
d) Egypt has a rich world in all part		tory that makes it a leading	country in the whole	
B) Choose the corre	ct Arabic translation:			
Wasting water is a	big problem that has a	ppeared recently. Some ca	reless people use it	
foolishly without a	any sense of duty or res	ponsibility.		
أى إحســاس بالواجب أو	يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون	هرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس المهملين لا) إهدار الماء مشــكلة كبيرة ظ مسئولية.	
أى إحســاس بالواجب أو	يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون	ظهرت مؤخرا، بعض الناس المهملين	ن إهـدار المـاء مشـكلة كبيرة دتمالية.	
أي احسياس بالواجب أو	يستخدمون الماء يحماقة يدون	لهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس الحريصين	، ضباع الماء مشـكلة كبيرة ظ	

d) إن إهــدار المـاء مشـكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرا. بعض الناس المهملين يسـتخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحسـاس بالواجب أو

المسئولية.



Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

Model (A)		Model (B)		
	التخطيط		خبرة	
	عمل تطوعى		معاق	
	ماكينات		مجتمع	
	زوج الأم		خدعة	
	حل		جمعية شباب	
	بالغ		حالم	
	ينضج		ثقافة	
	يخدع		يدون	
	يقوم بعمل من أجل		يعود إلى	
	يصنع اختلافًا		غیر معتاد اــ	
food bank		main		
touch		later		
trust		voluntary		
break		paint		
go wrong		stop from		
disability		admit		
major		nowhere		
surprise		pay		
character		describe		
most of		step mother		



Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We should all try	to keep ourherit	age safe.	
a) cultural	b) cultured	c) culture	d) cultures
2 This organisation	depends ondor	nations.	
a) vertically	b) volume	c) valve	d) voluntary
3 I don't trust you a	anymore because you alwa	ays me.	
a) game	b) show	c) match	d) trick
4 Since the youth.	was formed in ou	r city, there have been a	a lot of useful activities for
them.			
a) charity	b) prison	c) association	d) society
5 Sara is at home n	now. She to Mans	oura to apply to univers	ity.
a) has gone	b) visited	c) has been	d) had been
6 The last time he	played football with us	we were in Aswar	٦.
a) when	b) since	c) while	d) during
7 They fo	r this company for 20 years	s before starting their ov	wn business.
a) work	b) have worked	c) are working	d) worked
8 Has he really con	npleted all his work	? I can't believe it.	
a) yet	b) just	c) already	d) ever

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- ينبغي أن نشجع الشباب على ممارسة الرياضة لمساعدتهم على قضاء وقت فراغهم بشكل مفيد.

- a) We should encourage the young people to make sports to help them to spend their free time in a useful way.
- b) We should discourage the young to practise sports to help them to spend their spare time in a useful way.
- c) We should encourage the young to practise sports to help them to spend their empty time in a useful way.
- d) We should encourage the young to practise sports to help them to spend their free time in a useful way.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

It is necessary to be positive, and never defend a point of view unless you are sure it will make a difference.

- a) من الضروري أن تكون إيجابيا، وألا تدافع عن وجهة نظر لو لم تكن متيقنا أنه سيحدث فرق.
- b) إنه من الضروري أن تكون إيجابيا، وألا تدافع عن وجهة نظر لو لم تكن متيقنا أنه لن يحدث فرق.
 - من الضرورى أن تكون سلبيا، وألا تدافع عن وجهة نظر لم تكن متيقنا أنه سيحدث فرق.
 - d) من غير الضروري أن تكون إيجابيا، وألا تدافع عن نقطة منظر لم تكن متيقنا أنه سيحدث فرق.



Advanced Exercises

1) The factory closed down	because the owners could	n't make it	
a) lay	b) pay	c) stay	d) beat
(2) The weather in Egypt, for	the most, is mild	and sunny.	
a) place	b) position	c) site	d) part
$\begin{cases} \begin{cases} $	ourst and we have to get a p	olumber.	
a) main	b) major	c) minor	d) mean
4 Only members will be	to the club for tonig	•	
a) arranged	b) borrowed	c) admitted	d) owed
5 Your password must con			
a) personalities	b) identities	c) activities	d) characters
6 You should wait for a	in the traffic before y	ou cross the road. It is	much safer.
a) plump	b) break	c) flood	d) remove
7 The company for which I	am going to work offers to	pay all oure	xpenses.
a) removal	b) remove	c) misery	d) review
8 I think my son is not very	ill, it is just a of flo	u.	
a) plan	b) disaster	c) touching	d) touch
We have played tennis	two years ago.		
a) for	b) since	c) when	d) before
10 I think it is a long time	I had such a wonde	rful time.	
a) for	b) since	c) when	d) as
11 When your din	ner?		
a) did you eat		b) have you eaten	
c) will you be eaten		d) you have eaten	
12 Science the me	edical field a lot.	,	
a) advance		b) has been advancing	9
c) has advanced		d) has been advanced	
13 Ia cold for two	weeks.		
a) have	b) have being had	c) have been having	d) have had
14 Do you know what time			
a) had left	b) has left	c) has been leaving	d) leave
(15) Since I started working h	ere, I more experi	enced at dealing with	people.
a) became		b) have become	
c) have been becoming		d) have been become	
(16) I can't remember the last	time I to the thea		
a) went	b) have been	c) have been being	d) have had

Al Adwaa Unit Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

1 The lawyer was an ho	onest man, so we	felt safe. The antony	ms of the word	"honest" are
and				
a) trustful	b) deceitful	c) miserable	d) insincere	e) sincere
2 I felt very happy				
a) with	b) to	c) about	d) against	e) for
Choose the correct ans				
3 He was one of the ga	ing who escaped			him.
a) entertainment	b) factory	c) floo		d) prison
4 My neighbour was se	ent to prison beca	ause he was heavily i	n	
a) debited	b) debt	c) inc	debted	d) debate
5 The thief steal	ing my car and se	elling it for only ten t	housand pound	ls.
a) admitted	b) said	c) tol	ld	d) included
6 Criminals should be p	punished for	the law.		
a) following	b) breaking	c) ob	eying	d) giving
7 I asked you to do this	difficult job beca	ause I you.		
a) trust	b) suspect	c) hu	irt	d) think
(8) The police are lookin	g for the criminal	who custome	ers into buying t	fake products.
a) scammed	b) trusted	c) esc	aped	d) broke
He has gone to Lond	on. This means th	nat he there.		
a) is still	b) won't be	c) is r	no longer	d) was
10 When he was in Cairc	o, he always	along the Nile.		
a) walked	b) was walk	ing c) wa	alks	d) 'll walk
(1) They neverus	ed to eating in th	e office.		
a) do	b) was	c) go	ot	d) have
(12) I was made m	y room before I w	ent out.		
a) to tidy	b) tidying	c) tid	ly	d) not tidy
(13) Yasmeen is in Cairo n	ow. She to	Luxor.		
a) has gone	b) go	c) ha	s been	d) goes
(14) I this car for m	ore than three ye	ears now.		
a) has had	b) have had	c) hav	ve been	d) am having
(15) It is the first time for	Mona abro			
a) travel	b) to travel		s travelled	d) has ever travelled
(16) A: Why are you late,	Ali?			
B: Because I th				
a) have missed	b) has misse	ed c) had	d missed	d) was missing
26 Part 1				

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Always choose your neighbour. I have some ideal neighbours. One of my favourites is a man and his wife. The man is a retired army officer and his wife is still working for the nearby university. They are very hospitable. It is particularly enjoyable to wake up on a Friday morning to the sounds of their music playing which are really quite artistic. However, I also love to hear them laughing when they make a mistake in their music playing. Besides music, carpentry is still the man's main interest, and most days he is outside in his workspace in the garden, making an artistic piece of furniture. My neighbours are ideal to live next door, too, because they can be very helpful if I need them. I respect them as they never interfere in my private life and I behave with them in the same way. We have helped each other with numerous emergencies such as fires and car accidents. We also co-operate with each other in little ways such as bringing the mail, when one of us is away. We sometimes meet when they invite me over for coffee, with some of their friends who are usually very interesting people: poets, painters, professors and other lively persons whom I enjoy meeting. Sometimes we go to the fireworks display. Apart from this, we simply live next door to each other peacefully, side by side.

17) The underlined word "them" refers to	
a) writers	b) neighbours
c) painters	d) poets
(8) At the neighbours' house, the writer meets	••••
a) poets and painters	b) lively persons
c) professors	d) all of these
(9) The army officer has some skills.	
a) manual	b) digital
c) oral	d) lingual
20 The officer's wife is working for a/an	
a) school	b) army
c) professor	d) university
(1) The army officer's main hobby is	
a) music	b) carpentry
c) fireworks	d) poetry
22) What shows that the writer and his neighbours he	lp each other?
a) They never interfere in his private life.	
b) They go to the fireworks display with each other.	
c) They invite him over for coffee.	
d) They bring the mail when one of them is away.	
(3) Inviting the writer over for coffee with some of the	eir friends. This shows that their neighbours
are	
a) sociable	b) anxious
c) artistic	d) interesting

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد شيدت مصر شبكة طرق حديثة لتحقيق انسياب المرور والحد من حوادث السيارات.
- a) Egypt has constructed a new modern road network to achieve traffic flow and limit car accidents.
- b) Egypt has constructed a new modern road web to achieve traffic flooding and limit car accidents.
- c) Egypt has constructed a new modern road network to achieve easy traffic and prevent car accidents.
- d) Egypt has constructed a new modern road railways to achieve traffic flow and limit car accidents.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

The new traffic law is extremely strict. It aims at protecting the lives of innocent citizens from the recklessness of some drivers.

- a) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية ممتلكات المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين.
 - (b) إن الطريق الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين المجرمين من تهور بعض السائقين.
 - إن طريق المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من هدوء بعض السائقين.
 - d) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين.

Water is	life."			
		 ••••••		
		 •••••	***************************************	

		 ••••••	***************************************	
		 ••••••	•••••	
		 •••••	***************************************	



Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

Model (A)	Model (B)
مفضل	يسترخى
صلة	أعضاء الفريق
صداقة	إضافي
مسموح له	محادثة
مراهق	لوحة إعلانات
يدخل على الإنترنت	يتحدث إلى
يشعر وكأنه	يراجع من أجل
يتدرب	يطلب
يكون صداقات	مرتبط بـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
عضو في الفريق	بدلا من
take it for granted	stressed
stressful	information
enjoy	magazine
personal	training
follow	useful
article	wear
advice	tip
grade	face
cool	feel
teenager	individual sport



Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I feel	, I usually go out in the ope	en air to relax.	
a) happy	b) stressed	c) pleased	d) delighted
(2) As he is sociable, he	prefers doing spo	orts.	
a) team	b) individual	c) solo	d) lonely
3 My son is still a/an	He is only 13 year	s old.	
a) adult	b) grown up	c) teenager	d) youth
4 Good relations are b	pased onand trust		
a) hatred	b) jealousy	c) friendship	d) tricks
(5) I hope I will have	computer with 128	GB RAM.	
a) the	b) a	c) an	d) no article
6 success the	at I have made is very impo	rtant for me and my fa	mily.
a) A	b) An	c) The	d) No article
7 It is true that English	n ismost importar	nt language.	
a) an	b) the	c) a	d) no article
8 We usually go to	cinema every Friday	to watch new films.	
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب الاهتمام بتربية أطفالنا وتنشئتهم اجتماعيا لكي يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين في المستقبل.

- a) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become good citizens in the future.
- b) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become good students in the near future.
- c) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become bad citizens in the future.
- d) We should care about bringing about our children and their socialisation to become famous citizens in the future.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Global trade leads to a big economic growth in different regions all over the world. So, all the world countries aim to develop it greatly.

- a) التجارة المحلية تؤدى إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- b) التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو اقتصادي قليل في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- c التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو اقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء البلد. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- d) التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو اقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.



Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

Model (A)		Mod	el (B)
	وحيدا		يتشاجر
	ضابط شرطة		تأثير
	غشاش		وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
	تنمر		مذعور
	حقيبة ظهر		التمريض
	مضيف		يتصرف
	يستغرق وقت لكى		يشير إلى
	مؤذ – ردىء الطبع		غاضب من شخص
	يلتقط صورة لــ		متأكد من
	ينسجم مع		يدرج في قائمة
debate		scared	
lonely		fight	
continue		copying	
hate		laugh	
immediately		guest	
negative		phone in	
hard		illustrate	
as far as I am concerned		add	
radio show		terrible	
soon		get along with	



Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1isn't allo	wed and it is considered	d a crime.	
a) Polling	b) Bullying	c) Pulling	d) Bull
2 A/An is s	something that brings p	eople together.	
a) cheating	b) phone-in	c) address	d) connectio
3 Although	is forbidden, some stu	idents still try to invent n	new ways of it.
a) connection	b) policing	c) phishing	d) cheating
4 A/Anis a	a group of letters added	to the end of a word to	form a new word.
a) noun	b) adverb	c) suffix	d) prefix
5 My father's glasse	sin the house	garden two days ago.	
a) was lost	b) is lost	c) were lost	d) have lost
6 Would you please	give mewate	r?	
a) a bit	b) many	c) any	d) some
7 Ten thousand pou	ınds enough f	or this trip.	
a) are	b) were	c) is	d) have
8 I don't have	money, so I want to	borrow some.	
a) any	b) many	c) some	d) a lot of

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد تغلبت المرأة المصرية على قيود المجتمع التقليدية وبدأت تشارك الرجل في كافة الميادين.

- a) The Egyptian woman has overcome all the society traditional restrictions and begun to share man in all fields.
- b) The Egyptian women have overcome all the society traditional restrictions and begun to share man in all fields.
- c) The Egyptian woman has overtaken all the society traditional restrictions and has begun to share man in all fields.
- d) The Egyptian woman has overcome all the society traditional limits and has begun to share man in all parts.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Depression can happen to any of us as we age and it usually impacts your energy, appetite, sleep, and interest in work, hobbies, and relationships.

- a) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع صغرنا في العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.
- ل يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع تقدمنا في العصر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص رائحته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته
 وعلاقاته.
-) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع تقدمنا في العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته
 وعلاقاته.
- لا يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأى منا مع تقدمنا فى العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.



Advanced Exercises

1 They invited me to their	r wedding party and I	for long whether	to go or not. Finally,
decided not to go.			
a) discussed	b) agreed	c) debated	d) frowned
2 The store sells only the h	ighest of clothes,	so they are very expen	sive.
a) grade	b) degree	c) greed	d) regard
3 It is clear that the sheets	are starting toou	t a little. We need to bu	ıy new ones.
a) put on	b) dress	c) wear	d) weep
4 I'm sorry, I can't buy a m	odern car for you. It isn't	***************************************	
a) bear	b) dear	c) fear	d) ear
5 During the last holiday, I	spent nearly five	pounds.	
a) thousands	b) thousand's	c) thousand	d) thousands'
${\Large \textcircled{6}} \ When \ my \ daughter \ saw$	what was for dinner, she	She was angry	
a) lost a face		c) was faceless	d) pulled a face
7 This old suitcase looks no	ow a bit the worse for	*********	
a) dress	b) put on	c) wear	d) cloth
8 Students have to take th	reein English tom	orrow.	
a) paper	b) papers	c) a paper	d) paperbacks
9 France is part of	European Union.		
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
10 My uncle is a sailor who	spends most of his time at		
a) the sea	b) a sea	c) an sea	d) sea
11 We have hardly heard	news of her since sh	e travelled abroad.	
a) some	b) any	c) much	d) many
12 Make and cool	k the food, Mona.		
a) a bed	b) bed	c) the bed	d) any bed
13 I like watching	road running during the Ol	ympics.	
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
14 My father booked	seat No. 20 in	carriage 2.	
a) no article/no article		b) no article/the	
c) the/the		d) the/no article	
15 Hala travelled to Cairo by	y bus.		
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) no article
16 When I went to school, t	here were onlystu	idents in the class.	
a) a few	b) a little	c) much	d) many



Al Adwaa Unit Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

1) It's a cool sofa; we'll bu	y it. The antonyms	of the word	"cool" are	and .	
a) neat	b) fashionable	c) bad	d) ur	rcool	e) old
2 Don't your friend	ds at school. It's co	nsidered a so	ort of bullying	J.	
a) make laugh	b) smile at	c) laugh at	d) m	ake fun d	of e) laugh of
Choose the correct answ	er from a, b, c or	d:			
3 My sister is always shy	and finds it difficul	t to fr	iends.		
a) give	b) do		c) make		d) look
4 Because of social media	a and talk show pr	ogrammes, r	many people l	nave los	t the art of
a) bullying	b) conversation	1	c) teaching		d) conservation
5 Scientists proved that t	here is a direct	betweer	n smoking and	d cancer	•
a) communication	b) practice	•	c) conversation	n	d) connection
6 As far as I'm, doi	ng sport is useful f	or our health	n.		
a) interesting	b) enthusiast	(c) opinion		d) concerned
Tigh prices are a serious	ıs the gove	nment tries	to solve.		
a) crises	b) problem		c) solution		d) advice
8 I asked my mother	another piece o	of cake.			
a) for	b) to	(c) in		d) with
9 A: How milk do	you want?				
B: Two bottles, please.					
a) many	b) much	(c) a little		d) a few
10 Laila was graduated fro	omUniversi	ty of Mansou	ıra.		
a) an	b) a	(c) the		d) no article
(1) Secondary school stud	ents in some coun	tries don't ha	ave to wear	un	iform.
a) some	b) one		c) a		d) an
12 My father always tells n	nevaluable	advice.			
a) a	b) an		c) the		d) some
(13) During science lessons	at our school, we	learn	information.		
a) many	b) much		c) an		d) a
14 There is plenty of meat	, but there is not	bread.			
a) plenty	b) many		c) any		d) a lot
15 My uncle lives in the co	ountryside where h	ne raises	****** •		
a) chicken	b) chickens		c) some chicke	en	d) the chicken
(6) Ali is in danger because he is AIDS patient.					
a) a	b) an		c) the		d) no article
34 Part 1					

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

No matter where you look you will see ads or advertisements. They are everywhere, in newspapers, magazines, and on TV. They are a part of your life. To advertise means to call something to the attention of the public. That can be done in different ways. Street vendors advertise by calling out loudly. Others prefer to advertise their products on posters. Others again use television and radio for the purpose. Advertisements have been around for a long time. It is hard to imagine a world without advertisements. Just think of all the programmes on television that are sponsored by a company or magazines that are full of ads. You would have to pay much more if they were not part of the magazine. Ads are not the same in every country. You have to pay attention to traditions, history and culture. What works in one country might not work in another country. An important part of advertising and selling products is the idea of brands. When you buy a brand, you are not just buying a product. You are buying an identity and lifestyle. In the old days, a brand meant something hot or burning. Today, it is an identifying logo, a mark or symbol that distinguishes one company or product from others. A good logo is unique and not easily confused with the logos of other companies. Many logos are famous and have been around for a long time.

17 How do ad	vertisements b	pecome part of our life?		
a) Our life o	depends on the	em.	b) We can find them e	verywhere.
c) They solv	ve our problem	S.	d) They cause us many	y diseases.
18 Why do diff	ferent people a	advertise in different ways?		
a) To beat e	each other.		b) To enjoy each other.	
c) To sell th	eir products.		d) To fight with people	·.
19 What is the	most importa	nt part of advertising produ	ucts?	
a) The idea	of brands.		b) The idea of selling.	
c) The idea	of the country		d) The idea of conscier	nce.
20 What is the	use of the ma	rk or logo on the product?		
a) It makes	the product ch	neaper.		
b) It helps people to save money.				
c) It disting	uishes one cor	npany or products from othe	ers.	
d) It tells th	e expiry date.			
(21) When we a	dvertise some	thing, we mean to		
a) make it o	difficult to buy	it	b) pay the attention of	people to it
c) trick people to get something bad		ething bad	d) solve our problems	
22 The pronou	ın "They" in the	e first line refers to		
a) street ve	ndors	b) advertisements	c) the public	d) products
23 When you l	ouy an identity	and lifestyle, it means that	you buy a	
a) product		b) trend	c) history	d) brand

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد لرفع مستوى المعيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال كل الموارد الاقتصادية المتاحة بدون إسراف.
- a) Hard work is the only way to rise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.
- b) Hard working is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all unavailable economic resources without extravagance.
- c) Working hard is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economical resources without expenses.
- d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available the economic resources without extravagance.

25) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stability in peace process and combating terrorism.

- a) كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر محلى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
- b) كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولي يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
 - اضطرت مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ودعم السياحة.
- d) كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى اجتماع دولي يستهدف عدم استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

)	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:		
	"How could smartphones affect our life positively and negatively?"		

Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

Model (A)		Model (B)
	مرن	الهاتف الذكى
	جهاز	محطات توليد الطاقة
	اختراق	
	دراسة – استطلاع	يحمى
	آمن	التخييم
	خاص	يخلق
	ذاتية القيادة	أساسى - رئيسى
	بقدر ما أستطيع	يستمع إلى
	العالم الخارجى	يتواصل مع
	يتخذ قرارًا	يقتحم
lighting		empty
device	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	heating
incident		network
steal		petrol
protect		task
cause		connected
develop		app
navigate		criminal
check		bin
illegal		camping

Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d	:	
1) The internet is the	e largest computer	in the world.	
a) framework	b) network	c) workstation	d) teamwork
2 When more than	one thing is joined or lin	ked, they are	
a) created	b) developed	c) connected	d) performed
3 He is a bad person	n who gets a lot of mone	y through	
a) fishing	b) fisherman	c) phishing	d) phisher
4 He had given her	1000 pounds before he	realised that it was a	**** 0
a) scam	b) scams	c) scammed	d) scammer
5 They Th	ney have already decided	I that.	
a) will leave	b) are leaving	c) are going to leave	d) would leave
6 The sky is very glo	oomy, I think it		
a) will rain	b) is raining	c) would rain	d) is going to rair
All students in thi	s class their exa	ıms. That is my expectation.	
a) will pass	b) are passing	c) are going to pass	d) pass

(A) Choose the correct English translation:

a) will feed

(8) The farmer is carrying some grass. He the sheep.

b) is feeding

- سيساعد استصلاح الصحراء في زيادة الدخل القومي والأراضي الزراعية وتوفير فرص عمل للشباب.

c) might have fed

d) is going to feed

- a) The desert reclamation will help to increase the international income and the farming lands, and it will provide job opportunities for the youth.
- b) The desert fixing will help to increase the national income and the farming lands and save job opportunities for the youth.
- c) The desert reclamation will help to increase the national income and the farming lands, and it will provide job opportunities for the youth.
- d) The desert reclamation will help to decrease the national entrance and the farming lands, and it will provide job opportunities for the youth.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Setting up productive projects helps to provide job opportunities for unemployed youth who are looking for jobs, so they help them to start a good life.

- a) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهي تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.
- ل تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العامل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.
- تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم على بداية حياة جديدة.
- d) تساعد إقامة المشـروعات المسـتهلكة على توفير فرص عمل للشـباب العاطل الذي يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهي تساعدهم على بداية حياة جيدة.

Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

Model (A)	Model (B)
يتنمر	حساب بنکی
التصيد – الاحتيال	احتيال
قبيح الشكل	يخيف
وقح	برنامج ضد الفيروسات
قدرات	نشر الصور
غاضب جدا	
توظیف	فظيع
يحصل على شيء مجاني	يمسح من
يبقى آمنـُا	يكتب عن
يملا استمارة	مشغول بـــ
piracy	click
personal details	download
malware	join
recognise	socialise
website	embarrassing
impossible	scary
almost	friendship
look like	accountant
employer	public
free	separate



Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I always advise my o	hildren not to watch	movies as they mal	ke them fearful.
a) comic	b) funny	c) exciting	d) scary
2 My friend's smartph	one was lost and he looks	***************************************	
a) pleased	b) frightened	c) terrific	d) furious
3 It was difficult to	my friend after this l	ong period of absence.	
a) recognise	b) link	c) stress	d) hack
4 Don't shout at her. S	She nothing wrong	g.	
a) did	b) looked	c) went	d) stayed
5 The bus which my fr	riend is in in Cairo	at 7 p.m.	
a) arrives	b) arriving	c) will be arriving	d) has arrived
6 Now, we have made	all our preparations. We	the weekend in	Hurghada.
a) spend	b) will spend	c) going to spend	d) are spending
Ali is so intelligent a	nd clever. I think he	the test easily.	
a) is going to pass	b) will pass	c) is passing	d) will be passing

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- تطوير التعليم والارتقاء بمستوى المعلم والعملية التعليمية من أهم الأهداف التي يجب تحقيقها في المستقبل.

- a) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.
- b) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the received.
- c) Developing education and promoting the level of the teacher and educational operation are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.
- d) Developed education and promoting the standard of the teacher and educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

The storms, the hurricanes and the earthquakes are natural disasters that happen suddenly without any arrangements.

- a) الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث طبيعية تحدث فجأة دون ترتيبات.
- b) الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث صناعية تحدث فجأة دون ترتيبات.
 - الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث طبيعية تحدث فجأة بترتيبات.
- d) الرياح والأعاصير والزلازل كوارث طبيعية تحدث سربعًا دون ترتيبات.



Advanced Exercises

1 don't mind giving a lot o	of money to a good	•••••	
a) reason	b) pause	c) result	d) cause
(2) The atmosphere in the ro	om wasThere w	ere shouts and argum	ents.
a) electricity	b) electrical	c) electric	d) electrician
(3) My wife gave the police a	fullof the robbe	ry and the robbers.	
a) count	b) account	c) describe	d) prescription
4 The atmosphere in our of	ffice is veryand ea	asy. We are all good frie	ends.
a) occupied	b) electric	c) free	d) busy
(5) Theshowed that	at the baby was in the norm	nal position.	
a) scan	b) scam	c) skim	d) download
6 Passengers go through p	assport and then	go onto the plane.	
a) control	b) device	c) link	d) office
7) Some people are extreme	elyabout the food	d they eat.	
a) survey	b) illegal	c) empty	d) particular
(8) The engineer all the equipment he needed for the project.			
a) supported	b) accounted	c) detailed	d) detained
9 The weather report says i	thot all day.		
a) will be	b) is going	c) is	d) is being
10 The boy is sharpening his	pencil, hehis ho	mework.	
a) is writing	b) will write	c) writes	d) is going to write
① I my friends at the club tomorrow. We've made lots of calls.			
a) will see	b) am going to see	c) am seeing	d) see
12 Oh dear, it's already 6 o'cl	ock. We late.		
a) are being	b) would be	c) are going to be	d) must be
13) It's 10 o'clock now and m	y brotherthe mat	ch on TV.	
a) will be watching	b) is watching	c) going to watch	d) would watch
14 You look tired and so I	the bag for you.		
a) going to carry	b) am carried	c) will be carrying	d) will carry
$\begin{tabular}{l} \begin{tabular}{l} tabu$	all my jobs.		
a) will be doing	b) will have done	c) going to do	d) do
(6) This time next week, weon the beach.			
a) will sit	b) will have been sit	c) will be sitting	d) sit

Al Adwaa Unit Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

1 I could control the car	when I had a flat ti	re. The synonyms	of the word "co	ntrol" are
and				
a) follow	b) surrender	c) dominate	d) hold	e) command
2 Last week, I met some	of my old friends	and I was so	һарру.	
a) by accident	b) in accident	c) by chance	d) accident	e) in chance
Choose the correct answ	ver from a, b, c or	d:		
3 The software downloa	ded from this web	site is mostly	which will da	amage your computer.
a) malware	b) hardware	c) adv	erts	d) apps
4 The officer asked me a	bout the of	the accident.		
a) offers	b) networks	c) org	anisations	d) details
(5) It's advisable not to pro	ess on asen	t from strange em	ails.	
a) blog	b) website	c) link		d) line
6 The information on the	e main computer w	as lost by a profes	ssional	
a) farmer	b) gardener	c) hac	ker	d) lawyer
7 I can't live here. I feel				
a) secure	b) insecure	c) sec	curity	d) insecurity
(8) There are some disadv	antagessoc	tial media.		
a) on	b) to	c) abo	out	d) into
We my birthday	party on Saturday	. Would you like to	come?	
a) are having	b) will have	c) be	going to have	d) are being had
10 Esraa has just decided	to buy this dress. S	heit now.		
a) is buying	b) is going to b	uy c) wo	n't buy	d) buys
11 Everything is arranged	I now, we fo	r Alexandria tomo	rrow.	
a) will leave	b) are leaving	c) leav	/e	d) are going to leave
12 I expected that my tea	m the matc	h.		
a) is winning	b) will win	c) is g	oing to win	d) would win
13 Don't worry about you	ır exams, Iye	ou.		
a) am helping	b) will help	c) am	going to help	d) help
14 Don't pick up the phor	ne. I it.			
a) will answer	b) going to ans	swer c) am	answering	d) answer
15 I think the weather in I	Russia very o	cold.		
a) will be	b) is going to b	e c) is b	eing	d) shall be
16 After she the sh	opping, she will go	home to cook lu	nch.	
a) is doing	b) does	c) hac	l done	d) will do
1				

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Mourad had got into a million hobbies and activities, but he never stuck with any of them long enough to get any good. He begged his mother for months for a guitar, but strumming the strings hurt his fingers and he didn't like holding the pick, so now the guitar lives under his bed.

After reading an ad, Mourad decided that he wanted a metal detector to find buried pirate treasure. So he didn't spend his money on ice-cream like his younger brother. By the time he had saved \$200, he purchased the Wonder-Sweeper metal detector, but he soon found out that no pirates had ever set sail in his neighborhood. Even though he found a key ring, fortyseven cents, and all the bottle caps he could throw.

Given Mourad's history with hobbies, Mourad's father was reluctant to buy him a magician's kit for his birthday. Mourad was insistent. But Mourad's father remembered his own youth long ago when he quit football and started karate practice before hardly getting his equipment dirty. So, Mourad was both surprised and pleased to have the magician's kit.

At this time, a commercial on the TV caught his attention. "Hey, kids! Have you ever wanted to go to space? Mourad walked away from the magic kit and stared at the TV screen. He now knew what his true purpose in life was.

- (17) According to the text, why does Mourad stop playing the guitar?
 - a) It hurt his fingers. b) He'd rather play drums.
 - c) It was too easy. d) He failed math.
- (8) According to the passage, why does Mourad decide that he wants a metal detector?
 - a) He sees a man at the park with one.
 - b) His father had one as a child.
 - c) He saw a TV commercial for one.
 - d) He read an ad for one in a comic book.
- (19) How does Mourad get the items that he wants in the story?
 - a) He asks his mom.
 - b) He asks his dad.
 - c) He deprives himself to save money.
 - d) He does all of these things to get what he wants.
- (20) Why didn't Mourad's father want to get him the magician's kit for his birthday?
 - a) Mourad failed math class.
 - b) Mourad quits too many expensive activities.
 - c) Mourad has been mean to his younger brother.
 - d) Mourad went to the park without permission.
- (21) Why does Mourad's father buy Mourad the magician's kit?
 - a) Mourad mowed the lawn.
 - b) He was like Mourad.
 - c) Mourad bought ice-cream for his brother.
 - d) Mourad found his father's key ring.

22 Whic	h happened last i	in the text?		
a) M	ourad saved up \$2	200.		
b) M	ourad found forty	-seven cents in the park.		
c) M	ourad took guitar	lessons.		
d) Mourad was influenced by a comic book.				
23) In wh	nat genre is this s	tory?		
a) Fid	ction.	b) Nonfiction.	c) Folklore.	d) Poetry.
24 Choo	ose the correct E	nglish translation:		
b) M c) M	an cannot do with an cannot do with	t water and air, and without water and air, and without water and air, and without water and air, and w	out them all living creatuout them all living creaturithout them all living creaturithout them all living cre	لا يستطيع الإنسان أن يستغنى عن الما res would have perished. res would have perished. eatures would have perished. eatures would have lived.
25) Choo	ose the correct A	rabic translation:		
_			d will result in spread	ing peace and security.
The	y should help e	ach other to improve	the living conditions	of their people.
				ا
		.,	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	المعيشـية لشـعوبهم.
	ن لتحسين الظاروف	ـب أن يسـاعدوا بعضهـم البعــض	م إلى نشـر السـلام والأمـن. يج	b) سيؤدى التعـاون بيــن دول العالــ الوظيفيــة لشـعوبـمم.
	ن لتحسين الظروف	ـب ألا يسـاعدوا بعضهـم البعــض	م إلى نشـر السـلام والأمــن. يج	 صيؤدى التعاون بين دول العالـ المعيشية لشعوبهم.
	ن لتحسين الظروف	ـب أن يسـاعدوا بعضهـم البعــض	م إلى نشـر السـلام والأمـن. يج	d) سيؤدى التعــاون بيــن دول العالــ المعيشــية لشـعوبهم.
66 Write	e an essay of abo	out ONE HUNDRED AN	D FIFTY (150) words o	,
_	_		o help their country'	

	••••••••••••••••			
	••••••			



Lessons 1 & 2 Dictation

Model (A)	Model (B)
قافية	ينشر
شعر شعر	جاد – خطیر
إبحار	حصى
الأدب	مناقشة
مختطف	يعتبر/يضع في الاعتبار
فرح	قش
قطعة أرض زراعية	السيرة الذاتية
يبتعد عن	مختلف عن
يقوم بمعروف	مشابه كــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
يتبع القواعد	يسمع عن
poem	poet
gardener	suppose
novel	romantic
be called	tools
case	kidnapped
dig	treasure
popular	warm
adventure	currant row
full-time	pirate
sentence	be known for

Lessons 1 & 2 Exercises

1	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d	:			
	1 Thank you for the	e great favour that you ha	ive			
	a) made	b) played	c) had	d) done		
	2 He is fond of the	French and usu	ally buys books about it	•		
	a) literary	b) literature	c) literal	d) liberal		
	3 The antonym of	the word "improve" is "	<i>H</i>			
	a) enhance	b) spend	c) desire	d) decline		
(4) We the front door, so no one enters the house while we are away.						
	a) locking	b) locked	c) locks	d) lock		
	5 The suspect was	caught and he couldn't d	eny all the mo	ney.		
	a) to steal	b) to stealing	c) stole	d) stealing		
	6 He invited me to	the party, but I	to go.			
	a) agreed	b) avoided	c) refused	d) enjoyed		
	7 I spoke with him	, but I couldn't persuade I	nim with me.			
	a) coming	b) to coming	c) to come	d) come		
	8 They decided to	build a new factory, but v	ve all object th	is factory.		
	a) building	b) to building	c) to build	d) to have built		

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- من الضروري أن نبني جيلًا قويـًا من الشباب على دراية بمشكلات بلدهم وكيفية حلها.

- a) It is unnecessary to build a strong generation of youth aware of the problems of their country and how to solve them.
- b) It is necessary to build a strong generation of people aware of the problems of their country and how to solve them.
- c) We must build a strong generation of youth awareness of the problems of his country and how to solve them.
- d) It is necessary to build a strong generation of youth aware of the problems of their country and how to solve them

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Many kinds of animals and plants are facing extinction because of the man's irresponsible activity. So, man should be careful in his dealing with the environment.

- a) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للاضطهاد بسبب نشاط الإنسان المسئول. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان توخى الحذر في التعامل مع البيئة.
- (b) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المسئول. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان توخى الحذر في التعامل مع البيئة.
- تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الكائنات والنباتات للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المنتظم. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان الحرص فى
 التعامل مع البيئة.
- الحيوانات والنباتات الطيبة تتعرض للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المسئول. ومن ثم وجب على الإنسان توخى الحذر فى معالجة السئة.



Lessons 3 & 4 Dictation

Model (A)	Model (B)		
الوزن الشعري	يصف		
يكرر	مكسور		
موقف	مختصر		
موضوع	يروى		
عادل	ضوء الشمع		
باختصار	يبقى فى		
	يبحث عن		
في أوقات مختلفة	يمر أمام		
keep the gravel walk	fair		
hop	differently		
toy	summary		
exciting	clear		
adult	verse		
hate	activities		
describe	write about		
especially	dress		
season	quite		
remember	lie to		

Lessons 3 & 4 Exercises

0	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a, b, c	or	d:
	O							

1 My left leg was hu	rt and I had to	to reach home. It was so o	difficult.
a) hope	b) hop	c) hip	d) drill
2 You have to	on the path in orde	r not to damage the small _ا	olants.
a) do	b) stay	c) make	d) score
3 My father has a	way to express I	nis ideas.	
a) clearness	b) clarity	c) clear	d) clearly
4 It is polite to use "p	olease" when you	a request.	
a) make	b) do	c) take	d) give
5 I can't remember	him the mone	y when we met the other o	lay.
a) to giving	b) give	c) giving	d) to give
6 Please, stop	on the door like tha	at, it is too noisy.	
a) knocking	b) to knock	c) knock	d) to knocking
7 This computer is re	eally bad. I regret	it.	
a) to buy	b) buying	c) to buying	d) bought
8 I was doing some	exercises, but when the	e phone rang, I stopped	it.
a) answering	b) answer	c) to answering	d) to answer

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- يمكن أن يكون للبرامج التعليمية والمنصات الالكترونية دور كبير في النهوض بالعملية التعليمية.

- a) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big rule to upgrade the educational process.
- b) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big role to upgrade the educational process.
- c) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big role to upgrade the educational procession.
- d) The educational programmes and online platforms can have a big role to uproot the educational process.

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Practicing sports is something good for the young and the old alike. It benefits people physically and mentally at the same time.

- a) ممارسة الرياضيات شيء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهي تفيد الأشخاص بدنيا وعقليا في أوقات مختلفة.
 - b) ممارسة الرياضة شيء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهي تفيد الأشخاص ذهنيـًا وعقليا في نفس الوقت.
 - ممارسة الرياضيات شيء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهي تفيد الأشخاص بدنيا وعقليا في نفس الوقت.
 - d) ممارسة الرياضة شيء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهي تفيد الأشخاص بدنيا وعقليا في نفس الوقت.



Advanced Exercises

direct direct direct direct	orice in orii a, b, c or a.		
1) Can you think of a	for "peace"?		
a) rhyme	b) rhythm	c) plot	d) verse
② I think of German as	havinghair but a	a lot of them are dark.	
a) fur	b) dark	c) fair	d) bold
3 The husband wrote h	nis valentine's message to	his wife in	
a) rhythm	b) verse	c) cold	d) reverse
4 What have you got	up for the weeker	nd?	
a) run	b) lined	c) plan	d) done
5 I don't go to movies o	or watch much television, s	so my knowledge of	culture is somewhat
limited.			
a) similar	b) infamous	c) popular	d) unknown
6 She said that she wo	rked for the UN organisation	on, but later we discove	red that it was not
the			
a) form	b) case	c) plot	d) rhyme
7 There is usually a spe	ecial of stamps fo	or the memory of Octobe	er victory 1973.
a) tissue	b) biography	c) choice	d) issue
8 On a train, a passeng	er must standof	f the doors for their safe	ty.
a) fair	b) clear	c) clearly	d) fairly
No one can stop her	what she choose	25.	
a) buy	b) to buy	c) buying	d) to buying
10 My friend seems	weight.		
a) losing	b) to losing	c) to be lost	d) to have lost
11 You keep a	bout your ex-fiancée. No v	vonder she left you.	
a) talk	b) talking	c) to talk	d) to talking
12 I want to work abroa	d, but not if it means	to live without frier	nds. I don't like that.
a) having	b) to have	c) to having	d) have
(13) Ali was alarmed	the new chairman of	the company the follov	ving week.
a) to see	b) see	c) to seeing	d) seeing
14 We don't allow anyor	neany noise at n	ight.	
a) to make	b) making	c) to making	d) make
15 My father always end	courages early.		
a) to sleep	b) to sleeping	c) sleeping	d) us to sleeping
16 I regret my	wife that I want no one,	but Mona to be my ass	sistant as she thought the
other way.			
a) to tell	b) telling	c) tell	d) to telling

Al Adwaa Unit Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

	_			
1 know you are gener	ous. The antonyr	ms of "generous"	are and	•••••••
a) helpful	b) miser	c) mean	d) honor	e) open-handed
2 My phone disappear	ed and I had to	for it every	where.	
a) research	b) take	c) look	d) lock	e) search
Choose the correct ans	swer from a, b, c	or d:		
3 My grandfather's gar	age is full of	which he use	s to fix cars.	
a) barrows	b) gravels		c) tools	d) mice
4 There was a power fa	ilure for an hour	last night, so we	had to use	
a) wax	b) sunlight	•	c) candlelight	d) highlight
5 His mistakes n	nake me angry. H	le never seems t	o learn from them.	
a) enjoyable	b) popular		c) repeated	d) pleasant
6 Technology has	our life easier a	and more comfo	rtable.	
a) enjoyed	b) made		c) spent	d) done
🤊 Ian hour hand	dling business on	his laptop. He is	very gentle.	
a) heard	b) took		c) made	d) spent
8 My job is different	yours. I'm a	surgeon and you	ı are an engineer.	
a) with	b) in		c) at	d) from
I regret to help	her. She proved	l to be very gree	dy.	
a) to promise	b) promising	g	c) to be promising	d) promise
10 Stop You are	giving me a head	dache.		
a) to shout	b) shouted		c) shouting	d) to shouting
11 Most parents remem	ber their o	children to the fu	ınfair when they w	ere young.
a) to take	b) take		c) taking	d) to taking
12 I think it's no good	up late as it	is harmful to yo	ur health.	
a) staying	b) to staying	9	c) to stay	d) stay
13 We to take a b	reak before finish	ning our mission		
a) denied	b) avoided		c) imagined	d) refused
14 My mother has diffic	ultyas she	e can't breathe w	ell.	
a) sleep	b) in sleep		c) sleeping	d) to sleep
15 It's no use with	h him. Everything	g is over.		
a) discuss	b) to discus	55	c) discussing	d) discussed
16 Would you mind	me to the clul	b?		
a) drive	b) to drive		c) of driving	d) driving
50 Part 1				

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Click!" That's the sound of a seat belt locking in place. Seat belts save lives and that's a fact. When you drive a car and it crashes; what's going to stop your body? Will it be the windshield or your seat belt?

Some people think that seat belts are uncomfortable, but at least it's better than sticking to the windshield. Wearing a seat belt is both cooler and more comfortable than the alternatives. If you are not wearing your seat belt, you can hop around the car and slide in and out of your seat easily. But, you are also more likely to die or suffer serious injuries. You also have to stay in your seat. But, you are much more likely to walk away unharmed from a car accident.

How about giving money away? When you don't wear your seat belt, you are begging to give your money away. That's because if you're riding in a car, and you don't have a seat belt on, the police can fine you.

Wearing a seat belt does not make you invincible. You can still get hurt or killed while wearing your seat belt. But wearing them has proven to be safer than driving without them. You are much less likely to be killed or seriously injured in a car wreck if you are wearing a seat belt. So why not take the safer way?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) Car Accidents: Ways That We Can Prevent Them
 - b) Slow Down: Save Lives By Driving Slower
 - c) Seat Belts: Wear Them to Survive Any Wreck
 - d) Why Not? Improve Your Odds with Seat Belts
- (18) Which best expresses the author's main purpose in writing this text?
 - a) To inform readers about seat belt laws.
 - b) To persuade readers to wear seat belts.
 - c) To entertain readers with stories and jokes about seat belts.
 - d) To describe what car accidents are like without seat belts.
- (19) Which best describes the text structure in the fourth paragraph?
 - a) Compare and contrast.

b) Chronological order.

c) Sequential order.

- d) Problem and solution.
- 20 Which best defines the word "alternatives" as it is used in the third paragraph?
 - a) Being safe
- b) Being unsafe.
- c) Other choices.
- d) Driving fast.
- (21) Which best expresses the main idea of the fifth paragraph?
 - a) Seat belts are a waste of money.

- b) People don't like to give money away.
- c) Not wearing a seat belt may cost you.
- d) Seat belt laws save lives.
- (22) Which is not mentioned by the author?
 - a) Not wearing a seat belt can be expensive.
 - b) Penalties for not wearing a seat belt should increase.
 - c) Seat belts keep you from flying through the windshield.
 - d) Wearing a seat belt is cooler than suffering an injury.

23	Which best	explains wh	v the author starts	his essay v	with the word "click"?

- a) He is trying to scare readers.
- b) He is trying to get the reader's attention.
- c) He is trying to remind readers how seat belts sound when clasped.
- d) He is trying to describe what it's like to ride in a car.

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- إن مستقبل الحياة على الأرض يتوقف على نجاح الجهود التي نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئي.

- a) The future of life on earth depends on the successful of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.
- b) The future of life on earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environment pollution.
- c) The future of life on earth independent on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental population.
- d) The future of life on earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Scientific researchers have proved that the early experiences of childhood have an effect on man's personality.

- a) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب الحديثة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
- أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن الخبرات المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
 - c) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
 - d) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على سلوك الإنسان.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:	
"Different ways of supporting the community"	
	••••

26





New Hello!

الصف الأول الثانوى الأول الثانوى الأول الثانوى الأول الثانوى الأول

Teacher's Guide جليل المعلم



Teacher's Guide















Main Book Answers

Part 2

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) special
- 2. d) giant
- 3. d) Ecotourism
- 4. b) unique
- 5. c) advantages

- 6. a) exist
- 7. a) Environment
- 8. c) conservationist
- 9. b) trekking
- 10. b) swell

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) make
- 2. c) temporary
- 3. c) limited
- 4. b) crowded
- 5. d) environmentally

- 6. a) catch
- 7. c) to
- 8. c) close
- 9. c) least
- 10. d) made



Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) souvenirs
- 2. c) endangered
- **3. b)** drop
- 4. c) lonely
- 5. a) isolated

- 6. b) include
- 7. a) taught
- 8. c) got to
- 9. c) everyday
- 10. d) including

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1. b) spicy
- 2. c)go
- 3. c) normal
- 4. b) environmentally friendly
- 5. d)b&c
- 6. b) unique
- 7. a) biologist
- 8. d)introduced
- 9. b) endanger
- 10. a) protect

- 11. a) coral reefs
- 12. a) impact
- 13. a) sustainable
- 14. d) attractions
- 15. d) destination
- 16. b) conservationists
- 17. c) materials
- 18. b) Ecotourism
- 19. a) swelled
- 20. b) trekking

- 21. d) ecosystem
- 22. c) off
- 23. b) do
- 24. b) sustainable
- 25. d) bank
- 26. d) gigantic/ e) colossal
- **27.** a) seek/ c) face
- 28. c) exceptional/ d) special
- 29. d) close/ e) near
- 30. b) Finally/ e) In the end

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) received
- 2. c) in
- 3. d) the other day

- 4. c) went
- 5. c) came

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) were having
- 2. c) in
- **3. d)** rang
- 4. c) were playing
- 5. d) lasted
- 6. c) was studying
- 7. d) was painting
- 8. b) were you doing
- 9. d) was landing
- 10. d) was being watched
- 11. a) didn't use

- **12. c)** use
- 13. c) was driving
- 14. b) didn't use to
- 15. d) was cooking
- **16. b)** fell
- 17. c) was washing
- 18. c) was sleeping
- 19. b) was being chased
- 20. d) While
- 21. b) Did you have
- 22. c) worked

- 23. c) used to sleep
- 24. c) to getting
- 25. b) didn't use to
- 26. a) worked
- 27. c) no longer/used
- 28. a) he sleeps early now
- 29. b) during my lunch
- 30. d) We didn't go out last night.
- 31. c) Did you liked my present?

Test yourself Exercises

- 1. c) population
- 2. b) victims
- 3. d) isolated
- 4. c) fussy
- 5. c) along
- 6. c) internal
- 7. c) catch
- 8. a) impact
- 9. d) sustainable
- 10. a) trekked

- 11. b) conservationists
- **12. a)** coast
- **13.** b) went
- 14. a) sound
- **15. b)** takes
- 16. b) dropped
- 17. c) was being prepared
- 18. a) was thinking
- **19. b)** learnt
- 20. c) I was having

- 21. a) were you doing
- **22. c)** went
- 23. d) used to
- 24. d) worked
- 25. a) were watching
- 26. d) usually went
- 27. c) found
- 28. a) was taken
- 29. d) visited
- 30. b) was stolen



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

)

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) relaxing
- 2. c) castle
- 3. d) noisy
- 4. b) resorts
- 5. a) amazing

- 6. a) brilliant
- 7. b) active
- 8. d) actually
- 9. c) expects
- 10. c) temples

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) stuck
- 2. b) of
- 3. a) peaceful
- 4. a) peacefully

- 5. d) taking
- 6. b) over the moon
- 7. c) fascinating
- 8. c) worrying

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) adults
- 2. b) atmosphere
- 3. c) robbed
- 4. d) stole

- 5. c) explore
- **6. a)** find
- 7. d) teenager
- 8. b) discovered

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1. b) relax
- 2. b) modern
- 3. b) discovered
- 4. d) teenagers
- 5. d) upset
- 6. d) gardener
- 7. c) actually
- 8. a) balcony
- 9. c) peaceful
- 10. d) ancient

- 11. a) robbed
- **12. b)** stole
- 13. a) transport
- 14. c) stressed
- 15. d) boring
- 16. b) perform
- 17. b) climate
- 18. b) stuck
- 19. d) support
- 20. b) explored

- 21. a) discovered
- 22. c) grow
- 23. b) tiny
- 24. d) resorts
- 25. d) make
- **26.** b) of
- 27. b) on board/e) aboard
- 28. b) ugly/d) awful
- 29. c) kids/d) children
- 30. b) dull/d) boring

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) was sleeping
- 2. c) my stay
- 3. a) On
- 4. c) didn't go
- 5. b) was walking
- 6. b) during
- 7. b) was helping
- 8. a) didn't hear
- 9. d) was working
- 10. d) when
- 11. b) worked

- 12. b) was watching
- 13. c) was revising
- 14. c) didn't break
- 15. c) during
- 16. d) stole
- 17. d) were
- 18. a) found
- 19. a) when
- 20. c) being examined
- 21. a) sleep
- 22. b) had studied

- 23. d) had met
- 24. d) seemed
- 25. c) worked
- 26. b) was a past habit
- 27. b) The speaker
- 28. a) I no longer work for it
- 29. c) Mona and her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.
- 30. b) It was me.
- **31. c)** not fat
- 32. b) didn't get

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) strange
- 2. d) in
- 3. a) tiny
- 4. b) climate
- 5. b) crowded
- 6. c) aboard
- **7. d**) quiet
- •
- **8. d)** make
- 9. a) stuck
- 10. c) fascinated

- 11. b) awful
- .12. c) teenager
- 13. d) boring
- 14. b) ancient
- 15. c) over
- **16. c)** told
- **17. d)** doesn't
- 18. c) was taking
- 19. a) was studying
- 20. c) didn't belong

- 21. d) was being fixed
- **22. b)** During
- 23. c) had
- 24. d) being bathed
- 25. b) isn't
- **26. c)** While
- 27. c) am not used to
- 28. c) During
- 29. b) While
- 30. a) During

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 1)

- 1. b) scar
- 2. c) grabbed
- 3. a) swords
- 4. c) inn
- 5. b) pale
- 6. b) cliff
- 7. a) dare
- 8. a) guard

- 9. c) blind
- **10. c)** owes
- 11. b) adventures
- 12. a) realised
- 13. d) admiral
- 14. c) fell over
- 15. c) gun

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

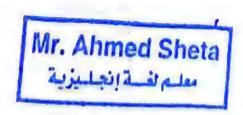
- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. b) have beneficial effect
 - 2. b) brings about primitive and isolated communities
 - 3. c) to exceed speed limits
 - 4. b) people very much like to have cars
- 5. a) provide job opportunities
- 6. d) a & c
- 7. b) Solving the problems of cars and roads

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1. ﴾ الشباب هم العمود الفقري لأية أمة وقاعدة تقدمها. لذا يجب على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
- 2. (a) يعرف الإنسان جيدا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. مع أخذ ذلك في الاعتبار، يجب أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
 - 3. تولى الحكومة اهتمامـًا كبيرا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.
 - 4. a) ينبغى أن يكون للوالدين دور فعال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم للمشاركة في تقدم بلدهم.
 - 5- ٥) مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم هو ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا ملايين من الأموال عليه.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6. c) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.
- 7. a) The housing problem has forced many young men to refuse marriage because of the difficulty of obtaining an apartment.
- **8.** b) The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
- 9. a) All we dream about and hope to get is real opportunities for education, work and health care so that we can live a happy life.
- 10. c) We all consider the internet a miracle of this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all fields of life.



Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) believable/ e) ordinary
- 2. a) endangered/d) in danger
- 3. b) unique
- 4. d)included
- 5. b) biology
- 6. a) exotic
- 7. c)stuck
- 8. b)climate

- 9. b)active
- 10. c) During
- 11. b) was going
- 12. a) began
- 13. d) were you doing
- 14. b) was coming
- 15. b) were
- 16. d)lives in another city now

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. a) he was getting a tattoo
- 18. d) they think it is fashionable
- 19. c) brave
- 20. a) the influence of friends
- 21. d) Why people get tattoos
- 22. a) wealth
- 23. b) Jack

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- a) The acquisition of the English language can be done through watching movies, listening to songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.
- 25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:
 - d) من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا إلى المياه في مصر في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب أن نرشد استخدامنا للمياه؛ وإلا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
- 26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

 Left to the student.



Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) community
- 2. a) track
- 3. c) agreement
- 4. b) generous

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) injured
- 2. b) attacked
- 3. a) get
- 4. d) of
- 5. b) founder

- 5. d) donates
- 6. a) knowledge
- 7. d) roared



- 6. d) assist
- 7. c) mean
- 8. b) desirable
- 9. **d)** part
- 10. d) all mentioned

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) surname
- 2. d) others
- 3. a) for

- 4. d) respectable
- 5. d) transplant

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1. c) speed
- 2. b) founder
- 3. d) recognised
- 4. d) pressure
- 5. c) generous
- 6. c) task
- 7. a) checked
- 8. a) health
- 9. a) intelligence
- 10. a) admiring
- 11. a) another

- 12. d) charities
- 13. d) transfusion
- 14. a) desire
- 15. a) injured
- 16. c) prestige
- 17. a) documentary
- 18. d) foundations
- 19. c) short-term
- 20. b) generation
- 21. c) nickname
- 22. d) out

- 23. b) gets
 - 24. c) donors
 - 25. b) persuasion
 - 26. c) beneficial
 - 27. d) part
 - 28. b) generosity
 - 29. a) persuade
 - 30. a) study/c) to study
 - 31. d) reach/e) achieve
 - 32. a) esteem/b) influence
 - 33. a) occurred/b) took place

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) give

- 12. c) visited
- 23. d) is

- 2. d) opens
- 13. a) visited
- 24. d) was done

3. a) write

- 14. b) is never
- **25. d**) finish

4. b) move

- 15. c) comes
- 26. c) never

5. b) went

- 16. a) Do
- 27. b) am used to walking

- 6. a) used to
- 17. c) went
- 28. b) don't open

- 7. c) snows
- **18. d)** saw

29. c) timetable

- 8. d) spent
- 19. a) watches
- 30. d) this is his permanent place of living

- 9. a) leaves
- 20. c) Is

31. d) the final match time is set to start at 10 o'clock by a timetable

- 10. a) don't read
- 21. b) go

32. a) everyone in our family loves Liverpool

- 11. d) is used to
- 22. b) is always

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) transplant
- 11. a) pressure
- 21. c) isn't used to

- 2. c) respectable
- 12. c) generosity
- 22. d) are encouraged

- 3. d) research
- 13. b) generous
- 23. a) finish/will go

4. b) view

- **14. c)** pen name
- **24. b)** turns

- 5. b) founded
- **15. d**) praise

25. c) never

- 6. a) relationship
- **16.** c) runs

26. b) usually goes

- 7. c) benefit
- 17. b) always

27. a) didn't rain

8. b) share

18. a) is always

28. c) always

- 9. c) amongst
- 19. a) took

29. c) had

- 10. d) persuasive
- **20. c)** starts

30. b) was punished



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) employs
- 2. d) personality
- 3. b) signs
- 4. a) recent
- 5. c) monitor

- 6. b) disappeared
- 7. d) experts
- 8. a) local
- 9. d)skill
- 10. d) aims

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) in
- 2. d)gave
- 3. c)located
- 4. a) location
- 5. d)lost

- 6. a) remote
- d)to
- d) doing
- 9. d) amazement
- 10. d)on

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) on
- 2. c) is
- 3. b) owed
- 4. c) borrowed
- 5. b) pharmacist

- 6. b) recent
- 7. c) as
- 8. a)for
- 9. d)oculist
- 10. b) own

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) aim
- 2. c) follow
- a) nearby 3.
- d) change
- 5. a) appearance
- 6. b) employ
- 7. b) headquarters
- d) movement 8.
- 9. d) protect
- 10. a) location
- 11. a) paw prints

- 12. c) protection
- 13. b) killings
- 14. a) monitor
- 15. a) am
- 16. d) community
- 17. b) empathy
- 18. a) on
- 19. d) to
- 20. a) employ
- 21. b) monitors
- 22. d) missing

- 23. d) on
- 24. a) on
- 25. c)do
- 26. d) all mentioned
- 27. b) amazed
- 28. b) hire/e) appoint
- 29. b) defence/ c) resistance

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

- 30. c)from/ e)against
- 31. b) looking/d) searching

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) are grown
- 2. a) is watched
- 3. d) smokes
- 4. b) are read
- 5. b) never
- 6. a) contain
- 7. d) were painted
- 8. d) are taught
- 9. b) isn't used
- 10. b) are asked
- 11. d) give

- 12. c) was paved
- 13. c) is prepared
- 14 b) is affected
- 14. b) is affected
- 15. d) is serviced
- 16. a) are given
- 17. b) is included
- 18. b) are given
- 19. a) are usually watered
- 20. d) are made
- 21. a) are made

22. a) meet

- 23. a) will take off
- 24. d) sign
- 25. a) is always punished
- 26. d) are born
- 27. b) is he
- 28. b) need
- 29. a) Was
- 30. a) was hurt
- 31. c) fact
- **32.** c) all the students were told about the surprise

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) tribe
- 2. b) empathy
- 3. c) owed
- 4. c) print
- 5. d) as
- 6. c) Hunting
- 7. c) skills
- 8. a) monitor
- 9. b) desires
- 10. a) desire

- 11. d) sense
- 12. d) employs
- 13. b) prestige
- 14. a) guardian
- 15. b) recent
- 16. c) grow
- 17. b) had
- 18. a) use
- 19. a) is shown
- 20. d) are needed

- 21. b) is cleaned
- 22. c) was arrested
- 23. c) are protected
- 24. d) is known
- 25. a) are watched
- 26. b) is brought
- 27. c) am not allowed
- 28. b) feel
- 29. c) aren't discussed
- 30. d) an oculist examined my eyes

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 2)

- 1. c) head
- 2. b) escape
- 3. a) clue
- 4. c) magistrate
- 5. d) crew
- 6. d) stolen
- 7. a) servants
- 8. b) inside

- 9. c) prepare
- 10. d) directions
- 11. b) includes
- 12. c) describe
- 13. a) hidden
- 14. b) burying
- 15. b) robbed

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- (1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. c) no one can have his own way all the time
 - 2. a) people usually want to have their own way
 - 3. d) right and thoughtful
 - 4. c) behave in a responsible way
 - 5. c) community
 - 6. c) bad behaviours
 - 7. d) all mentioned



(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1. 🖒 يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.
- 2. يمكن أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم في أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.
 - البشر هم أكبر تهديد لبقاء الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض بسبب آثار تغير المناخ.
 - ليندل آباؤنا جهودا كبيرة لإرضائنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وأمنة لنا. نحن حقا مدينون لهم بالكثير.
- حلى الصعيد الدولى، مثل صلاح مصر في مسابقات الشباب، وحصل على الميدالية البرونزية في بطولة كأس الأمم
 الافريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

- **6.** c) Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, is considered a talented player with good morals.
- 7. b) Education is the basis for progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing.
- 8. a) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a good education.
- 9. a) Egypt is waiting for the efforts of scholars and the people of thinking and creativity, and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.
- 10. a) Despite the great scientific progress, there are still many species of animals at risk of extinction.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) continuing/c) lasting
- 2. a) in/c) on
- 3. a) for
- 4. b) speed
- 5. d) monitor
- 6. d) responsibility
- 7. b) transfusion
- 8. b) injured

- 9. b) travelling
- 10. a) had
- 11. a) scored
- 12. d) visits
- 13. a) is always
- 14. c) wasn't allowed
- 15. a) used to stay up late
- 16. c) is burnt

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) predator
- 18. b) in danger
- 19. d) can change their skin colour
- 20. a) distract the predator
- 21. b) helps it hide from the attackers
- 22. b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
- 23. a) The Magician Octopuses

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- b) All of us dream of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame comes from hard work, patience, and also suffering.
- 25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

عنى الوقت الحاضر، تولى الحكومة العصرية اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 1, 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) look for/d) search for
- 2. c) comfortable/d) calm
- 3. d) endanger
- 4. c) sunbathe
- 5. d) crowded
- 6. a) peaceful
- 7. d) pressure
- 8. b) sense

- 9. d) responsibility
- 10. b) was leaving
- 11. b) During
- **12.** a) lived
- 13. b) had had
- 14. a) is always
- 15. b) doesn't
- 16. a) saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. c) Ecosystem
- 18. b) pink sand
- 19. b) remote
- 20. b) going diving
- 21. a) a limited number
- 22. b) Ecotourism and its importance
- 23. a) the Red Sea Coast

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- b) Every student must work hard and not waste their time sitting for hours in front of the TV in order to achieve everything, they dream of in the future.
- 25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

d) بدون الثقة أو الإيمان بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.



United (poor



Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) merchant
- 2. c) empty
- 3. d) remove
- 4. a) similar
- 5. b) miserable

- 6. c) theatre
- 7. a) support
- 8. d) plump
- 9. c) honest
- **10. d)** lucky

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) after
- 2. b) owe
- 3. c) break
- 4. b) prison
- 5. d) adore

- 6. b) exhausted
- 7. a) twins
- 8. a) reward
- 9. a) earner
- 10. c) of

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) career
- 2. d) instrument
- 3. b) salary

- 4. c) earns
- 5. d) hardly

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1. c) tired
- 2. c) record
- 3. b) spend
- 4. b) rewards
- 5. d) characters
- 6. a) break
- 7. c) pay
- 8. d) lucky
- 9. a) entertains
- 10. d) debts
- 11. c) storyteller
- 12. d) empty

- 13. b) owe
- 14. d) criminal
- 15. d) opportunity
- 16. b) deserves
- 17. d) miss
- 18. c) rewarding
- 19. c) machines
- 20. c) fee
- 21. b) make
- 22. c) prison
- 23. c) won
- 24. c) miser

- 25. b) misery
- 26. d) rat race
- 27. d) removed
- 28. b) merchandise
- **29. a)** after
- 30. a) earn/c) make
- 31. d) fat/e) thick
- 32. a) care for/c) look after
- 33. b) lend/e) return
- 34. b) The disabled/c) Disabled people
- 35. c) weary/ e) exhausted

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) for

12. c) For

23. b) for

- 2. b) have developed
- **13. d)** since

24. c) three times this week

- 3. a) retired
- 14. d) has been
- 25. d) has been

- 4. b) haven't finished
- 15. a) haven't seen
- 26. a) has been said

- 5. c) have been lost
- 16. b) Since
- 27. b) Has the report been

- 6. d) have won
- 17. b) already
- 28. d) has already been repaired

7. d) ever

- 18. a) have been to
- 29. b) haven't eaten

- 8. d) have ever read
- 19. b) has gone
- 30. c) has painted

- 9. d) have found
- **20. c)** ever

31. d) she spent all the summer in Marina

- 10. c) have just had
- **21. d)** saw

32. b) is back now

11. b) 's lost

22. b) was paved

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) debt

- 11. d) antonyms
- 21. d) has been hacked

- 2. d) theatre
- **12.** a) rats

22. b) was sent

- 3. b) temples
- **13. a)** debts

23. d) Has the report already been printed?

4. d) room

- 14. d) merchant
- 24. b) for

- 5. a) support
- 15. a) found

25. a) since

6. c) career

16. a) for

26. b) has gained

- 7. c) miserable
- 17. a) travelled
- 27. d) started

8. d) works

18. b) already

28. c) went

b) imprisonment

- 19. d) have ever read
- 29. a) has gone

10. c) plump

- 20. a) has been
- 30. d) has washed



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) admitted
- 2. b) voluntary
- 3. c) experience
- 4. a) planning
- 5. c) describe

- 6. a) trust
- 7. b) cultures
- 8. a) painted
- 9. c) trick
- 10. d) adults

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) made
- 2. d) disability
- 3. b) fortunate
- 4. c) on
- 5. a) done

- 6. b) spend
- 7. a) deny
- 8. c) associated
- 9. b) uncommon
- 10. c) Telling

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) Later
- **2. d**) take
- 3. c) watching

- 4. d) thousands of pounds
- 5. b) latter

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1. c) telling
- 2. b) plan
- 3. b) do
- 4. b) main
- 5. c) touch
- 6. d) break
- 7. a) latter
- 8. a) trust
- 9. d) stepfather
- 10. d) admitted
- 11. c) cultures

- 12. d) association
- 13. c) paint
- 14. d) admitted
- 15. a) dreamer
- 16. d) tricks
- 17. b) experience
- 18. b) voluntary
- 19. c) make
- 20. a) stepmother
- 21. d) down
- 22. c) disability

- 23. a) associated
- **24. d)** play/on
- 25. c) description
- 26. d) a difference
- 27. b) cultured
- 28. b) free/d) willingly
- 29. b) major/e) main
- 30. c) married/d) is married to
- 31. b) doubt/d) disbelieve
- 32. d) discovered/e) found out
- 33. b) unfamiliar/e) unusual

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) since
- b) has worked
- a) have ever met
- c) since
- d) never
- c) already
- 7. b) since
- c) has rained
- b) never
- 10. d) has just died
- 11. c) has been warned
- 12. d) since

- 13. a) never
- 14. b) has been
- **15.** b) has your father been
- 16. b) cooked
- 17. a) travelled
- **18. d)** when
- **19. d)** since
- 20. c) has been playing
- 21. b) has been
- **22. c)** since
- 23. c) have ever visited
- 24. c) did

- 25. a) has been studying
- 26. b) has written
- 27. b) has gone
- 28. b) Since
- 29. b) for how long
- 30. a) have been to
- 31. c) were
- 32. b) I haven't played football since Monday
- 33. d) It is the first time to see a student who is clever like Marwan
- 34. c) he still works as a waiter

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) experience
- 2. a) main
- 3. c) association
- d) opportunity
- d) solutions
- b) surprise
- 7. d) the disabled
- 8. b) of
- 9. b) cultural
- 10. c) cultured

- 11. d) banks
- 12. a) went
- 13. a) common
- 14. a) planning
- 15. b) community
- 16. b) in
- 17. a) since
- 18. c) since
- **19. a)** lived
- 20. b) just now

- 21. a) has fallen
- 22. c) were taken
- 23. d) has been made
- 24. b) have arrested
- 25. d) when
- 26. a) for
- **27. a)** is still
- 28. a) has worked
- 29. c) was given
- 30. c) Were you

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 3)

- 1. c) harbour
- 2. b) gang
- 3. d) parrots
- 4. d) patient
- 5. b) clues
- 6. d) destination
- 7. b) mutiny
- 8. d) barrel

- 9. a) crutch
- 10. c) secret
- 11. a) pirates
- **12. b)** blind
- 13. d) bank
- 14. c) crew
- 15. d) explain

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. d) can treat a lot of diseases
 - 2. a) natural remedies
 - 3. a) herbalist
 - 4. c) it cures and protects from side effects
 - 5. a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits
 - 6. c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
 - 7. d) willow tree

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1. (b) علينا بذل جمود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل؛ وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد كذلك.
- 2. d يعتبر الإرهاب من أسوأ العشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدا، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
- 3. ع) يعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل الشرور. ويعتبر السبب الرئيس للانحراف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم والحروب بين الدول.
- 4. عناك الكثير من الأشخاص الذيـن يعانون من البؤس؛ لأنهـم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المـال ليحظوا بحياة كريمة أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.
 - أ تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

- **6.** b) Parents, teachers and the media play an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
- 7. c) There is no doubt that we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are inventions that make everything easy to happen.
- 8. a) It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their interference in nature due to their greed and stupidity.
- 9. c) The Egyptian government must pay attention to the development of medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.
- 10. a) The establishment of many school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) become/d) get
- 2. a) soft/b) delicate
- 3. c) emptied
- 4. b) remove
- 5. a) discovered
- 6. a) opportunity
- 7. d) pay
- 8. c) gained

- 9. d) reward
- 10. c) have learnt
- 11. b) haven't met
- 12. c) for
- 13. c) has cleaned
- 14. d) saw
- 15. d) since
- 16. a) haven't done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 18. c) modern
- 19. b) The writer is not going to work.

17. b) liked his appearance

- 20. c) careless
- 21. c) 75 pounds.
- 22. c) his photos
- 23. c) His mum paid for him when he reached home.

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- a) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.
- 25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

لعتبر معارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمرا مهمـًا للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: Left to the student.



Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) connection
- 2. d) follow
- 3. c) article
- 4. d) magazine
- 5. a) teammates

- 6. b) extra
- 7. c) teenagers
- 8. a) grade
- 9. b) face
- 10. d) cool

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) advice
- 2. b) relax
- 3. b) for
- 4. c) make
- 5. d) to

- 6. a) personable
- 7. b) stress
- 8. d) avoid
- 9. a) preferred
- 10. b) ourselves

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) after
- 2. a) dress
- 3. d) Life

- 4. b) papers
- 5. d) no word

Vocabulary Exercises

- **1. d**) join
- 2. a) article
- 3. **b)** wear
- 4. c) useful
- 5. c) noticeboard
- 6. b) granted
- 7. c) follow
- 8. d) stressful
- 9. b) stressed
- 10. d) friendship
- 11. a) contact
- 12. a) with

- 13. b) personal
- 14. a) personnel
- 15. d) stressful
- 16. b) magazine
- 17. c) cool
- 18. d) conversation
- **19. a)** grade
- 20. b) put on
- 21. d) teenagers
- 22. a) teenage
- 23. b) about
- 24. b) Doing

- 25. d) on their own
- 26. a) studying
- 27. d) individual
- 28. a) busy
- 29. b) to
- 30. c) go online
- **31. d)** make
- 32. a) passed/d) succeeded in
- 33. c) on his own/ e) alone
- 34. a) confront/b) encounter
- 35. c) neglected/ e) ignored

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) the
- 2. a)a
- 3. a)a

- 4. () the
- 5. b) an



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) an
- 2. c) the
- 3. c) the
- 4. a)a
- 5. d) no article
- 6. d) no article
- 7. d) no article
- 8. c) the
- 9. c) the
- 10. a) a
- 11. b) the
- 12. a) a/no article

- 13. c) the
- 14. d) no article
- 15. c) the
- 16. d) no article
- 17. () the
- 18. d) slower/the
- 19. a)a
- 20. d) no article
- 21. b) an
- 22. b) The plane has
- 23. a) A
- 24. c) the

- 25. d) no article
- 26. b) an
- 27. d)-/-
- 28. d) no article/no article
- 29. c) an/the
- 30. c)-/the
- 31. d) no article/the
- 32. a) The/no article
- 33. d) no article/an
- 34. b) the Italian language
- 35. c) the giraffe has a long neck

Test yourself Exercises

- 1. join
- 2. b) favourite
- 3. extra
- 4. d) practice
- 5. c) individual
- 6. b) Life
- 7. c) Put on
- 8. d) noticeboard
- 9. b) faces
- 10. c) pronounces

- 11. d) pronunciation
- **12. d)** give
- 13. c) personal
- 14. c) advice
- 15. b) stressed
- 16. d) no article
- 17. d) no article
- 18. c) the
- 19. d) no article
- 20. o no article/no article

- 21. c) the
- **22. b)** ants
- 23. c) the
- 24. a) a
- 25. d) no article
- 26. d) no article
- 27. a) a
- 28. b) a/no article
- 29. c) the
- 30. d) no article

Unit 4 ()



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) bully
- 2. d) negative
- 3. b) host
- 4. c) laugh
- 5. a) behaves

- 6. b) debate
- 7. c) soon
- 8. a) laugh
- 9. b) list

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) took
- 2. c) turns
- 3. a) effect
- 4. c) on
- 5. d) Policing

- 6. a) positive
- 7. b) cover
- 8. d) hospitable
- 9. c) far
- 10. d) with

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) debate
- 2. d) twelve-year-old
- 3. c) week's

- 4. c) either
- 5. a) off

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1. d) social
- 2. c) lonely
- 3. d) hates
- 4. a) turns
- 5. c) hostess
- 6. c) dropped
- 7. b) bullying
- 8. c) cheat
- 9. a) copy 10. b) hostess
- 11. c) debate
- 12. d) effect

- 13. a) affected
- 14. b) laugh
- 15. a) phone-in
- 16. b) too
- 17. b) lonely
- 18. a) experiences
- 19. a) list
- 20. c) take
- 21. c) terrible
- 22. b) nursing
- 23. a) nurse
- 24. d) about

- 25. b) concerned
- 26. c) different
- 27. b) on
- 28. d) along
- 29, b) at
- **30.** b) moved
- 31. c) disgusting/e) offensive
- 32. a) brave/c) bold
- 33. a) resumed/d) proceeded
- 34. b) too/d) as well
- 35. c) any more/e) any longer

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- a) much
- b) is made
- 3. a) some
- 4. a) wasn't
- 5. c) are
- 6. a) want
- 7. b) a
- 8. c) some
- 9. a) many
- 10. d) some
- 11. b) Much

- 12. a) was stolen
- 13. d) isn't
- 14. d) tube
- 15. c) much
- 16. b) few
- 17. a) much
- 18. d) some
- **19. c)** any
- 20. c) quantity
- 21. a) is
- 22. a) was.

- **23. c)** keeps
- 24. c) was
- 25. c) is insufficient
- 26. d) a lot
- 27. b) a
- 28. b) How much
- 29. a) is
- 30. c) a hair
- 31. a) litre/a kilo
- 32. b) He told me an important information about the crime.
- 33. a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) officer
- 2. b) debates
- 3. a) three-year-business plan 13. a) cheat
- 4. d) rucksack
- 5. c) nasty
- c) discussion
- 7. a) scared
- b) line
- 9. c) nursing
- 10. d) nursery

- 11. c) bullied
- 12. d) cheating
- 14. d) a list
- 15. b) hiding
- 16. a) a
- 17. b) much
- 18. b) is
- **19. c)** a little
- 20. b) Some

- 21. d) the papers
- **22. c)** a means
- 23. c) much
- 24. b) many
- 25. a) Do
- 26. a) is
- 27. d) some bread
- 28. c) aren't
- 29. a) The
- 30. d) jar

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 4)

- 1. b) trust
- 2. a) whistled
- 3. c) branch
- 4. a) relax
- 5. d) shore
- 6. b) diseases
- 7. c) surprised
- 8. a) on

- 9. d) expression
- 10. c) along
- 11. b) pretty
- 12. a) excited
- 13. b) hills
- 14. d) correct
- 15. a) gun

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. b) people, their community and their society
 - 2. d) improve people's income and bring peace
 - 3. a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly
 - 4. d) strengthen their flexibility in life
 - 5. a) get paid competitive salaries
 - 6. d) enough classrooms and separate toilets
 - 7. a) How Can Education Be Good?

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1. d) يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء ساعات في الدردشة معهم.
 - تساهم المكتبات المدرسية كثيرا في تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.
 - الا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون. بعضهم يستحق الاحترام والبعض الآخر بغيض.
 - علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
- أي تسعى المؤسسة التعليمية إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطي وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

- **6. c)** We must all cooperate with the Ministry of Environment to get rid of the huge amounts of garbage in our streets.
- 7. a) Electricity has become an essential part of our lives, as a person cannot live without it.
- **8.** d) It is clear that crimes have increased at a great rate these days. Hardly a day goes by without us hearing about a crime on television or the Internet.
- 9. b) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
- 10. a) Globalisation has a serious effect on developing countries. These countries must begin seriously to benefit from the fruits of technology.



Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) dressed in/d) wearing
- 2. a) finish/c) end
- 3. a) police
- 4. a) cheating
- 5. c) instead of
- 6. b) the life
- 7. a) favourite
- 8. d) friendships

- 9. d) contact
- 10. c) The
- 11. a)a
- 12. c) some
- 13. d) no article
- 14. d) a glass
- 15. c) The more
- 16. d)a

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. a) clearing
- 18. b) global warming
- 19. c) leads to
- 20. a) environmental
- 21. a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
- 22. c) are already facing
- 23. b) Global Disasters
- 24. Choose the correct English translation:
 - d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.
- 25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

ال كان لزاما على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولي يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:
Left to the student.



Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 3, 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) borrowed money from/e) owe money to

9. c) uncover

2. b) sad/d) depressed

10. a) been to

3. c) voluntary

11. d) has worked

4. b) make

12. c) his marriage

5. d) experience

13. b) many

6. d) scar

14. c) the

7. b) for granted

15. a) a

8. d) stressful

16. c) the

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) work values

18. a) meeting a deadline

19. d) sickness

20. c) under pressure

21. d) making mistakes

22. c) calm

23. b) working under pressure

24. Choose the correct English translation:

c) Poverty and unemployment are a time bomb, if we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer a lot.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

d) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد العمل سوياً لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.



Unit 5



Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) hack
- 2. c) check
- 3. b) device
- 4. a) system
- 5. c) safe

- 6. a) worldwide
- 7. c) security
- 8. d) shopping
- 9. b) criminal
- 10. b) apps

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) particular
- 2. a) communication
- 3. d) electric
- 4. c) take
- 5. b) to

- 6. a) lawful
- 7. c) evacuate
- 8. c) into
- 9. d) imaginative
- 10. a) making

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) task
- 2. d) experience
- 3. c) electrician

- 4. b) enables
- 5. a) mission

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) check
- 2. b) Smartphones
- 3. d) camping
- 4. a) experience
- 5. c) recent
- 6. b) hack
- **7. b)** major
- 8. d) network
- 9. c) latest

11. d) app

10. a) power stations

- **12.** c) by
- 13. c) devices
- **14. b)** survey
- 15. a) Applications
- 16. d) communication
- 17. c) hacked
- 18. a) smart
- 19. d) accident
- 20. c) businesses
- 21. b) advantages
- 22. a) on

- 23. d) development
- 24. d) were capable of
- 25. b) imaginative
- **26. a)** danger
- 27. a) applicable
- 28. a) to
- 29. b) contact/d) communicate with
- 30. b) cooling/e) freezing
- 31. c) evacuate/d) empty
- 32. b) are able to exist/
 - d) are capable of existing

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) will

- 11. b) will be
- 21. b) will pass

2. a) will get

- 12. b) will be sent
- 22. b) is going to be

- 3. b) will probably work
- 13. b) is going to fall
- 23. b) am going to meet

- 4. d) am going to watch
- 14. a) will cut
- 24. d) am going to watch

s. d) will turn

- 15. d) will clean
- 25. a) would participate

6. d) will win

- 16. c) will be
- 26. c) will

- 7. b) is going to crash
- 17. d) is going to buy
- 27. c) will get

- s. a) am going to
- 18. a) will be
- 28. b) request

9. b) will rain

- 19. a) am going to go
- 29. c) Be careful or you are falling.

- 10. b) is going to fall
- 20. a) are going to score
- **30.** d) Mona will probably attend the party tomorrow.

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) particular
- 11. b) create

21. a) would take

- 2. b) communications
- 12. d) technology
- 22. b) will enjoy

- 3. c) flexible
- 13. a) hack

23. d) will be

- 4. d) Lightning
- 14. b) worldwide
- 24. d) will

- 5. d) connected
- 15. a) electric
- 25. b) is going to fall

- 6. a) Security
- **16.** a) will be

26. c) am going to have

7. c) task

- 17. d) will be
- 27. d) is going to wash

- 8. c) petrol
- 18. a) will probably visit
- 28. b) will get

9. d) apps

- 19. a) would pass
- 29. c) does

- 10. a) navigation
- 20. b) is going to meet
- 30. a) am going to live

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. b) three
 - 2. d) old people
 - 3. a) desires
 - 4. c) hardworking

- 5. c) enjoy good and bad things
- 6. d) not many
- 7. c) Periods of life

(2) A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- .1 ويقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات في عالمنا.
- أ في وقت السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلات.
 - العب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورا مهما في تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.
- 4. أني التطور الكبير في الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية ثاني أكسيد الكربون؛ مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.
 - ان آثارنا التاريخية كنوز لا تقدر بثمن، لذا يجب أن نبذل قصارى حهدنا لحمايتها.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6. d) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.
- 7. a) Television has become a means of spreading knowledge and is enjoyed by adults and children alike.
- 8. a) Rural life is more beautiful than city life because of the countryside's fantastic landscapes and pure air.
- d) Man is by nature a lover of nature and beauty, they search for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
- 10. c) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and duties.



Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) minor/d) secondary
- 2. c) every day/e) daily
- 3. b) phishing
- 4. a) scam
- 5. b) personal
- 6. c) flexible
- 7. d) communications
- 8. b) illegally

- 9. a) leaves
- 10. a) are watching
- 11. c) are going to make
- 12. a) will fall
- 13. c) is going to perform
- 14. d) will be
- 15. c) are meeting
- 16. b) is going to be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. a) computer technology
- 18. c) trade and business
- 19. d) stock market
- 20. b) communicate
- 21. a) digital technology
- 22. c) The advantages of globalisation
- 23. b) globalisation

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- d) Reading is considered one of the main and essential means for the renaissance of different peoples and civilisations.
- 25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة ما لم نبذل جهودا لاقتلاعهم، فإننا سنعانى كثيرًا.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.

Unit 6 ()



Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) treasure
- 2. b) hay
- 3. d) digging
- 4. a) lawyer
- 5. a) romantic

- 6. d) kidnapped
- 7. c) biography
- 8. b) serious
- 9. c) Polish
- 10. c) supposes

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) do
- 2. d) joyful
- 3. c) to
- 4. d) poetic
- 5. c) helpful

- 6. d) follow
- 7. d) adventure
- 8. a) popularity
- 9. c) dangerous
- 10. a) losing

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. **b)** into
- 2. b) hijacked
- 3. a) published

- 4. b) autobiography
- 5. c) aged

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- a) poets
- 2. d) gravel
- c) capture
- d) island
- 5. b) hay
- б. c) In
- discuss
- 8. b) literature
- 9. fields
- **10. d)** rhyme

- 11. b) case
- 12. a) popular
- 13. d) strange
- 14. a) a while
- 15. c) Suppose
- **16. b)** rhythm
- 17. a) issue
- 18. a) adventure
- 19. b) plot
- 20. b) keep the gravel walk

- 21. d) variety
- **22. d)** with
- **23. c)** dig
- 24. b) came out/c) was published
- 25. a) turned/b) made
- 26. a) remote/ e) distant
- 27. a) familiar/b) conventional
- 28. a) a success/ c) successful

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) wasting
- 13. a) writing
- 25. d) to joining

- 2. c) to send
- 14. a) trying
- 26. b) to building

- 3. a) to meet
- 15. b) to seeing
- 27. d) to accept

- 4. c) doing
- 16. b) to buy
- **28. b)** going

- 5. a) sharing
- 17. a) to buy
- **29. c)** doing

- 6. b) to treat
- 18. c) spending
- 30. c) denied

- 7. d) coming
- **19. d)** avoid
- 31. c) to phone

- s. d) being
- 20. a) In addition to

- 9. b) to fly
- 21. c) to studying
- 32. a) phoning

- 10. c) to help
- 22. a) visiting
- **33.** d) He objected to visit that frightening place again.

34. c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.

- 11. b) sitting
- 23. a) sailing
- 12. a) to get
- 24. c) to play

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) Pirates
- 11. a) romantic
- 21. b) sleeping

2. c) verse

- 12. b) a success
- 22. d) enjoy

- 3. d) treasure
- 13. c) full-time
- 23. b) to be

- 4. d) locked
- 14. a) into

24. a) to go

- 5. b) came out
- 15. b) fair

1 25. c) reading

- 6. c) kidnapped
- 16. a) to join
- 26. c) objected

- 7. d) all mentioned
- 17. c) going

27. b) to apologise

8. **b**) dig

- 18. d) meeting
- 28. a) cleaning

- 9. a) Currant
- 19. a) to buy
- 29. d) buying

10. d) Hay

- 20. c) stealing
- 30. b) coming

Unit 6



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) hopping
- 2. a) summary
- 3. c) candlelight

- 4. d) broken
- 5. b) clear
- 6. d) brief

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) by
- 2. c) at
- 3. b) dressing
- 4. d) specialist

- 5. b) bright
- 6. c) prejudiced
- 7. c) look for
- 8. a) situated

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) lie
- 2. b) hardly
- 3. c) lied

- 4. a) quite
- 5. c) quit

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- b) fun
- 2. a) had
- 3. b) stay
- 4. c) opinion
- 5. b) grown-ups
- 6. b) hopping
- 7. a) situation
- 8. c) summary
- 9. d) candlelight

- 10. d) rhymes
- 11. d) Rhythm
- 12. c) laid
- 13. a) toys
- 14. d) all mentioned
- 15. c) broken
- 16. a) activities
- 17. c) in brief
- 18. d) playing

- 19. c) for
- 20. a) went
- 21. a) differently
- 22. c) specifically/ d) particularly
- 23. a) dull/b) boring
- 24. b) short/ c) compressed
- 25. d) describes/ e) details
- 26. b) successful/d) a success
- 27. c) aged/d) at the age of

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) have
- 2. d) to understand
- 3. c) to buying
- 4. d) to go
- 5. a) to have
- 6. c) making
- 7. a) parking
- 8. a) trying
- 9. a) staying
- 10. d) talk
- 11. b) to get

- 12. d) to tell
- 13. d) to spend
- 14. d) visiting
- 15. a) breaking
- 16. d) to sign
- 17. a) taking
- 18. b) making
- 19. d) delivering
- **20. b)** to eat
- 21. a) to get
- 22. b) wasting

- 23. a) meeting
- 24. d) not helping
- **25. d)** going
- 26. c) meeting
- 27. c) not to waste
- 28. c) singing
- **29.** c) go
- 30. a) stopped eating
- 31. d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria
- **32.** c) first I remembered, then I did my homework
- 33. b) my mobile isn't with me now

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) literature
- 2. b) makes
- 3. c) length
- 4. a) quiet
- 5. a) breakable
- 6. c) in
- 7. d) hop
- 8. a) activities
- 9. c) candlelight
- 10. a) toy

- 11. b) laid
- 12. a) dress
- 13. b) especially
- 14. d) brief
- 15. b) past
- 16. b) swimming
- 17. d) to go
- 18. a) to leave
- 19. b) to answer
- 20. b) watching

- 21. b) go
- 22. b) studying
- 23. a) meeting
- **24. c**) going
- 25. d) being taken
- **26.** b) to fly
- 27. b) to retire
- 28. b) fancy
- 29. a) stealing
- **30.** a) to pay

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) pirates
- 2. d) defend
- 3. d) contact
- 4. a) fired
- 5. c) defended
- 6. b) including
- 7. d) advantage
- 8. c) prevent

- 9. b) cannon
- 10. a) attacked
- 11. d) reached
- 12. c) weapons
- 13. a) fort
- 14. b) take down
- 15. a) supplies

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

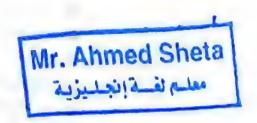
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. d) Defeats.
 - 2. d) One of the greatest football players.
 - 3. a) more popular than
 - 4. a) his bad behaviour
 - 5. b) have achievements in the game
 - 6. a) crazy about
 - 7. c) Asia

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- لعرف الإنسان جيدا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب
 أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.
- إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هي الوسيلة الوحيدة لزيادة دخلنا القومي؛ مما يساعد على رفع مستوى معيشتنا.
- 3. لكل طفل الحق في أن يعيش حياة سعيدة، ويجب على الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما في وسعها للتأكد أن الأطفال يحيون وينمون.
 - 4. قناة السويس هي أكبر معر مائي بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبح مصدرا هاما للدخل القومي.
 - .d 5) تعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الأُخرين التي تختلف تمامنا عن ثقافاتنا.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6. a) Sports clubs play an important role in society, and they also provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a beneficial way.
- 7. c) The government is making every effort to solve most of society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
- 8. d) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.
- 9. d) The press has a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and offers solutions.
- 10. d) Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all this makes it one of the greatest countries that attract tourists.



Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) enhance/e) develop
- 2. d) to/e) from
- 3. d) hop
- 4. b) biography
- 5. b) other
- 6. a) alive
- 7. b) wishes
- 8. a) helpful

- g. a) to take
- 10. a) playing
- 11. d) knowing
- 12. a) talking
- **13. c)** seeing
- 14. b) to tell
- 15. a) to visit
- 16. b) to revise

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) scared
- 18. a) enjoyed
- 19. c) Sally's brother.
- 20. b) turned on the lights
- 21. a) had been outside
- 22. a) were asleep
- 23. d) Sally's Brother's Trick

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- d) The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.
- 25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:
 - أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لما تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
- 26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

 Left to the student.

Story



Treasure Island

Chapter (1) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a) swords
- 2. d) dare
- 3. b) grabbed
- 4. c) guard
- 5. a) scar
- 6. b) owes
- 7. b) inn
- 8. d) pale

- 9. c) island
- 10. b) cliff
- 11. d) blind
- 12. a) treasure
- 13. c) to go
- 14. d) towards
- 15. b) for

Chapter (2) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) crew
- 2. a) clue
- 3. b) magistrate
- 4. c) servant
- 5. d) directions
- 6. b) head
- 7. d) rob
- 8. c) escape

- 9. b) sailors
- 10. a) buried
- 11. d) shout
- **12. c)** cross
- 13. b) out
- 14. d) for
- 15. a) for

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

Chapter (3) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) secret
- 2. d) frightened
- 3. c) pirates
- 4. d) mutiny
- 5. c) parrot
- 6. a) helpers
- 7. b) attacked
- 8. c) barrels

- 9. d) gang
- 10. a) destination
- 11. b) crutches
- 12. c) reach
- 13. d) for
- 14. a) after
- 15. b) blind

Chapter (4) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) whistle
- 2. c) trust
- 3. d) branch
- 4. a) relax
- 5. d) disease
- 6. b) marked
- 7. a) expression
- 8. b) coast

- 9. c) shore
- 10. d) as
- 11. d) mistake
- 12. a) along
- 13. c) off
- 14. c) to
- 15. a) into-



Chapter (5) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b) leader
- 2. a) sails
- 3. b) spades
- 4. d) fresh
- 5. d) bottom
- 6. b) voice
- 7. c) knelt
- 8. b) interested

- 9. d) allowed
- 10. a) dead
- 11. c) believe
- **12. b)** burned
- 13. d) To
- 14. c) of
- 15. a) for

Chapter (6) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) supplies
- **2. c)** fired
- 3. d) cannon
- 4. d) defend
- 5. a) fort
- 6. b) contact
- 7. c) medicines
- 8. d) including

- 9. a) advantages
- 10. b) sank
- 11. c) prevent
- **12. d)** alive
- 13. a) on
- 14. b) down
- 15. c) from





New

Skills Booklet

1 st Secondary



Part 1)	Skills
Reading Comprehension	4
2) Writing	20
3 Translation	

Part 3) Important General Grammar 69





- 1) Reading Comprehension
- Writing
- 3 Translation



Reading Comprehension

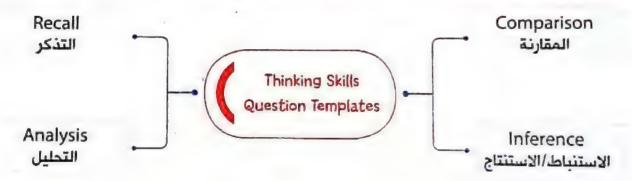
كيف تتعامل مع قطعة الفهم:

- اقرأ الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة، وهذا يبين لك ما تدور حوله القطعة، ويحدد لك المعلومات التي ستبحث عنها لاحقًا.
- اقرأ القطعة ولا تنزعج ولا تشغل بالك كثير"ا بالمفردات أو الجمل الصعبة وغير الواضحة الواردة في القطعة، فلابد من وجود مفردات لم
 يسبق دراستما ... وما يلزمك هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة؛ لأن الكلمة يتغير معناها حسب السياق
 الواردة فيه، مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين. والمهارة هنا معرفة المعنى العام دون التوقف عند لفظ بعينه.

وتنقسم أسئلة قطعة الفهم Comprehension إلى نوعين:

- سؤال الاختيار من متعدد: وهنا عليك أن تكتب الإجابة المختارة فقط، وتتطلب الإجابة هنا مهارة عالية في الفهم والتركيز.
 - سؤال مقالى: يمكنك أن تكتب الإجابة بأسلوب القطعة أو أسلوبك الخاص أو الجمع بينهما.

وهناك انماط للأسئلة عديدة وهي اسئلة لقياس مهارة التفكير المختلفة ويمكن تقسيمها كالأتي:





التذكر

Any question becomes a recall question if the answer has already been explicitly provided to the student in the text.

أي سؤال يصبح سؤالًا للتذكر إذا تم بالفعل توفير إجابة صريحة للطالب في النص.

Who did?	من قام بــ؟
When did take place?	متی حدث؟
List the	سجل/أدرج
What is a?	ما ؟
Name	اڼکر



2

Analysis

التحليل

Explain how does work.	اشرح كيف يعمل
Show / Indicate / Explain / Discuss the reason	وضح/اشرح/ناقش السبب
Explain why	اشرح لماذا
Mention in detail/ In brief	اذكر بالتفصيل / اذكر باختصار
What caused?	ماذا سبب؟
What is another possible cause of?	ما السبب الآخر المحتمل ك؟
Outline / Summarise the	لخص
Write down = Summarise with words on your own.	اكتب / لخص بكلمات من عندك
In what sequence did happen?	في أي تسلسل حدث؟
Give an example of	أعط مثالًا ك
What does symbolise?	ماذا ترمز إلى؟
Analyze how	حلل كيف
What was the author's point of view about?	ما هي وجمة نظر الكاتب بخصوص؟
From the point of view of the writer, what?	من وجهة نظر الكاتب ماذا؟
What kind of a is?	ما نوع؟
What is the function of?	ما وظيفة؟
What is the purpose of?	ما الغرض من؟
What is the relationship between and?	ما العلاقة بين و؟

Comparison

المقارنة

How is like?	ىيە مثل؟
How are and different?	كيف و مختلفان؟
Compare the before and after	نارن قبل وبعد
Compare at the beginning of the story and at the end.	نارن في بداية القطعة وفي النهاية
Distinguish between and	مِزين و
Compare with	فارن بـ
On what dimensions might you compare and?	على أي أبعاد يمكن مقارنة و
Which one is the biggest / oldest / tallest?	ليما الأكبر/الأقدم/الأطول؟

4

Inference

الاستنباط/الاستنتاج

Predict what will happen if	تنبأ ماذا سوف يحدث لو
Solve the problem	حل مشكلة
Apply the rule to	طبق القاعدة على
What is the main idea of?	ما الفكرة الرئيسية؟
Put a suitable title to	ضع عنواننا مناسبًا لـ
Predict how the story will end.	ننبأكيف ستنتص القصة.
What is the overall theme of?	ط ^{هو الموضوع العام لـــ؟ _,}
What can you conclude about?	ملذا تستطيع الاستنتاج بشأن؟
What if?	ملاً لو؟
Propose a solution to the problem of	لقتن حلا لمشكلة

From your point of view, what?	من وجمه نظرك ماذا؟
Find in the passage words which mean	استخرج كلمات من القطعة تعنى
What does the pronoun refer to?	ما الذي يشير إليه الضمير؟
What does the underlined/black typed word mean?	ماذا تعنى الكلمة التى تحتما خط/ المكتوبة بأسود داكن؟
Do you agree/oppose/think?	هل توافق / تعارض / تعتقد؟
What do you think of/about?	ما رأيك في؟
What is your opinion of/about?	ما رأيك في؟

وللإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة إليك هذه النصائح:

- ١- تممل في استخلاص الإجابة من القطعة، فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول في الفقرة الثانية، وليس شرطًا أن تكون في الفقرة الأولى.
 - ٢- اكتب الإجابة الصحيحة فقط ولا تزد، لأن الزيادات المبالغ فيها وغير المطلوبة تقلل من الدرجة التي يضعها المصحح.
 - ٣- التزم بالبناء السليم للجملة من حيث الزمن والضمائر وغيره.
 - ٤- تأنُّ في فهم السؤال ولا تتعجل، وتذكر أن فهم السؤال يعادل نصف الإجابة.
 - ٥- راع القواعد العامة في الكتابة من علامات ترقيم وخلافه.

PART

Answered Comprehension Passage

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The following is a checklist to help you decide if it's time for you or a friend to change eating habits. Just one "warning sign" should be enough reason to take action. You shouldn't think of "junk food" the minute you start feeling hungry. There never is an acceptable reason for this.

It is a definite sign of a habit that is on the way to becoming an addiction. Comfort eating is usually associated with junk food and in general high calorie food that is also high in carbohydrates [starch and sugar] and fat. If you run to the nearest fast food chain every time you feel down, you know it is out of control. A healthy meal does not have to be flavorless and boring. When pushed, you can picture appetising dishes that do not contain fries or fatty ingredients but you still prefer to get a hold of a beef burger or a pizza. You know it's not the best food for you. You know that you are going to feel sleepy and tired after you have eaten.

To be honest, healthy is a relative term. It all depends on what your options are. There are "healthier" choices you can make even at a fast food restaurant. You might, for example, order salad as a side dish instead of a second helping of fries. You could avoid ketchup or mayonnaise or eat a chicken burger. You know all this, you have promised yourself to do it next time you are there, but somehow it never happens. You keep on insisting that those dishes take longer to prepare.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Thinking of "junk food" when you're hungry is a
 - a) sign of addiction
 - b) sign of healthy eating
 - c) common eating habit
 - d) sign of change
- 2. If you are determined to change your diet, you can make healthy choices
 - a) in the country
 - b) near the sea
 - c) at fast food restaurants
 - d) in supermarkets



- - a) choose to eat healthy, nutritious food
 - b) choose to eat fatty, high calorie food
 - c) decide to eat fatty, low calorie food
 - d) decide to eat low calorie fries and pizza
- 4. If you want to be healthy, you should
 - a) avoid fatty and fried food
 - b) eat salad and fatty food
 - c) avoid salad and condiments
 - d) order high calorie food and soft drinks
- B) Answer the following questions:
 - 5. Do you eat healthy food or not? Why?

Student's own answer.

6. What does "junk food" mean?

Fast food.

7. Give two reasons why doctors prefer eating healthy food.

Student's own answer.



· ^,

1

Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Charles was a professor with a huge house and a fortune. Today he lives in a small caravan where there is only second-hand furniture. There are no signs that he was a rich man. He gets his clothes and other things from charity shops. This change is not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give up the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything and many people have nothing. He made the choice to give all his money away. He says it has brought him happiness. "A few years ago," says Charles, "I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world." So, he gave away all his money to charities. When he had some left, he gave away small banknotes in the streets of local poor areas. Charles believes that many people want to earn a lot of money so that they will not have any worries. However, most people never make much money. He decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free. Are there any things he misses? "No, I'm much happier now. I wouldn't go back to being rich for anything – no way."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

_			م طه	tout	Charles	hac		
1.	According t	to	tne	text,	Chanes	1103	*****************	

a) a family

b) a huge house

c) everything

- d) only a little money
- 2. Now, Charles is very happy because
 - a) he is a millionaire

b) he has no money

c) he misses nothing

- d) he lives in a small caravan
- 3. Charles knew there werehungry people in the world.
 - a) a few
- b) many
- c) no
- d) some
- 4. Most people want to earn much money to worries.
 - a) have
- b) increase
- c) find
- d) avoid

- 5. Would you like to be a millionaire? Why? Why not?
- Compare Charles' life in the past to his life now.
- 7. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?



Over the past twenty years, computers and the internet have become more and more important to us. In fact, computer technology continues to grow every day. We seem to use computers for almost everything these days, in shopping, driving our car, or communicating with relatives and colleagues. This explosion in computer technology has resulted in a rush to install computers in every classroom and to "wire" every school to the internet. In the USA, between 1984, and 1997 alone, the number of computers in secondary schools increased to more than 8 million sets. Both educators and students alike have been forced to keep up with this new wave of technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves are still trying to learn the most basics of computer skills, they are expected to teach students about computer know-how.

Few people would question the role that computers could play in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them in a classroom setting will get better grades than those who learn without having had any computer experience. These people say that just as computer technology has improved the way cars work, computers will make the classroom a better place to teach concepts and ideas that students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Teachers are expected to teach students how to use computers although they
 - a) know how to use a computer
 - b) are still learning how to use computers
 - c) know all the basics of computer skills
 - d) are forced to use computers
- 2. "Few people would question the role that computers could play" means
 - a) many people are certain about the importance of computers
 - b) some people ask questions about computers
 - c) not many people doubt the importance of computers
 - d) some people want more computers
- 3. The phrasal verb "resulted in" means
 - a) led to b) objected
- c) supported
- d) denied

- 4. The best title to the passage is "......"
 - a) Teachers

- b) Educators
- c) The computer and the internet
- d) Secondary schools

- 5. How could computers help students become more successful?
- 6. Give some examples of everyday uses of computers in our life.
- 7. In your opinion, what are the possible disadvantages of using computers in education?



Your smile depends on simple dental care habits such as, for example, teeth brushing. Oral health begins with clean teeth. Keeping your teeth's surface clean can prevent oral disease.

The American Dental Association recommends a number of brushing rules to <u>promote</u> oral health. The first rule is to brush teeth at least twice a day using suitable equipment. Secondly, one should practise good brushing techniques. These techniques include rinsing the toothbrush with water after using it, keeping it uncovered in an upright position, and not storing it in closed containers which can encourage the growth of bacteria. The third rule is to replace the toothbrush every three months – or sooner if it becomes worn – to prevent painful and uncomfortable brushing. Finally, to reach tight spaces between teeth, it is recommended to use special wooden or plastic picks and brushes designed to clean between them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Thou	underlined	propoun"	hem" refers	to	
Ι.	. The I	underlined	pronoun	nem reiers	ιυ	****************

a) brushes

b) teeth

c) spaces

- d) picks
- 2. The word "promote" in the second paragraph means
 - a) discourage

b) prevent

c) improve

- d) collect
- 3. The third rule is to
 - a) brush your teeth at least twice a day
 - b) replace the toothbrush every three months
 - c) keep your teeth's surface clean
 - d) practise good brushing techniques
- 4. It is not recommended to keep the toothbrush in
 - a) wooden picks

b) plastic picks

c) upright position

d) closed containers

- 5. How can we avoid oral disease?
- 6. Why should you replace your toothbrush every three months?
- 7. What can we do to reach tight spaces between teeth?

4 Successful marriage is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health. While many studies have shown the great importance of social support, it is still clear exactly what this means. Most likely it consists of being a sympathetic listener or offering helpful advice; providing emotional support and social acceptance; giving actual help or financial help, and simply doing ordinary things together, like eating and drinking. Husbands seem to benefit much more from marriage than wives do. Married women are in better physical and mental health, and are happier than single women, but these effects are nearly twice as great for men. Various explanations have been considered, but the most plausible is that wives provide more social support than husbands. Perhaps men need it more? They are more exposed to stresses at work, have worse health, and die earlier than women.

A) Choose the correct answer from	a, b, c or d:
1. The underlined word "plausible	" is closest in meaning to
a) untrue	b) ambiguous
c) reasonable	d) vague
2. Successful marriage is useful fo	r
a) social support	
b) mental and physical health	
c) plausible support	
d) social acceptance	
3 are more exposed to s	tresses and have worse health.
a) Women	b) Men
c) Children	d) Babies
4. Married women areth	an single women.
a) more stressed	b) living longer
c) happier	d) worse

B) Answer the following questions:

-17

- 5. How effective is successful marriage from the social point of view?
- 6. Why are men in need of more social support than women?
- 7. In what aspect did married women excel single ones?

PAHI 5 As long as we live, we continue to learn, and the education we receive helps

us to keep on learning. We are taught reading and writing so that we can learn further knowledge and learn how to find out things for ourselves. What is learned can vary widely. It may be manners, beliefs or attitudes, or it could be words and figures. It might be the technique of running a machine, or a skill in playing a musical instrument. Those who teach can also vary. Teaching may be done by teachers in school, but it may also be done by parents, older brothers or sisters or friends. Everyone has their own source of education, such as newspapers, television, books, films and museums. Every factory worker or farmer must at least know how to read and write. People like engineers, doctors and teachers need a high degree of training. In some countries, parents have to pay a lot of money to send their children to good schools. Many parents cannot send their children to school because of the expenses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	. we	continu	ie to i	earn	***********	

a) at school only

b) only during childhood

c) from birth to death

d) at work only

2. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to the

a) schools

b) parents

c) friends

d) anyone

3. What helps us to continue learning?

a) More education.

b) Parents.

c) Friends.

d) Doctors.

4. Who needs a high degree of training?

- a) Engineers, doctors and mechanics.
- b) Engineers, doctors and teachers.
- c) Farmers, doctors and teachers.
- d) Engineers, cleaners and teachers.

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. What is the main idea of the passage?
- 6. Why do you think workers and farmers need to know how to read and write?
- 7. Name a source of education not mentioned in the passage.

-

6 Today, I'm a teacher. Many years ago, I used to have summer jobs. Once I worked in a factory for gloves. I liked the people who were working there. They used to treat me as if I were their son. They helped me with my work. I learned a lot of things from them. The summer after that one, I worked as a waiter in a restaurant. It was hard work. However, money enabled me to do many things I was unable to do before. I could join a swimming club without worrying about fees. I began to enjoy my spare time. I had a lot of time to enjoy outdoor sports. Today, I tell myself that I will never forget those days and the experience I gained.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Which job do you think was better for the writer?
 - a) In the restaurant.
 - b) In the factory for gloves.
 - c) In the factory of clothes.
 - d) In the hotel.
- 2. The writer was not a member in the swimming club before the second job because
 - a) he didn't have enough time
 - b) he doesn't like swimming
 - c) it was far from his house
 - d) he didn't have enough money
- 3. The writer will never forget the summer jobs due to the he got.
 - a) experiment

b) experience

c) excursion

- d) exercise
- 4. People at the gloves factory were
 - a) friendly

b) cruel

c) rude

d) impolite

- 5. What was the second job that the writer had?
- 6. Did he benefit from the second job? How?
- 7. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

Most of the passengers were fast asleep in the eight o'clock train. It was already half past nine. I was having tea while my wife was reading a letter. My little daughter was eating her ice cream. Suddenly we were all shocked to hear a very loud cry from a young lady. She screamed, "Help! He's going to kill me". Many people ran towards her. We asked her where the murderer was. She looked around herself for a few moments, then at us, and finally said in a whisper. "What a terrible dream! He killed my mother and sister. That thief! He had a gun, and a big knife!" We comforted her saying that she would feel better; we returned each to his seat. I observed an old man sitting beside her. He brought her a cold drink and kept talking with her all through the last fifty-five minutes of the journey. I wondered what they were discussing. When we got off at the station I approached the man and said to him, "It was kind of you to keep talking with her to help her to be quiet," He said, "Oh, no! I only wanted to prevent her from sleeping again and having another dream!"

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The train journey took	when the	young	lady cried.
---------------------------	----------	-------	-------------

a) two hours

b) one hour and a half

c) fifty-five minutes

- d) a hundred and forty-five minutes
- 2. One of the passengers gave the young lady
 - a) an ice cream

b) a cold drink

c) a gun

- d) a letter
- 3. Why did the young lady cry?
 - a) A thief attacked her.

b) The passengers mocked her.

c) She was dreaming.

- d) She was over the moon.
- 4. Why did the old man keep talking with the lady?
 - a) To pacify her.

- b) To show her that he was kind.
- c) To stop her from sleeping again.
- d) To help her dream more.

- 5. How many dreams did the lady have?
- 6. What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?
- 7. What do you think of the old man mentioned in the passage? Justify your answer.

8 Tokyo is one of the biggest cities in the world. Over 20 million people live and work in Tokyo, and important companies have their offices there. But most streets don't have names. So how can you find your way there? People in Tokyo are very good at giving directions. They can usually explain how to go home or to the office from the nearest train station. People in Tokyo often use maps when they give directions. Advertisements in newspapers usually have a small map to help you. If you're going to visit someone's house, it's good to ask him to draw, or fax you a map of the local area. If you get lost, the best idea is to go to a police station. In Japan, each neighbourhood has a small one, and the police officers there have a map of all areas. Giving directions is an important part of their job!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. According to the reading passage, what should you do if you get lost in Tokyo?
 - a) You should go back home.
 - b) You should go to a hospital.
 - c) You should get rid of the map.
 - d) You should go to the police station.
- 2. What is the problem with most Tokyo streets?
 - a) They have names.
 - b) They have strange names.
 - c) They have no names.
 - d) They have long names.
- 3. The underlined word "one" refers to
 - a) a very large building

b) a police station

c) a part of a city

d) a direction

- 4. "Over" means
 - a) exceed

b) below

c) equal

d) the same

- 5. What is the best title to this passage?
- 6. Is a police station important in big cities? Why/Why not?
- 7. List 5 ways to know directions (four from the passage and one of your own).



PART 1

People think that children should play sports. Playing sports is fun. However, it can have negative effects on children. It may promote aggressive behaviour in some children. According to research, 40 million kids play sports in the US. Of these, 18 million say they have been yelled at or <u>called names</u> while playing sports. This leaves many children with a bad impression of sports. They think sports are just aggressive.

Many researchers believe that parents and coaches are the main cause of too much aggression in children's sports. They believe children copy aggressive adult behaviour. Parents and coaches are powerful teachers because children usually look up to them. Often these adults themselves behave aggressively, sending children the message that winning is everything. At children's sporting events, parents may yell insults at other players or cheer when their child behaves aggressively. As well, children may be taught that hurting other players is acceptable. In addition, the media makes violence seem exciting. Children watch adult sports games and see violent behaviour replayed over and over on television.

As a society, we really need to face up to this problem and do something about it. Parents and coaches should act as better examples for children. They also need to teach children better values. They should teach children to enjoy themselves whether they win or not. If we make some basic changes, children might learn to enjoy sports again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a) Children often become like their parents.
 - b) Children need to play sports in school.
 - c) Playing sports may have negative results.
 - d) Some sports can cause health problems.
- 2. Which is described as the main cause of more aggressive playing?
 - a) Adults. b) Naughty children. c) New rules in sports. d) Other players.
- 3. What does the writer suggest?
 - a) Violent sports should not be shown on TV.
 - b) Children should not play sports.
 - c) Coaches study child's psychology.
 - d) Adults should be good examples for children.
- 4. According to the article, the underlined expression "called names" means
 - a) their names are said in a loud voice.
- b) their names are whispered to others.
- c) to be described using bad words.
- d) to be excluded from the team list.

- 5. Who is a famous sports star in your country? Why is he or she a star?
- 6. Is this sports star a good example for young people? Why/ Why not?
- 7. How do you think we should approach a problem and how can we solve it effectively?



More and more people are discovering that sharing and talking about their favourite books with others can be as rewarding as the act of reading itself. For people who feel that they are too busy to sit down with a book, a book club helps them schedule time to read. Others have gained self-confidence by practising in or leading a discussion. And they enjoy the chance to make new friends. A successful book club should have a group that is small enough so even the quiet people can be heard but also big enough for many different opinions. The best arrangement is a mixture of ages, sexes and backgrounds for more reading discussion. To make the meeting so smooth, a leader should be appointed. The leader will usually start the discussion by asking what the author's main idea was. Book club members should never be afraid to offer their opinions even if they don't like a book. They just need to be prepared to explain why they didn't like something.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What must people do before they meet?
 - a) They must phone each other.
 - b) They must call people of their own age.
 - c) They must prepare their ideas.
 - d) They must buy some flowers and presents.
- 2. What does a leader discuss at first?
 - a) The main idea of a book.
 - b) The conflicts between the members.
 - c) The opinions of the readers.
 - d) The fear and phobia of the members.
- 3. "Smooth" means
 - a) easy

- 9

b) sad

c) dead

d) gloomy

- 4. Leadership and self-confidence are
 - a) skills

b) quantities

c) societies

d) bullets

- 5. Where, do you think, can people meet for a book club?
- 6. What kind of books could those people read or discuss?
- 7. Describe the variety in these meetings.



, هناك عدة أشكال من الكتابة سيتم تناولها بشكل موجز في السطور التالية ومنها:

An essay - A blog - A short story - A biography - An email



An essay

· المقال من الأسللة التي عادة ما تكون مخيفة للطلاب، حيث يواجه معظم الطلاب صعوبة في كتابتها.

المقال هو عبارة عن طرح فكرة للنقاش من خلال مجموعة من الفقرات المرتبطة ببعضها البعض مع تقديم وجهة نظر محددة، ولابد
 أن ينقسم إلى عدة فقرات مرتبة ومخططة يتم فيها شرح وتوضيح جوانب الموضوع المختلفة.

تحديد نوع المقال (حسب الموضوع المطلوب الكتابة فيه) وأنواع المقال هي:

- Narrative Essay

مقال مُصصى (هنا يكون عن قصة أو موقف تعرضت له)

- Descriptive Essay

مقال وصفى (وصف مكان أو شيء)

- Expository Essay

مقال تفسيري (حقائق ومعلومات عن موضوع محدد)

- Argumentative Essay

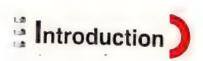
مقال جدلي (تناول وجمات نظر مختلفة في موضوع واحد)

- Persuasive Essay

مقال إقناعي (توضيح وجهات نظر مختلفة مع ترجيح وتفضيل وجهة نظر محددة)

ويتم تقسيم المقال كما يلى:

- 1. Introduction, المقدمة
- 2. Body paragraph. صلب الموضوع
- 3. Conclusion. الخاتمة



- هي أول فقرة في المقال والهدف منها هو طرح الفكرة العامة للموضوع والإشارة إلى الهدف الرئيسي له.
- لابد أن تتضمن المقدمة الفكرة الرئيسية topic sentence و لابد أن يفهم ويعرف منها القارئ بالضبط عن ماذا سيكون بقية المقال.
- من الممكن أن تكون المقدمة عبارة عن جمل عامة تصف الفكرة التي تعبر عن الموضوع أو جملة تتضمن تعريفًا بالموضوع أو حكمة أو أسئلة عامة يتم طرحها لإثارة القارئ.



 C	Writ
-	

•
· وهناك بعض الجمل التي تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات الإيجابية مثل:
- It is taken for granted that plays a vital role in our life; this is simply because
the progress of any country depends on it.
من المسلم به أن يلعب دورًا حيويًا في حياتنا. وهذا ببساطة لأن تقدم أي دولة يعتمد عليه.
- Fancy holding my pen to write about I'm sure that everyone will tackle it
from a different angle, but I will focus on the main points.
اتخيل أن أمـسك بقلمي لأكتب عن وأنا متأكد أن كل شخص سوف يتناوله من زاوية مختلفة ولكنني سوف أركز على
النقاط الرئيسية.
وهناك بعض الجمل التي تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات السلبية مثل:
- I reveal no secret when I say that we all agree that stands as an obstacle مقبة in the way of our progress. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.
لا أفشى سرًا عندما أقول إننا جميعـًا متفقون أن يقف كعقبة في طريق تقدمنا. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.
- It can't be denied thatis one of the worst and most complicated problems. I don't exaggerate when I say that it has made our life like hell. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.
لا يمكن إنكار أن هي واحدة من أسوء وأكثر المشكلات تعقيدًا وأنا لا أبالغ عندما أقول إنها جعلت حياتنا كالجحيم. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.
وهناك بعض الجمل التي تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات التي تتكلم عن المزايا والعيوب مثل:
It is crystal clear thathas a lot of advantages (pros/merits) and disadvantages
(demerits/cons). Let's shed light on the main aspects of this subject.
من الواضح تماما أن له مزايا وعيوب ، هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لعذا الموضوع.

Body Paragraph

- ، لابد أن يتكون صلب الموضوع من فقرتين أو ثلاثة على الأقل ... كل فقرة تتحدث عن جانب معين من الموضوع ... فمثلا إذا كان الموضوع مزايا وعيوب يكون الأول عن المزايا والثاني عن العيوب، وهكذا.
 - . بنم مناقشة وشرح ما تم إجماله في المقدمة حيث يتم عرض تفاصيل الفكرة الأساسية.
 - الحرص على استخدام جمل بسيطة وسملة ولابد أن تراعى بداية الجمل بالفاعل يليه الفعل على حسب زمن الجملة ثم المفعول.
- . الروابط في المقال هي كلمات تساعد الكاتب في تنظيم كتابته بحيث يستطيع ربط الجمل ببعضها البعض عن طريقها أوالتحول من فكرة إلى فكرة أخرى بطريقة سليمة ومنها:

Giving examples	إعطاء أمثلة	For example/ For instance/ such as	
Contrast	التناقض	But/ Although/ Even though/ On the other hand/ However	
Giving reasons	إعطاء أسباب	because/ as/ because of/ owing to/ due to	
Showing results	بيان النتائج	So/ therefore/ Consequently/ and as a result	
إضافة معلومات Adding information		And/ In addition/ Moreover/ Also/ above all	
ترتیب احداث Arranging incidents		First/ second/ then/ finally	
إعطاء آراء Giving opinions		I think / I believe / In my opinion / As far as I'm concerned	

Conclusion

- · يتم تلخيص الفكرة الرئيسية فيه بصيغة أخرى بحيث تختلف عما كتبناه في المقدمة من حيث الكلمات، ومن الممكن أن تتشابه معما في المعنى.
 - تكون الخاتمة عبارة عن نصيحة أو اقتراح أو رأى ... مثل:
- To sum up/ In conclusion / In brief
- Finally, it is quite clear that is reallyis
- To sum up, one can say that is reallyis
- In conclusion, in my opinion, is really
- To sum up, why don't we/ we should/





A blog

- الخاتمة

 موقع إلكترونى أو صفحة شخصية، وهي بمثابة مُفكرة أو ساحة طرح للآراء الشخصية، والمدخلات فيه تكون مرتبة ترتيبـًا تصاعديـًا حسب الزمن.

• هناك عدة أنواع من المدونات blogs نتعامل معها وأهمها هي المدونات الشخصية

 يوميات مستمرة أو تعليقات من قبل أفراد يكتبون عن تجاربهم اليومية وأفكارهم وأشعارهم، ويسمحون للقراء بالمشاركة، ومنها مثلاً موقع Facebook - Twitter

• Article blogs مدونات إخبارية أو مقالية.

وهي التي توفر ملخصاً للأخبار عن موضوع معين ومصحوبة بتلخيص بسيط. قصير، وتتكون من الأتي:

1. Blog title

- عنوان المقالة (كلمة أو كلمتين للتلخيص)

(Wonderful day - A nice journey - Good news)

2. Summary

- ملخص (شرح مبسط للعنوان)

3. Body

- نص المقال (يحتوى على المادة الأساسية للمقال)

• هناك عدة أمور بجب مراعاتها عند كتابة القصة القصيرة:

4. End of the article



A short story

With some brainstorming you can learn how to write a successful short story:

1. Come up with a plot

التفكير في حبكة القصة.

- Think about what the story is going to be about and what is going to happen in it.

2. Main character

الشخصية الرئيسية.

- Focus on one or two main characters at the most. The main character has a clear description, features or qualities. He or she may be good or bad.

3. Setting (place and time)

المكان والزمان.

- Choose a setting that is interesting to you and that can be interesting for your reader.

4. Create a conflict for the main character

خلق صراع للشخصية الرئيسية.

- The main character has to deal with a case or a problem. Your main character may be trapped يقع in a bad or dangerous situation.

5. Provide solutions for the problems or a bad situation

تقديم حلول للمشكلات والمواقف السبثة

- Let your main character find how to solve the problem that he or she faces or how to get out of a bad situation.

6. Ending

النهاية

- Think of an ending with a surprise. An ending that will leave your reader surprised, or shocked.



A biography of a person



To write about a person especially famous people, we should follow the following

 للكتابة عن حياة شخص معين وخاصة المشاهير يجب اتباع الخطوات التالية: 1. An interesting introduction to illustrate that you see this person as a model.

كتابة مقدمة شيقة توضح اختيارك لهذا الشخص كنموذج.

2. Who is this person (the name and the job)

أن تَذَكر عمل الشخص ووظيفته.

3. Where and when this person was born.

كتابة مكان وتاريخ ميلاده.

4. The person's education and work.

الكتابة عن تعليمه وشهاداته وأين يعمل الأن أو كان يعمل.

5. The person's achievements.

إنجازات هذا الشخص،

- This part is important as it shows why you admire him or her.

6. The effect of this person on society and how we benefited from him.

تأثير هذا الشخص على المجتمع، وكيف استفدنا منه.

7. Say whether this person is still alive or dead.

توضيح هل هذا الشخص ما زال حيًّا أم متوفًّى.

8. End your biography illustrating what we should do to be like this person.

قم في بنهاية السيرة بتوضيح ما يجب علينا فعله لنكون مثل هذا الشخص.



Email writing



الرسالة الإلكترونية لما شكل ثابت، وهو كالتالي:

New message ■	- 2 X
То :	اسم المترستل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني
From :	اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني
Subject :	موضوع الرسالة
Regards, Best wishes, Yours, اسم المُرسـَل	
SEND A O & S T	· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

The best way to live a healthy life is to eat healthy and do more active physical activities. Healthy eating and exercising have a big effect on your future success, maintaining a healthy body and preventing obesity or overweight. It is a rule that everyone should live by and it brings many benefits to your life.

Researches prove that staying healthy, getting enough sleep, and being physically fit help you in school by performing better. Also, developing healthy habits leads to many achievements in school. Children who perform many different physical activities remain in a healthy fit body. Children should have a minimum of 60 minutes of physical activities per day recommended by the centres for disease control and prevention. If you get enough exercise per day, then your body will function properly. In addition, children who exercise gain lifelong benefits like having a healthy body, flexibility, and stronger and healthier bones and muscles.

When we develop healthy habits, we can learn to make healthier decisions or choices like when and what to eat and when to exercise. We can also learn to keep our bodies fit. In life, we have many rules to live by and developing healthy habits should be one of them.

Pollution

Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity. There are different kinds of pollution like air pollution, water pollution and noise pollution. Air pollution is mainly caused by smoke of mills and factories. The sound and noise of loudspeakers, vehicles' loud horns, etc. cause sound pollution. The dirty chemical waste from factories causes water pollution.

No one can deny that pollution affects all forms of life badly. It can also cause many health problems such as cancer and heart disease. Above all, pollution is the main cause of damaging ozone layer; it causes global warming which in turn results in a lot of natural disasters such as hurricanes, floods and forests' fires.

To solve the problem, the government must impose and enforce laws to prevent pollution. The government also should reward the factories which control their waste and use technology to check pollution. Governments also reward the associations which work for plantation. Cutting down trees must be strictly prohibited if it is done without reason. We should also plant a lot of trees and plants to cut down pollution.

Finally, we should all cooperate to solve this problem which threatens our lives on the planet.



Reading is the first source of information

Reading is probably one of the most important activities and hobbies that anyone can do. Those who read can discover new ideas, concepts, places, and people. Reading is so important in our lives for many reasons; firstly, even if we have a stressful day, a book can easily distract us from our own problems.

Reading has the ability to calm us down. Secondly, reading is also a way for children to reach out to the world. So, reading should be encouraged among children at an early age as it increases children's vocabulary and spelling more than talking or direct teaching. Reading forces us to look at words that we might not have seen or heard in our lives. The third reason why reading is so important is that reading improves our thinking process. Reading books requires readers to think and imagine about different details in the book such as characters and plot; this helps us to improve our thinking process. Since the readers must concentrate in order to read, they will improve their concentration and thinking abilities. Finally, reading can widen our scopes and help us to know all cultures of the world.

Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life. "No entertainment is so cheap, or introduces everlasting pleasures as much as reading. It will not only refresh our minds and souls but it will give us a great outlook towards life.

A situation that happened to one of your friends

My friend Kamal was looking around for a used car. He saw an advertisement in the paper for a Toyota for twenty thousand pounds.

He rang up and arranged to go round and have a look. The car was brand new and spotless but Khalid told the woman who showed him the car that he liked to think about it. Really, he didn't think very long. An hour later, he was back. He asked the woman some questions and she said all she wanted for it was only twenty thousand pounds. He asked to try it and he was given the keys. The engine started at the first touch. He backed it out and tested everything. He paid the money, filled out the change of ownership and took the car. Khalid couldn't believe it was all legal. He said he was sure there must be something fishy about it and he didn't want to put himself in trouble.

So instead of going home, he drove straight to the police station where he left a note for the police to check his car. The police officer told him that everything is legal but the woman hadn't told him everything. Her husband was taken dead out of the car and soon no one wanted to buy it. Khalid wished he had never known about that. He himself felt uncomfortable.

Although he was able to make a profit of many thousand pounds, he still regrets selling the car.



The bad side of mobile phones

I have believed for a while that mobile phones are harmful to our health, due to the radiation that we're exposed to. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe.

After all, people said that smoking, pesticides and so on were either safe or wouldn't cause you serious harm. However they were wrong as they caused cancer, disability and terrible illnesses. In fact, research claims mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.

Above all, they can cause headaches, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology. Now, there is 24 hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electric gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems. But if you can't do without them, at least make sure you don't have a computer, wireless phone or mobile in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation. So keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause brain damage if they are used for a long period of time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

Coronavirus

Nations around the world are battling with a major outbreak of a new deadly virus. The coronavirus, which started in the Chinese city of Wuhan, on 22nd January 2020 has already killed thousands of people from around the world. Countries highly affected include China, America, the UK and Italy. The infected people are currently subject to quarantine at a hospital. Many countries have been on lockdown for many weeks and people have not been to work, school and all public transport has been suspended.

In other countries schools have been closed and people have been told not to travel. The new coronavirus is suspected to have come from illegally traded animals in a Wuhan market. The virus mutated and spread from an animal to a human. There are fears it could mutate and spread further. Scientists say the virus is contagious and can be passed from person to person.

The World Health Organisation, which declared the outbreak as an international health emergency, recently updated the global risk assessment to "very high." It has also advised the public to wash their hands more than the usual besides delaying or avoiding travel to affected areas. Common signs of the infection include fever, cough, shortness of breath and breathing difficulties.

PART 1

Exercises

Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED FIFTY (150) words on:

- 1. The job you would like to do when you leave school.
- 2. Purposes of using the internet.
- 3. Social work is a means through which Egyptian youth can help society.
- 4. How to keep the environment clean.
- 5. Reasons for happiness are different from one person to another.
- 6. How do you think life will be like in the year 2050?
- 7. What can we do to overcome the problem of unemployment?
- 8. Your own ideas to develop the educational system in Egypt.
- 9. Friendship.
- 10. Your favourite holiday place.
- 11. A person you consider as a model.
- 12. Making use of your free time.
- 13. A blog post on the problems children have because of the internet.
- 14. A summary of a novel you read.
- 15. An email to a friend telling him about your future plans including education and work.



- What is "Translation"?

First, we should know that the word "Translation" means changing the written words from one language into another language.

- الترجمة فن وليست مجرد حفظ كلمات فقط، فهي عبارة عن كيفية الاعتماد على توصيل المعنى المراد من الجملة، وليست ترجمة حرفية للكلمات.
 - القدرة على التخمين لمعانى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق ما نعرفه من كلمات هو أساس الترجمة.
 - الترجمة ليست مجرد نقل كلمة، ولفظ، بل هي نقل لمفاهيم الكلام وربطها بالنص.

- Language is meaning-based

When we want to say something or translate a sentence, we should know that the meaning in general is more important as any language depends on general meaning not meaning of every separate word.

عند ترجمة جملة أو التحدث بشيء يجب أن نعرف أن المعنى العام هو الأكثر أهمية حيث إن اللغة تعتمد على المعنى وليس ترجمة
 كل كلمة منفصلة.

So, translation is considered an art which depends on how to transfer the whole meaning of the sentence and also the ability to guess the meaning of new and difficult words from the words that we know.

- من هنا تعتبر الترجمة فن يعتمد على كيفية نقل المعنى العام للجملة و القدرة على تخمين معانى الكلمات الجديدة والصعبة من
 الكلمات التي نعرفها.
 - لاحظ المثال التالي:
 - «يجب أن يتحد الشعب المصرى لمواجهة تحديات العصر».

Egyptians must (should) unite (work together/ help each other) to face (stand against) the challenges (difficulties) of the age (present time).

• لاحظ أننا استخدمنا أكثر من معنى لنفس الكلمة و ليس الشرط هنا أن نترجم ترجمة حرفية، ولكن الأهم توصيل المعنى.



• لاحظ مثالًا آخر.

"I had my lunch and then went out to meet my friends to have a nice time together and we really were over the moon."

- هنا لو تمت الترجمة الحرفية فسوف يضيع المعنى تمامنا، فمثلًا كلمة have نعرفها بمعنى يمتلك و لكن هنا لا يتناسب المعنى الحرفى مع المعنى العام.
 - أيضًا كلمة Over the moon لو تم ترجمتما حرفيًا (فوق القمر) لضاع المعنى السليم و هو (سعيد جدًا).
 - تناولت الغذاء ثم خرجت لمقابلة أصدقائى لكى نقضى سوينا وقتنا جميلًا وبالفعل كنا سعداء جدًا.

What is the difference between "Translation into Arabic and Translation into English"?

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية تعتمد على المعنى، وتخمين الكلمات الصعبة وليس هناك شرط لتكوين الجملة والزمن.

"The government tries to solve most of our problems in Egypt."

- تحاول الحكومة (الحكومة تحاول) أن تحل (حل) معظم مشاكلنا في مصر.
- أما الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية فتعتبر الأصعب حيث لابد من معرفة تكوين الجملة و الحفاظ على الزمن السليم
 و كذلك كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح.
 - «تُلعب الرياضة دورًا هامنا في بناء الجسم و الشخصية»

Play sport role important in building body and character. (x)

هنا ترجمة حرفية ليست صحيحة سواء تكوين الجملة أو المعنى

Sport الصفة قبل الاسم an important role الفعل مفرد in building (forming) body and personality.



Translation from English into Arabic:

- ١ الأبد من البعد عن الترجمة الحرفية و توصيل المعنى هو الأهم كما أوضحنا سابقًا.
 - ٣ من الأفضل أن يتحول المبنى للمجمول إلى المعلوم.
- A lot of new schools were built by the government.
 - لقد قامت الحكومة بيناء الكثير من المدارس الجديدة.
 - ٣ من الممكن استخدام بعض الكلمات و الحروف من عندنا لتحسين المعنى.
- -Tourism is one of the most important sources of our national income and hard currency.
 - تعتبر السياحة (إن السياحة) واحدة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لدينا و كذلك العملة الصعبة.
 - ٤ الالتزام بزمن الجملة في الترجمة من حيث (مضارع أو ماض أو مستقبل).
 - ه يتم ترجمة .have/has + p.p إلى «لقد».
 - ٦ لا يظهر ٧. to be في المضارع ولكن من الممكن أن يظهر في الماضي.
- Music is the food of soul.

- الموسيقي غذاء الروح.

- Ali was at home when I phoned.

- كان على في البيت عندما اتصلت.
- v. to have v يترجم إلى أكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة (لـ عند يملك لدى يقتني يتناول يصاب يناقش)
- We had our meals.

- تناولنا وجباتنا.

- My son had a serious disease.

۔ اُصیب ابنی بمرض خطیر.

- Hala has a nice car.

- تمتلك هالة سيارة جميلة.

- Egypt has a lot of relations with the world countries.
- لمصر علاقات كثيرة بدول العالم.

2

Translation from Arabic into English:

١ لابد من تحديد أجزاء الجملة حيث إن الجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية لابد أن تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول Subject – verb – object

تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا في الشرق الأوسط

- Egypt plays a great role in the Middle East.

٢ الالتزام بقواعد اللغة من حيث الأزمنة الصحيحة للجملة.

- Egypt played a wonderful match yesterday.

لقد لعبت مصر مباراة رائعة بالأمس.

الزمن هنا ماض بسيط حيث حدد وقته و علامته.

لقد اجتاز الاختبار وسيتقدم للجامعة الأسبوع القادم.

- He has passed the test and he will apply to university next week.

هنا مزيج من المضارع التام والمستقبل

٣ الصفة دائمنا قبل الاسم والظرف بعد الفعل

أعتقد أن علينًا طالب رائع حيث إنه يتحدث الإنجليزية بلباقة.

- I think that Ali is a wonderful student as he speaks English fluently.

إن» ليس لها مكان عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- إن تطوير التعليم هو أساس التقدم.

- Developing education is the basis of progress.

لاحظ: أن (is) هنا لم تكن موجودة في الجملة باللغة العربية، ولكن لابد من وجودها في الإنجليزية.

لاحظ: أيضا أن عند بداية الجملة بالفعل يتم إضافة ing ليتحول إلى اسم فاعل gerund.

- من الضروري لنا جميعنا أن نتحد لخدمة بلدنا.

- It is necessary for all of us to unite to serve our country.

الضمائر المستترة في العربية pronouns يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- علينا أن نحاول بجد لكي نحقق ما نتمناه.

- We should try hard to achieve what we hope.

هنا ضمير مستتر (نحن) ولاحظ أيضنا أن وجود (على + الضمير) يتم ترجمتها should - must.

v لام التعليل تترجم إلى: المصدر + in order to/ so as to/ to.

- استيقظ مبكرًا للحاق بالقطار المتجه إلى القاهرة.

- He woke up early to catch the train to Cairo.



- ۸ الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يترجم إلى ضمير مفعول (us them him me her) الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يترجم إلى (صفة ملكية) (your – its – our – his – her – their – my):
 - قام الكثير من أصدقائي بزيارتي حيث إنني كنت مريضا.
- A lot of my friends visited me because I was ill.
 - ٩ الأسماء المعنوية والأسماء التي لا تجمع لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية.
 - السعادة كنز لا يقدر بثمن.

- Happiness is a priceless treasure.

honour	الشرف	virtue	الفضيلة	peace	السلام
beauty	الجمال	love	الحب	friendship	الصدقة
freedom	الحرية	advice	نصيحة	hatred	الكراهية
success	النجاح	justice	العدالة	honesty	الصدق

١٠ الأسماء التي لا تجمع Uncountable Nouns لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة the.

paper	الورق	luggage	الأمتعة	baggage	الحقائب
grass	العشب	money	المال	oil	الزيت
electricity	الكهرباء	information	معلومات	news	أخبار

- أريد معلومات عن البحث الجديد.

- I want information about the research.
 - ١١ حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف) المرادف لهما في اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط.
- I will visit my friends tomorrow.
 - ١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ وفي الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضي البسيط تترجم إلى ماضٍ بسيط.
 - لقد نهبنا معا إلى السينما الشهر الماضي.
- We went to the cinema together last month.
 - ١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ بدون أي إشارة تدل على الماضي تترجم لمضارع تام.
 - لقد حققت مصر كثيرًا من التقدم ونتمنى المزيد.
- Egypt has achieved a lot of progress and we hope for more.
 - ۱٤ قد + فعل مضارع تدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم may.
 - قد نقوم برحلة مدرسية قريبًا.

- We may have a school trip soon.

PART 1

- ١٥ لن + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفي future simple.
 - لن يأتي على إلى حفل التخرج بسبب سفره.
- Ali won't come to the graduation party because of his travel.
 - 17 لم + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماض بسيط Past simple.
 - لم يتمكن صديقي من الحصول على الوظيفة التي تقدم لها.
- My friend didn't get the job that he applied for.
 - ٧٧ كان + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماض مستمر.
 - عندما وصلت المنزل كانت ابنتي تعمل واجباتها المدرسية.
- When I reached home, my daughter was doing her school homework.

لاحظ: أن كلمة home هنا لا تأخذ حرف جر.

- ١٨ كان + قد + فعل ماض يقابله في الإنجليزية الماضي التام.
 - عندما نصبت إلى العمل كان الاجتماع قد انتهى.
- When I went to work, the meeting had finished.
 - ١٩ المفعول المطلق لا يتم ترجمته، ويتم تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف.
 - يؤثر التدخين تأثيرًا سلبيًّا على الصحة.
- Smoking has a negative effect on our health.
- Smoking affects our health negatively.
 - ، الفعل بعد and يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل قبلها من حيث الزمن والإضافات.
- I enjoyed visiting my relatives and talking to them.
 - ٢١ بعض الأفعال في اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأخذ حرف جر (بينما تأخذ في اللغة العربية).

contain	يحتوى على	need	يحتاج إلى	affect	يۇثر على
overcome	يتغلب على	fear	يخاف من	enjoy	يتمتع بـ
admire	يعجب ب	feel	يشعر ب	celebrate	يحتفل ب

Some Important Words for Translation



ا إنجازات chievements	birthplace	راحة comfort
يكتسب cquire	blessing نعمة	مجتمعات communities
eddiction الإيمان	اکسپر	ترکیز concentration
admiration الإعجاب	معرض الكتاب book fair	considerate مراع للأخرين
adolescence فترة المراهقة	bossy متغطرس	consideration اعتبار
advance متقتراميقت	عائل الأسرة bread winner	consult يستشير
مغامرة adventure	bringing up	contagious ناقل للعدوى
aggression عدوان	bring prices down يقلل الأسعار	حجر الزاوية corner stone
aging کبر السن	brotherhood الأخوة	craft حرفة
alternatives بدائل	campaign حملة	creative قبدع
ancient monuments الأثار القديمة	قدرة/طاقة capacity	creativity الإبداع
artery شریان	capital treason خيانة عظمى	crisis ida
ashamed خجلان من موقف	عوادم السيارات car fumes	curfew حظر التجوال
assassination المتنال	catastrophe عارثة	deadly
attitude موقف	catch up with يواكب/يساير	declare
authenticity أصالة	championship بطولة	emotion addis
authority authority	chaos	exploit يستغل الوقت
awareness	characteristics فصائص	القضاء والقدر fate
aware of	in the same and th	
backbone لعمود الفقرى	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	اللبنة الأولى first stone
Dackbone	i ala	gatherings التجمعات
baggage/luggage متعة السفر	- 1.04	greed بشع
Data riced diet	استنساخ	dialogue الحوار
Dattie	شياعت	imitate Jā
UCai		impose الله

PART 1

infection	عدوى	postpone	يؤجل	rationalise	رشد
instructions	التعليمات	poverty	الفقر	reasonable	ر عقول
join hands	يتكاتف	praise	يمدح/يشمد ب		عادة تصنيع/تدوي
lack of responsib	Dility انعدام المسئولية	pray	صلاة/يصلى		يقلل
layers of society	طبقات المجتمع	preserve	يحافظ/يصون	reflection	انعكاس
mental	عقلی/دهنی	prevention	وقاية	reforms	اصلاحات
model teacher	المدرس القدوة	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء	relationships	علاقات
mutate	يتحور/يتحول	principles	مبادئ	religion	الدين
one tissue	نسيج واحد	privacy	خصوصية	reputation	سمعة
optimism	التفاؤل	private sector	القطاع الخاص	resources	مصادر
outbreak	تفشى	process	عملية	respect	الاحترام/يحترم
outlet	مخرج	producer	منتج	respiratory syste	m الجهاز التنفسي
outstanding	بارز/ظاهر	productive	منتج/غزير الإنتاج	responsibility	مسئولية
overcome = get	over يتغلب على	promote	يترقى/ينشط	restore/recovery	استرجاع
pandemic	وباء	prosperity	الرخاء	revolution	ثورة
patience	الصبر	protection	حماية	rewarding	مجزية
patriotism	وطنية	provide	يوفر	rights	حقوق
pave	عصمت	public sector	القطاع العام	rise/ leap	طفرة
perfection/mast	ering الإنقان	punctuality	المواظبة	rivals	منافسون
perform	يۈدى/يعمل	punctual	مواظب	rumour	إشاعة
pessimistic	متشائم (صفة)	quarantine	حجر صحی	rush hour	ساعة الذروة
phenomena	ظواهر طبيعية	quarrels	مشاجرات	sacrifice	التضحية
pioneer	رائد/قائد	rapidly	بسرعة	satisfaction	الرضا
policy	سياسة	rare	نادر	satisfactory	مئرض
positively	بإيجابية	rationalisation	ترشيد	satisfied	راض

ects	springs	ينابيع	trash = rubbish	قمامة
ecurity	stability	استقرار/ثبات	treaty	معاهدة
elf-reliance الاعتماد على النفس	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة	undertake	بعمد
elf-sufficiency الاكتفاء الذاتي	History and the second		unemployment	البطالة
elfishness الأنانية	stimulate	يحفز	unite	يتحد
elfish أنانى	strength	قوة	لراب unrest	ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
يفصل/يفرق eparate	strike	إضراب	unselfishness	عدم الأنانية
serious جاد	strong will	إرادة قوية	up-to-date	حدیث/عصری
شدید/قاس/صادم severe	struggle	يكافح	update	يحدث بيانات
shade الظل	subject	يتعرض	uprising	انتفاضة
نقص shortage	sufficiency	اكتفاء/كِفَاينة	uproot	يستأصل
قص/عجز shortness	summer resort	المصيف	urge	تحث على
فجول بطبعه	survive	يعيش/يبقى حيـُـا	vaccine	مصل
وية المعالم السياحية sightseeing	suspend	يؤجل	values	القيم
sights مساحية	symptoms	أعراض	votes	أصوات انتخابات
علامات signs	take to	يلتزم بـ	wasteful	مبذر
slogan	talented	موهوب	wealth	ثروة
social affairs شئون الاجتماعية	terrorism	الإرهاب	weapons	أسلحة
ماسك/تضامن solidarity	thanks to	بفضل	welfare	رفاهية
صدر source	theft	السرقة	while ,	يقضى وقتنا أو يضي
ميلة/نوع species	the press	الصحافة	wisdom	لحكمة
spirit ès	threaten	مسد	witness	شمد
splendid ئع	tolerance	التسامح	work market	سوق العمل
spoil	tourism	السياحة	worship	قىس/عبادة
sports facilities سميلات رياضية	tourist revenue	المخل من السياحة		

Exercises

A) Translate into Arabic:

- The television and the mobile are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young.
- Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour like helping the people in need and accepting differences among people.
- Mass production brought down prices and meant that people could afford to buy things that had been too expensive for them in the past.
- 4. We are becoming increasingly dependent on computers. They are used in businesses, hospitals, banks and even crime detection.
- 5. Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life.
- 6. Cleanliness is extremely important in protecting us from many different kinds of infections. Everyone should follow cleanliness to be healthy and happy all through the life.
- 7. Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity.
- 8. Getting the right amount of sleep is not only important in terms of being able to function properly during daytime, but it also has an impact on your overall health.
- Our country is in need of every one's efforts. We must work hard to produce and export. Then, we will save hard currency and achieve welfare.
- 10. We can't ignore the fact that education in our country needs an urgent rescue operation.
- 11. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.
- 12. There is no doubt that smoking is a fatal habit. Figures show that the number of smoking victims is increasing all the time.
- 13. We all must stop throwing rubbish in the streets and in the Nile to solve pollution problems.
- 14. With patience and strong will, man can get over the hardships he faces.

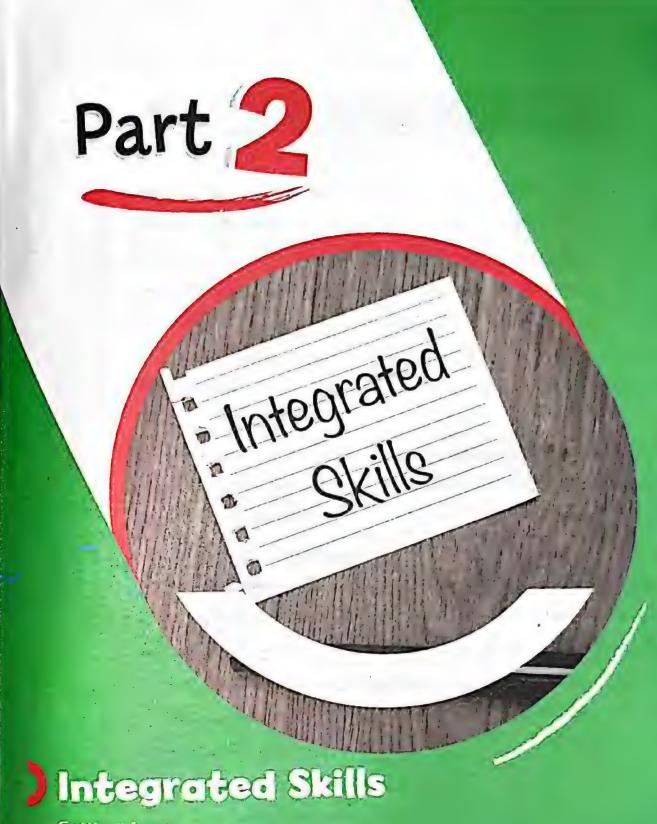


- 15. Reading helps us to increase our information to become knowledgeable about many things in life.
- 16. Many people prefer the peaceful life of the countryside to the noise and congestion of large cities.
- 17. A successful leader should be intelligent, strict, far-sighted and an example worthy to be followed.
- **18.** Earthquakes, volcanoes, storms, hurricanes and tsunamis are all natural phenomena which destroy all the achievements of man.
- 19. The Egyptian woman plays a vital role in all walks (fields) of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.
- 20. The educational institution seeks to deepen the democratic thought and train the young generations in participation, voicing opinion and constructive criticism.
- 21. The invisible serious problem of water is increasing more and more due to the wrong thought that sea and river water is endless.
- 22. Dumping trash in water pollutes it, so laws must be imposed to prevent that.
- 23. Don't waste your time. Time is your life and you should exploit it carefully and benefit from it as much as possible.
- 24. A bird in hand is better than two in the bush. Hence, be satisfied with what you own.
- 25. Methods of irrigation must be promoted to economise the amount of water used in the traditional way.
- **26.** Tourism is the hope of our country to supply hard currency and work opportunities for our youth.
- 27. Do you think our youth deliberately desire to be naughty or they just imitate with closed eyes and minds?
- 28. Coral reefs must be conserved as they attract a lot of tourists and are the home of scarce species of fish.
- 29. Work is worship. Without it neither we nor our motherland would progress. So, don't be ashamed of any job or craft.
- **30.** We must attract foreign and Arab investors, stimulate tourism and change cultural awareness if we want to recover the Egyptian economy.

PART 1

B) Translate into English:

- ١ إن مشاهد العنف التي تشهدها بعض ملاعب الرياضة خير دليل على غياب الروح الرياضية.
 - ٣ حاليًا يتابع معظم الناس الأخبار على الإنترنت بدلًا من مطالعة الصحف المطبوعة.
- ٣ النظافة الشخصية مهمة إذا كنت تريد الحفاظ على صحتك، فهي تحمينا من الأمراض المعدية التي تنتقل بسرعة من شخص لأخر،
 - ٤ إن الاستقرار الاجتماعي والسياسي سيجلب مزيدًا من الاستثمارات وينعش الاقتصاد .
 - ه إن قضية إصلاح التعليم من أخطر القضايا التي تواجه المجتمع المصري؛ حيث إن البحث العلمي أحد ركائز الأمن القومي.
 - ٦ أن مصر تحتاج إلى جهود المخلصين من أبنائها حتى تتغلب على كل المشاكل التي تعوق تقدمها.
 - ٧ إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبحت واجبًا وطنيًا لأنها تمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة في مصر.
 - ٨ يجب على الحكومة الاستثمار في البنية التحتية وتشجيع الاستثمارات الداخلية والخارجية.
 - ٩ السياحة مصدر هام لجلب العملة الصعبة لمصر، لذا علينا أن نقدم كل التسهيلات الممكنة لجذب السياح إلى مصر،
- ١٠ يجب أن نشجع الاستثمار ونزيد الإنتاج ونقلل الاستملاك، فهذا سوف يخفض الأسعار ويحل المشكلة الاقتصادية، ولا يمكن أن يتحقق ذلك بدون تعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.
 - ١١ هل استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم سيساعد الطالب في تخطى الكثير من التحديات المعاصرة؟
 - ١٢ يعتمد تقدم أي أمة على تطوير التعليم، وكذلك الاهتمام بالزراعة والصناعة.
 - ١٢ الرياضة ليست فقط من أجل تنمية اللياقة البدنية، ولكن لتطوير الناحية الذهنية كذلك.
 - ١٤ لابد من تطوير القطاعين الخاص والعام لتوفير فرص عمل للخريجين والقضاء على البطالة.
 - ٥١ لابد من ربط التعليم بسوق العمل، وفتح كليات جديدة تؤهل الطالب للعمل بكفاءة.
 - ١٦ الأب هو عائل الأسرة ليوفر لها الحماية والرعاية، والأم هي حجر الأساس لتوفير العاطفة والحب.
 - ١٧ يجب علينا الاهتمام بالموهوبين لأنهم أمل الأمة ومستقبلها، لذلك يجب توفير رعاية خاصة لهم.
 - ١٨ ندرة الماء أزمة العالم القادمة، ومن ثم اقتصد في استهلاكك للمياه، فقطرة الماء تساوي حياة.
 - ١٩ إن الإصرار هو أول خطوة للنجاح، فلابد أن تتميز بالإصرار والعزيمة وقوة الإرادة.
 - ٣٠ لابد أن يسود مبدأ الشوري داخل العائلة لينمو الطفل محبًا للحوار واحترام الرأي الآخر.
 - ٢١ كلما كانت لديك القدرة على التخيل كنت أكثر إبداعنا، لذلك أكثر من القراءة.
 - ٣٢ الماء إكسير الحياة وشريانها، فحافظ عليه من التلوث ولا تلق القمامة فيه.
 - ٣ علينا أن نلتزم بعاداتنا وتقاليدنا، ولا نقلد لمجرد التقليد، فنحن شعب متدين بطبيعته.
 - ٢٤ لابد من صيانة وتطوير وسائل المواصلات العامة لكي يتم استخدامها بواسطة فئات المجتمع المختلفة.
 - ٢٥ الشعب المصرى نسيج واحد، فلا تؤثر فيه الإشاعات ومحاولات التفرقة بين طوائفه المختلفة.
 - ٣٦ المدرس القدوة هو العمود الرئيسي في العملية التعليمية، لذلك تهتم وزارة التربية والتعليم بتدريبه.
 - ٧٧ ارض بما قدره الله لك لأن راحة النفس تقلل الضغوط وتمنع الكثير من الأمراض.
 - ٢٨ لقد ثبت علمينًا أن الموسيقي تقلل التوتر ويتم استخدامها في علاج بعض الأمراض.
 - ٢٩ المدرسة هي اللبنة الأولى لتعليم الطفل النظام والمواظبة، لذلك يجب الاهتمام بالمدرسة.
 - ٣٠ وسائل الإعلام مصدر لمعرفة الكثير من طبقات الشعب، لذلك يجب أن تقدم محتوى جيدًا.



Getting Away
Supporting Community
Improving Lives
Friendship
Communications
Learning from literature



Skills Integration Methodology

-) نهدف من خلال تدريس هذا الجزء (Skills Integration) إلى الارتقاء بمستوى تعلم مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية لدى الطلاب في بداية المرحلة الثانوية. حاولنا من خلال ذلك الربط بين المهارات الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة و الاستماع و الكتابة (Reading & Listening & Writing) الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة و الاستماع و الكتابة والكتابة عده وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بصورة مترابطة عن طريق تدريس نفس الموضوع من جوانب عده وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بالإضافة إلى إكسابهم رؤى مختلفة يستطيعون من خلالها تكوين منظورهم الخاص. تم تقديم المهارات بشكل يتواكب مع طريقة تلقى الطالب فتم البدء بمهارة القراءة ثم مهاره الاستماع وانتهاء بمهارة الكتابة بعد أن ينتهى الطالب من اكتساب مفردات لغوية جديدة في جزئيتي القراءة والاستماع.
-) بدأنا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill في صورة قطعة فهم Reading Skill بدأنا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill في صورة قطعة فهم عليما أسئلة مشابهة لما قد يتعرض له الطالب أثناء أدائه الامتحان النهائي. تلى ذلك تقديم ومراجعة بعض الإرشادات الخاصة بقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية Grammar Hints.
-) يأتى بعد ذلك الجزء الخاص بتقديم مهارة الاستماع Listening Skill ويعتبر كتاب GEM رائدًا في تقديم تلك المهارة في قالب غير تقليدى لمساعدة الطلاب في تنميتها من خلال تقديم نص مسموع حول نفس موضوع قطعة الفهم. ثم تقديم ترجمة الكلمات الجديدة التي قد تساعد في فهم الطالب للموضوع وتكوين حصيلة لغوية لديه. ثم تقديم أسئلة حول هذه الكلمات للتأكد من فهم الطالب لها وقدرته على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة.
-) في الجزء الأخير يطلب من الطالب تطبيق نتائج ما تم فهمه في الأجزاء السابقة من خلال ممارسة مهارة الكتابة Writing Skill عن طريق:
 - ١- ترجمة لبعض الجمل المتعلقة بالموضوع.
 - ٢- كتابة مقال مطابق للمعايير متعلق بالموضوع أيضنا.

وبذلك يكون الطالب قد تحصل على معلومات إضافية في قالب غير تقليدي تساعده في الإجابة عن أية أسئلة محررة مسايرة لاتجاهات التقييم الحديثة.





Comprehension passage)

Reading

Travel is something which people do every day. It is very difficult to avoid the need to travel. It may be a trip to school, university or to work. Travelling can often take a long time, especially when great distances need to be covered. People often enjoy travelling abroad for holidays. But for some people travelling is not fun at all. Some people suffer from travel sickness. This means that they will become very unwell each time they travel.

Cars and motorcycles are faster modes of transport, but are more expensive to use as gasoline is needed for them to work. It can usually be assumed that the longer you wish to travel, the more expensive and time consuming it will be. The use of a plane is necessary for people wanting to travel very long distances. Although traffic is rarely a problem for airplanes, it can take a lot of preparation to travel by plane.

A train is another mode of transport which is ideal for travelling long distances within the same country, or between countries which are connected by land. A train driver will stop at train stations on route to allow passengers wishing to proceed to the scheduled destination to board the train.

A number of destinations can be travelled to by using the sea. Some people choose to go on a cruise for their holiday, which would involve stopping at many different city ports for a short amount of time. People who need to travel short distances may choose not to use any transport at all. People often rely on their legs to take them to places nearby. This is often encouraged as certain modes of transport have been said to produce harmful emissions and damage the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer:t

- 1. Which mode of transport does not cost money?
 - a) Train.

b) Car.

c) Walking.

d) Bus.

- 2. Why do some people not enjoy travelling?
 - a) They find it a waste of time.
 - b) It is not comfortable.
 - c) It is expensive.
 - d) They become unwell.



PART

3. Name the mode of transport which is controlled by a pilot and stops at an airport.

b) Airplane.

c) Car.

d) Bus.

4. Which mode of transport is ideal for travelling between countries connected by land?

b) Train.

c) Airplane.

d) Car.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. In your opinion, how would life be without planes?

6. Which mode of transport do you prefer? Why?

7. Why are using cars and motorcycles very expensive?



Grammar hints

Grammar

When you talk about travelling and means of transporting you mainly use the present simple tense because you are talking about facts. Also you can use the future simple to express your prediction about the future and use the past simple to talk about past actions and experiences.

How to form the present simple tense in English:

Structure of present simple				
positive	negative	question		
I work in a bank.	I don't work in a bank.	Do I work in a bank?		
You work in a bank.	You don't work in a bank.	Do you work in a bank?		
He works in a bank.	He doesn't (does not) work in a bank.	Does he work in a bank?		
She works in a bank.	She doesn't (does not) work in a bank.	Does she work in a bank?		
It rains a lot.	It doesn't (does not) rain.	Does it rain a lot?		
We work in a bank.	We don't work in a bank.	Do we work in a bank?		
They work in a bank.	They don't work in a bank.	Do they work in a bank?		

How to form the past simple tense in English:

	Structure of Past simple	
Positive	Negative	Question
I / you / he / she / it / we / they arrived.	I / you / he / she / it / we / they didn't arrive.	Did I / you / he / she / it / we / they arrive?

How to form the future simple tense in English:

Structure of future simple				
Positive	Negative	Question		
I will (I'll) be there tomorrow.	I won't (will not) be there.	Will I be there tomorrow?		
you will, he will, she will, it will, we will, they will	you will not, he will not, she will not, it will not, we will not, they will not	will you?, will he?, will she?, will it?, will we?, will they?		





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

advantages	مزایا	encourage	يشجع
assume	يۇكد	environment	البيلة
avoid	يتجئب	especially	وبخاصة
connected	متصل	gasoline	بنزين
consuming	استملاك	passengers	مسافرون
cruise	رحلات نهرية	payment	مقابل مادى
travel agency	شركة سياحة	enjoyment	متعه
expenses	نفقات	gain	يكتسب
companion	رفیق/صحبه	purpose	**
journey	رحلة	Parpose	عرص

· •	EXerci	ses	
1 Choose the correct	answer from a h co	r di	
1 took the ring roa	ad to the traffic	riu: ciamain the decembe	
a) get	b) find	c jains in the downto	own.
2 The underground	d stopped suddenly be	c) stay	d) avoid
had to get out of	it	ecause of a breakdo	wn so all the
	b) crafts	a) montrore	d) trakkers
3 The big amount	of pollution is very harr	c) workers	a) tiekkeis
a) lobby	b) environment	niui to thear	d) closes
My little brother	got low marks in the n	c) market	a) closers
to get better.			
a) discouraged	b) rejected	c) encouraged	d) discussed
6 One of e	lectric cars is that it do	esn't go for long dista	ances.
a) demerity	b) activities	c) advantage	d) con
	the by buying		
a) expenses			
🥱 I get a lot of	out of working with	h young children. The	ey are fantastic.
	b) worry		
The of the	nis meeting is to elect a	new chairman.	
a) reason	b) purpose		d) conclusion
She has	a good reputation as a	great teacher.	
a) earned	b) won	c) beaten	d) gained
10 A/An is	a company that arrang	ges hotel rooms, pla	ne tickets for people
who want to trav	∕el.		
a) news agency	b) advertising agence	y c) travel agency	d) travel channel
2 Translation:			
A) Translate into E	nalish:		Writing
A) Translate into L	ئد السفر لا حدود لها ولكن يتوقف	نوائد. ولكن يرى البعض أن فواة	قاله في الماضي أن للسفر سبع ف
B) Translate into A		, , , , , , ,	C. 7 0.0 - 0 7 -
Decele who are	interested in travelling	don't give due care	to how much money
they will spend,	they only think about I	how much enjoymer	nt they will have.
3 Writing:			1 41 . 6 - 11 2
Write an essay of a	bout ONE HUNDRED	AND FIFTY (150) WO	ras on the following:
	Expectations about tr	ravelling in the futu	re.
(The previous ideas	s (comprehension- voc	apulary- exercises- t	ransiation - Grammar
hints) may help you	ı to write an appropria	te essay)	2





Supporting community





Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A community is a group of people who live and work together. People who help each other and provide service to them are called community helpers. Whether you live in a small town, on a farm, or in a big city there are many community helpers.

Community helpers are people who work to help the community and the people who live in a community. There are many kinds of community helpers. There are community helpers who keep you safe and healthy, keep neighbourhoods clean, volunteer their time, and make sure everything works and gets built in the community.

The people who keep a community safe include firefighters, paramedics, and police officers. A police officer keeps people in the community safe from those who might try to hurt others. Firefighters also keep people safe. They help people who are in an accident or who have a fire at their house. A paramedic cares for people and takes them to a hospital when they are hurt or sick.

Two community helpers increase the knowledge of the people. A librarian takes care of and provides books and other materials to those in the community who need them. A librarian must be smart and care about books. A teacher helps others learn many different things in a school. A teacher must know a lot about different subjects and how to tell this information to others.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. How many community helpers are mentioned in the passage?
 - a) 3

- **d**) 6
- 2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 - a) firefighters

b) paramedics

c) police officers

- d) all mentioned
- 3. The suitable title of the passage is
 - a) community helpers

b) community workers

c) community services

d) community savers



- 4. Which of the following must know a lot about climbing ladders?
 - a) Police officers.

c) Firefighters.

b) Pilots.

d) Librarians.

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. Why do you think we should be community helpers?
- 6. Who can increase the knowledge of the people? How?
- 7. What is a community?



Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about charity work and how to help our society, you mainly use present simple tense whether active or passive forms as you are talking about persons' habits and also facts.
- Also, you can use the past simple tense when you talk about someone's achievements in the field of supporting and helping the society.

How to form the past simple tense:

Positive	Negative	
- I/He/She/It/We/You/They went out fast I/He/She/It/We/You/They played football well.	 I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't go out. I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't play football well. 	
Question	Passive form	
Did (subject) inf? What did (subject) inf?	Obj. (was -were) + p.p. A football match was played yesterday.	

How to form the passive form of the present simple:

Active form	Passive form
 Some people donate money for charities. We always help the poor in our community. 	 Money is donated for charities. The poor are always helped in our community.







Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز
characteristics	سمات
charities	الجمعيات الخيرية
climb	يتسلق
clothing	ملبس
collect	يجمع
desire	رغبة
distribute	દોકર
donate	تينرع
effort	خعد
firefighter	رجل المطافى

good citizen	مواطن صالح
knowledge	معرفة
ladder	سلم
neighbourhood	حی سکنی
paramedic	مسعف
possessions	ممتلكات
provide	يمد/يزود
safe	آمن
smart	ذكى
through	<mark>من</mark> خلال/عن طريق
volunteer	يتطوع/متطوع

Exercises

Choose the correct	- ACI CI)	
We all salat	answer from a, b, c or	r d:	•
	ne .		
a) characteristic	b) achievement ents get good grades	rial team to be qualif	ied to the world cup.
2 Ine stude	ents get good grades a	c) desire	d) clothing
a) sate	ents get good grades a b) financial	nd go to the Faculty	of Medicine.
The university sh	ould more facil	c) homeless	d) smart
a) provide	b) collect	ities for disabled stu	dents.
You'll need water	proof if you are	c) climb	d) create
	WI CHALACTOPIETIAS		
6 Ali was treated at	b) characteristics the scene by a team of e hospital	c) clothing	d) possessions
a) firefighters	b) paramedics	a) valent	
6 The company	information abou	t consumer face :	d) neighbourhoods
a) donates	b) climbs	consumer favourite	
7 My father lifted t	he box easily, without u	c) attends	d) collects
a) effort	b) clothing	sing much	
Sorry, I can't. The	wall is too high to	c) possessions	d) knowledge
a) go	b) run	over.	d) II
	or the army even though	The did not have to	d) walk
a) ioined	b) volunteered	distributed	
	the first step on the		d) provided
a) characteristic		c) knowledge	ما المطاعة
	b) clothing	c) knowledge	d) ladder
Translation:			Writing
A) Translate into E			The second of th
ن المصرى الصالح.	م والجهد واحدة من سمات المواطر	ع عن طريق التبرع بالمال والده	- إن الرغبة في مساعدة المجتم
B) Translate into A	rabic:		
Volunteer work is	s a great way to help ar	nd support the comr	nunities. As many
people like to wo	ork as volunteers during	g their free time.	
Writing:			•
Weite	out ONE HUNDRED A	ND FIFTY (150) wor	ds on the following:
Way	s of supporting our so	ciety to be a bette	r one.
The previous ideas (Comprehension - Voca	bulary - Exercises - T	ranslation - Grammar
hints) may help you	to write a comprehens	sive essay.	
			-





Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you wish to change life and to get success, you need to work hard. Yes, it is very difficult to do, but you will get a lot of benefits later. Only those people, who work hard and spend a lot of their time can reach their goals and be successful.

If you do something, that you like, it is known, that you will get success quickly and you will get positive results. You should not think about what other people are speaking, it is needed just to do and reach the goals. You should understand that life consists of different events, without them, it is impossible to get success. Do you know that all dreams will come true if you work hard on them? All thoughts' are connected with the reactions and because of them, if you change the way of thinking, you can change life.

A lot of the doctors say that smiling is very useful for life. It will give a lot of power and positive emotions. You will see that it is impossible to be in a bad mood, if you are smiling. Also, it is better to communicate with people, who are smiling, because it creates better start of the conversation. If you are eating healthy food, the brain will get all needed vitamins and minerals. Because of this fact, you will have a lot of power to do something new and to work hard to reach goals. Because of this fact, it is recommended to check the way of life and start doing sport.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. To be successful, you should
 - a) think about what other people are speaking
 - b) eat junk food
 - c) be serious
 - d) neglect people's speech

	Integrated Sk
2. It is impossible to be in a bad mood	l, if you are
c) smiling	b) changing your life
3. The synonym of "understand" is	a) doing sport
a) grasp c) mistake	b) recognise
4. The underlined word "them" refers t	d) attach
a) results	b) reactions
c) goals	d) events

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.
- 6. How do you think we can achieve our dreams?
- 7. How can healthy food help us to improve our life?

Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about an important or a famous character, you mainly use the past simple tense to describe his life, place of birth, date of birth and how he became famous. Also, you can use the past simple tense to talk about his works or achievements that he made.
- When you write about a situation that happened to you or a story, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- But, when you talk about an invention or a discovery that has made some improvements to our lives, you can use the present perfect tense to show its effects that are still with us.

How to form the present perfect tense:

Positive	Negative
- I/we/you/they have cleaned the house.- He/She/it has left the house.	 I/you/they haven't cleaned the house. He/she/it hasn't left the house.
Question	Passive form
- Have you/they cleaned the house? - Has he/she/it left the house?	 The house has been cleaned. Some books have been published recently.



Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

penefits	فوائد	mental •	Lie
oringing up	التربية	minerals	الملاح معدنية
create	يخلق	mood	دالة مزاجية
dreams	أحلام	physical	بىنى
emotions	عواطف	positive	إيجابى
encourage	يشجع	reaction	رد فعل
event	حدث هام	resült	نتيجة
financial	مادی	shelter	ملوى
goal	منف	smiling	لابتسام
healthy food	طعام صحى	success	جاح
homeless	مشرد	successful	جع
ideal	مثالی	understand	عم
impossible	مستحيل	vitamins	تلفينات
-			

Exercises

	LACIC		
Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
The discovery o	f oil brought many	to the future of a	
a) benefits	b) vitamins	to the future of o	ur country.
	ts are expected to	c) results	d) minerals
a) encourage	b) discourage	2000 Jobs.	AN L. C.
3 The centre prov	ides help for people and	c) create	d) bring up
a) beneficial	rides help for people su	rrering froml	iness.
The concert of	b) mental	c) nomeless	d) successful
a) succond	Amr Diab was a great)))))))))))))))	25
E Having a	b) successful	c) successor	d) success
	is considered as one o		
	b) mood		
Saturday.	nplete the report by Frid	day, that would be	; I need it before
•	b) improper	c) ideal	d) ideally
	ve've had from the publi		•
make more suc		•	•
a) negative	b) positive	c) disappointing	d) impossibly
Can vou tell us	about yourwhe	n you knew that you	won the prize?
a) smiling	b) result	c) goal	d) reaction
The governmen	nt achieved their	of providing free educa	ation for every child.
a) goal	b) emotion	c) mood	d) disadvantage
We should help	people with severe	disabilities.	
a) successful	b) impossible	c) physical	d) curable
Translation:			Writing
A) Translate into	English:		
ن لهم وأيضا الاهتمام	والمشردين عن طريق توفير ماوى آم	واطنون الاهتمام بأطفال الشوارع و	- يجب على الدولة و كذلك المو
,		عمّلية والمادية.	بهم من النواحي البدنية وال
B) Translate into Parents and te children and st	Arabic: achers are the main su udents through providi	ipporters for improviring the ideal upbringing	ng the lives of their ng and education.
A 1 A / 1 A 1			

Writing:
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:
The efforts of the Egyptian government to improve the lives of the Egyptians.
The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar The previous ideas (Comprehension appropriate essay.
hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.



Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Friendship is one of the greatest bonds anyone can ever wish for. Lucky are those who have friends they can trust. Friendship is a devoted relationship between two individuals. They both feel immense care and love for each other. Usually, a friendship is shared by two people who have similar interests and feelings.

You meet many along the way of life, but only some stay with you forever. Those are your real friends who stay by your side through thick and thin. Friendship is the most beautiful gift you can present to anyone. It is one which stays with a person forever. A person is acquainted with many persons in their life. However, the closest ones become our friends. You may have a large friend circle in school or college, but you know you can only count on one or two people with whom you share true friendship.

There are essentially two types of friends, one is good friends the other are true friends or best friends. They're the ones with whom we have a special bond of love and affection. In other words, having a true friend makes our lives easier and full of happiness. Most importantly, true friendship stands for a relationship free of any judgments. In a true friendship, a person can be himself/herself completely without the fear of being judged. It makes you feel loved and accepted. This kind of freedom is what every human strives to have in their lives.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. If you have trusted friends, you are
 - a) unlucky

b) unfortunate

c) devoted

- d) lucky
- 2. How many types of friends are in our life?
 - a) One.

b) Two.

c) Three.

d) Four.



3.	The	underlined	word	"It"	refers	to	***************
			0				

a) freedom

b) ordinary friendship

c) true friendship

d) fear

4. The word "immense" is similar in meaning to

a) many

b) small

c) minor

d) great

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. Do you have a true friend? Why? Why not?
- 6. Why do you think we need true friends?
- 7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.



Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about how to make a new friend, friendship, or the qualities of a good friend, you can use present simple tense. But if you want to talk about an experience with a friend, you can use the past simple tense.
- When you talk about your experience of moving to a new place, you can use both the
 present simple tense and the past simple tense to compare between the two places
 and to describe your feelings. Also you can here use the present continuous and the
 past perfect.
- Take care of the articles (a an the) when you talk or write about something. You have to know whether the noun is singular, plural, specified or unique.

How to form the past perfect tense:

Positive '	Negative
- I/He/She/It/We/You/They had played with the ball.	- I/He/She/It/We/You/They hadn't played with the ball.
Question	Passive form
- Had you/she/he/it/they played with the ball?	- Obj. + had been + p.p.





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

affection	عاطفة	interests	اهتمامات
attribute to	يعزز/ينسب إلى	internal	داخلی
bonds	روابط	judge	يحكم
college	كلية	judgments	Lesson statements and total statements.
companion	صحبة	loyalty	الإخلاص
confidence	الثقة	lucky	محظوظ
deceive	يخدع	maintain	يحافظ على
factors	عوامل	mutual respect	الاحترام المتبادل
feelings	مشاعر	relationship	علاقة
forever	الأبد	self-esteem	تقدير الذات
freedom	حرية	share	يشارك
friendship	الصداقة	sorrow	حزن
gift	هدية	tie	رابطة
immense	ضذم	tolerance	تسامح
individuals	أفراد	trust	بثق



Exercises

Chance the		JIGCS.	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, o	or d:	
Treally have a go	od with my I	ittle sister. I adore her.	
aj relative	relationship	el citizanchia	all chammianchin
To cooperate we	ll with each other, all	of us should show	u) championship
a) violetice	D) intolerance	c) tolerance	d) difference
Parents must have	erespect as	they are role models f	or their children
a) manual	b) annual	c) monster	d) mutual
The thief	the woman and too	k all her money.	a , ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
a) deceived	b) received	c) ticked	d) tracked
		e death of my father. H	le was very sad.
a) joy	b) happiness	c) sorrow	
The prisoner was		ter 25 years in prison.	
a) free	b) freedom		d) relationship
His unhappiness	in his workplace was	the main in his dec	ision to travel abroad.
a) element	b) result	c) consequence	d) factor
During the last fe	ew days, I had	difficulties because o	
a) simple	b) immediate		
		ause of the wonderful	
a) companion	b) campaign	c) continent	
No country has t		in other country's	affairs.
a) internal	b) ordinary	c) abnormal	d) extraordinary
Translation:			Writing
A) Translate into E	nglish:	•	
لاص والاحترام المتبادل	, الثقة و التعاون والمحبة والإذ	لـ بين شخصين وتكون قائمة على 	- الصداقة هي رابطة قوية تربط
	1	ونها.	ولايمكن للإنسان أن يعيش بد
B) Translate into A	rabic:	. I for those such as low	y solf-osteem People
Loneliness can b	e attributed to inter	nal factors such as lov	nworthy of attention.
who lack confide	nce in themselves o	ften believe they are u	involutiy of attention.
Writing:			rds on the following:
Write an essay of al	out ONE HUNDRED	AND FIFTY (150) wo	ras on the following.
The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vo	cabulary - Exercises - T	IGIDIACIOIT GIGITIMA
hints) may help you	to write an appropr	iate essay.	
			(59)





9

Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is rare to find someone with good technical and communication skills. People will judge, evaluate, promote or block you based on your communication skills.

Learning what not to say is probably more important than learning what to say. As your career develops, you will realise that the wise speak less. Speak when you have value to add. Avoid any communication in an emotional state when you might say things you will regret later. One unnecessary word <a href="https://doi.org/10.108/journal

Another problem to overcome is speaking too fast. Since our minds are working faster than our speech, we are inclined to speak fast. This does not necessarily mean that the person hearing it will get it any faster. On the contrary, it is always the reverse. So slow down, and think before you speak. "When I get ready to speak to people," Abraham Lincoln said, "I spend two-thirds of the time thinking what they want to hear and one-third thinking what I want to say." Adding humour is also <u>essential</u>. But realise that not all jokes are funny and observe certain boundaries. Never say anything that could offend. Remember you are not a comedian who must offend as many people as you can to be witty.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To find someone	with good technical and c	communication skills i	is something
a) easy	b) ordinary	c) reachable	d) seldom
2. To be wise, you s	hould speak		a) scidoili
a) a lot	b) a little	c) more	d) fast
3. The word "uttered	d" is similar in meaning	to	u) last
a) cut	b) found	c) said	d) realised
4. The antonym of t	he word "essential" is		u) realised
a) trivial	b) major	c) main	d) important
	•		

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. Why do you think it is necessary to have good communication skills? 6. How can communication skills be developed?
- 7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.



Grammar hints



- . When you talk about means of communications or any modern technology in the future, you mainly use the future tense with its different forms.
- When you talk about any invention and its advantages and disadvantages, you mainly
- When you talk about something that happened at a particular time in the past, you can use the past simple and past continuous.

How to form the future tenses:

Positive Negative		Question	Passive form	
Subj. + will + inf.	Subj. + won't + inf.	Will + subj. + inf. ?	Obj. + will be + p.p.	
Subj. + (be) going	Subj. + (be not)	(Be) + sub+ going	Obj. + (be) going to be + p.p.	
to + inf.	going to + inf.	to + inf.?		
Subj. + (am – is –	Subj. + (am –is –	(Am – Is – Are) +	Obj. + (am – is –	
are) + v-ing.	are) not + v-ing.	subj. + v-ing?	are) + being + p.p.	
Subj. + will have + p.p.	Subj. + won't have	(Will) + Subj. + have	Obj. + will have	
	+ p.p.	+ p.p?	been + p.p.	

How to form past continuous tense:

Positive	Negative		
- I/we/you/they were playing football.- He/She/ It was eating.	- I/We/You/They weren't playing He/She/It wasn't eating.		
Question	Passive form		
- Were you/they playing football? - Was he/she/it eating?	- Obj. + (was – were) being + p.p.		





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

	pave ممثل کومید	يمهد
develop	portable يطور/ينمي	قابل للنقل
devices	rare	نادر
entertain	realise	يعرك
especially	role خاصة	
essential &	ruin اساسی/جوهر	يدمر
evaluate	schoolmates	زملاء في المدرسة
funny	slow down	هدئ (سرعة)
humour	speech	الكلام/الحديث
jokes	value	قيمة
تخدامات و multi-functional	wise متعددة الاست	حكيم
overcome	witness	يمني

EXercises

U	Choose	the correct	aneway	-	
	(The to	the correct	answer	from a, b	, cord:

Ine television a	nd the ser	coru:	
a) profitable	b) bearable	now	easy to move or carry
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		d) fictional
a) unimportant	b) assessment	environment clean to a	void most diseases
There were two	to the murd	c) inadvisable er and they were asked	d) unnecessary
a) witnesses	b) criminals	er and they were asked	to say what they saw.
Hams has a goo	d sense of	c) killers She is cheerful and funn	d) prisoners
a) human	b) boredom	c) humour	
1 he city was in a	state of after	er the earthquako	d) sorrow
			d)
we should	the situation care	of the second	r decision
The govern	b) valuate	c) evaporate	d) evaluate
a) paving	t is working on deve	eloping our roads by	them well
a) value	e goods with a total	of 10 million no	unds
-, raide	valve	c) evaluation	-11
a) overload	b) overcome	of the problems in a ve	ery short time.
10 We should have	freedom of	c) overcast	d) overcharge
what we say.		, but we must be polite	e and responsible for
a) speak	b) sponge	c) speech	4)
Translation:		c/ speech	d) sped

2 Translation:

A) Translate into English:

- شحد العالم مؤخرًا توسعنا كبيرًا في الكثير من المجالات و حاصة وسائل الاتصال حيث أصبح التواصل بين الناس في كافة أنحاء العالم عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي أكثر سهولة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Modern technology has paved the way for multi-functional devices like the smartwatch and the smartphone.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: Adverts on the internet and if they are good or bad.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.



Writing





1

Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Reading literature is a good habit, but it is of no use if one cannot understand or remember what he or she has read. A lot of people even forget the name of the book they have just finished reading because of their inability to make the most out of their reading.

Careful reading is the key tool for understanding the main idea of the content and making the most out of your reading activity. It is advisable to read a single line more than once if it has complex meanings. This makes its understanding better and clearer.

After reading the book, write a summary of the content on your own. In that abstract, emphasise the main idea and informative points of the content. Having an understanding the text is more important than reading or memorising it.

There are several ways for a reader to <u>enhance</u> his comprehension ability. The first one is to read the text in a loud voice. This way the reader will be able to listen to his voice and it will be easier for him to understand what he is reading.

The person who is reading the text doesn't have to know all the expressions and words written in the text. While reading, the reader should jot down those difficult words in a notebook so that later he can search for them. Once the reader has gathered all the incomprehensible words, he should look up those words in a dictionary. Exploring those words in the dictionary will help them to establish the lucid meaning of the text.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The underlined word "it" refers to
 - a) the main idea

b) the content

c) reading activity

- d) a single line
- 2. How many ways are mentioned in the passage to enhance comprehension ability?
 - a) One.

b) Two.

c) Three.

d) Four.

- 3. The person who is reading the text should
 - a) read in a loud voice
 - b) understand the meaning of all words
 - c) look up new words in a dictionary
 - d) all mentioned
- 4. The underlined word "enhance" means
 - a) improvise

b) decrease

c) discourage

d) improve

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. How do you think reading helps our life?
- 6. What kind of books do you like to read? Why?
- 7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you want to talk about your opinion of something such as a poet or a novel, you can use the present tenses; simple, perfect or continuous. But when you talk about the biography of the author or the writer, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- Take care when you talk or write about something that some verbs are followed by (to + inf.) or (V-ing) and also some verbs are followed by both according to the meaning.

How to form the present continuous tense:

Positive	Negative
- I am watching TV.	- I am not watching TV.
- You/We/They are watching TV.	- You/We/They aren't watching TV.
- He/She/It is watching TV.	- He/She/It isn't watching TV.
Question	Passive form
- Are you watching TV?	- Obj. + (am – is – are) being + p.p.
- Are They/you watching TV?	-TV is being watched.
- Is he/she/it watching TV?	







Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

activity	نشاط
Book Fair	معرض الكتاب
complex	معقد
content	محتوى
emphasise	يۇكد .
establish .	يۇسس
exhibitions	معارض
explore	يستكشف
expressions	وتعبيرات المنافية المنافية المنافة

gather	يجمع
habit	عادة
hold	يقام
inability	عدم القدرة
literature	الأدب
poetry	الشعر
publishing	نشر
recognise	يتعرف على
reduce	يقلل

Exercises

A Chanca the	-AGI	cises	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b,		
In the afternoon	there will I	cord;	
a) expressions	b) exhibitions	of to be practi	sed by the kids.
2 Most of the mon	ey will be used to	c) activities	d) views
work-force.	- asca (0	c) activities local industries a	nd mobilise the
	DI Omerical		
The chemical pro	Cessos in 1	c) reduce	d) recognise
a) wise	b) and involved in the	c) reduce ne experiment are extre	amely
My teacher alway	complex	c) portable	d)
a) established	s the impor	c) portable tance of studying hard	d) rare
Modical and	b) explored	c) gathered	
wiedical supplies	have been	mong familian are	a) emphasised
a) explored	b) established	c) distributed	d by Corona virus.
A collection of pa	intings by the great	distributed	d) published
a) literature	b) Book Fair	c) distributed artist is on at t	he Museum of Art.
7 He plans to	the area before h	c) expression	d) exhibition
a) explore	b) hold		
8 What annoved m	o is the	c) recognise	d) reduce
a) inability	ie is the of m	c) recognise by team to win the mate	ch.
/		- 1 - 111	
all items	siness of producing I	books and magazines.	
- recratule	Puplishing	- P	
we thought it wa	is COVID-19, but the	doctor didn't t	d) Exploring
a) establish	b) explore		الاعراض symptoms الاعراض

2 Translation:

A) Translate into English:

b) explore

Writing

d) hold

- الشعر، الرواية، القصص القصيرة، المسرحيات والكتب بمختلف موضوعاتها هي فنون الأدب الذي من خلاله نتعرف على ثقافة الدولة وشعبها.

c) recognise

B) Translate into Arabic:

The Cairo International Book Fair is the largest and oldest Book Fair in the Arab World. It is held every year at the Egypt International Exhibitions Centre.

3 Writing:

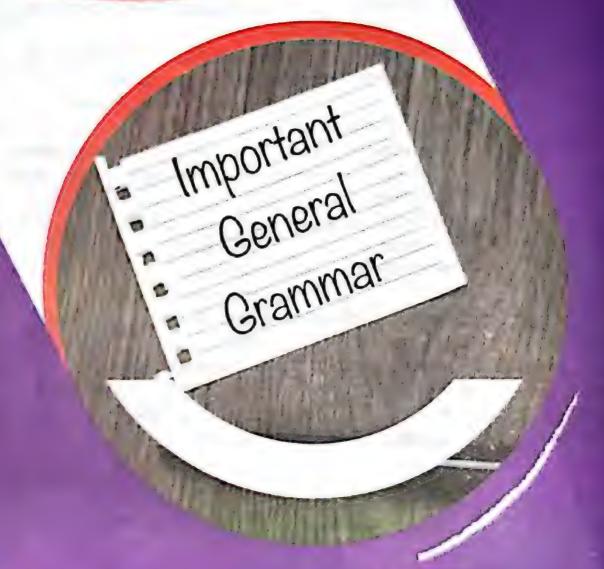
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

A biography of a famous Egyptian writer and his achievements.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.







Important General Grammar

Important General Grammar

Causative

وهى ليست مثل المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول فهى تأتى مع الأشياء التى لا يقوم الإنسان بفعلها بنفسه ولكن شخصنا آخر يقوم بهذا العمل له وتتكون من:

الشخص صاحب الشيء باقى الجملة

وعلى سبيل المثال، لو قلنا: إن الميكانيكي قام بتصليح سيارة أحمد، فلو بدأنا بالميكانيكي لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمعلوم، ولو بدأنا بالسيارة لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمجهول، ولو بدأنا بصاحب الشيء وهو أحمد لكانت الجملة سببية وهو ما نتحدث عنه الآن:

- -The mechanic repaired Ahmed's car.
- Ahmed's car was repaired.
- Ahmed had his car repaired.

(passive)

(Active)

(causative)

ولاحظ جيدًا تصريفات have في مختلف الأزمنة وهي كالأتي:

have/has	is having	had	was	have/has	had had	will have	أى فعل ناقص
			having	had	Hau Hau	will have	+ have

Active	Causative
She cleans her house.	She has her house cleaned.
She is cleaning her house.	She is having her house cleaned.
She cleaned her house.	She had her house cleaned.
She was cleaning her house.	She was having her house cleaned.
She will clean her house.	She will have her house cleaned.
She will be cleaning her house.	She will be having her house cleaned.
She has cleaned her house.	She has had her house cleaned.
She has been cleaning her house.	She has been having her house cleaned.

PART 3

She had cleaned her house.	She had had her house cleaned.
She had been cleaning her house.	She had been having her house cleaned.
She must clean her house.	She must have her house cleaned.
She likes cleaning her house.	She likes having her house cleaned.
She has to clean her house.	She has to have her house cleaned.
She used to clean her house.	She used to have her house cleaned.

- Mother was preparing our food when we returned home.
- = We were having our food prepared when we returned home.
- The barber is going to trim my hair.
- I'm going to have my hair trimmed.
- I have bought a computer for Mr Osama recently.
- = Mr Osama has had a computer bought recently.

Ex.

A: I hardly recognised you! You have had your hair dyed, Ahmed.

B: You should have your eyes tested. My name's Ramy not Ahmed.

A: Oh! You have had your name changed too, haven't you?

have بدلًا من get ويمكن استخدام الفعل

- You should get/have your car washed and polished.
- Did you have your hair cut?

Exercises

Hehis teeth checked twice	e a vear
a) had	b) is having
c) will have	d) has
Sheher skirt cleaned at the	e moment
a) is being had	b) has
c) is having	d) will have
🛐	
a) am having	b) have
c) will have	d) am going to have
Wea central heating instal	
a) are going to have	b) had had
c) had	d) have had
narburglar alarm fitted	last week.
a) is having	b) has
c) has had	d) had
€ Weour new furniture deliv	ered tomorrow.
a) are had	b) have
c) are going to have	d) have had
They are having their new house	at the moment.
a) decorating	b) decorated
c) decorate	d) decorates
Mrs. Othman had the shopping	to the house by her son.
a) carried	b) carries
c) carrier	d) carrying
9 We have to the lock fixed.	
a) had	b) having
c) be having	d) have
He is going to have a new pair of gla	isses
a) making	b) make
c) made	d) will make

2

Wishes & Regrets

الأماني والتدم

ا wish & If only

Wish/ If Only + Past Simple → refers to the present

+ Past perfect → refers to the Past

+ Would/could → refers to the Future

1. wish/ if only + past simple

١ - للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف في الحاضر نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط،

- My father only speaks Spanish. He wishes he spoke English or French.
- If only I didn't have so much homework. (I have a lot of homework).
- If only I lived in a big city. It's boring in the country.
- I wish I was/were a millionaire.

- يجوز استخدام (were) بدلًا من (was) في هذه الحالة وخاصة في المواقف الخيالية غير الواقعية.

2. wish/ if only + past perfect

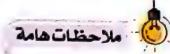
٢- للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف في الماضي نستخدم زمن الماضي التام.

- ▶ I wish I'd studied harder when I was at school. (I didn't study harder when I was at school).
- ▶ I wish I hadn't eaten all that chocolate. I feel sick.

3. wish/ if only + would/ could

٢- للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف في المستقبل نستخدم (مصدر + would/could).

- I wish it would rain.
 - The garden really needs some water.
- ▶ I wish you'd give up smoking.
 - It's really bad for you.



١ – يمكن استخدام (COUld) بدلًا من الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أمنية في الحاضر:

If only I could sing. (but I can't)

I wish I could find my keys to be able to enter the flat.

۲- غالبنا ما نستخدم (could) مع (l/we) ويمكن استخدام (would/could) مع باقى الضمائر في معان, خاصة مثل:

- wish they could speak French. (They can't.)
- I wish they would speak French. (They don't want.)
 - الجملة الأولى أنهم لا يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية وأتمنى لو يستطيعون.
 - الجملة الثانية أنهم يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية ولكنهم لا يريدون وهذا يضايقني.
 - ٣- نستخدم (could have + P.P) بدلًا من الماضي التام للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف في الماضي.
- I wish I could have attended your party, but I was abroad.
 - ٤- نستخدم (If only) مثل حالات (if) كالآتي:
- If only Ahmed had come earlier, he'd have met his classmates.
 - ه- لا تؤثر (wishes/ wished) في معنى الجملة أو زمنها.
- Maher wishes that he had a lot of money to buy a new house.
- Sameer wished he had mended the window before winter.
 - ٦- يمكن أن نستخيم الماضي المستمر بعد (wish/ if only)).
- Hwish it wasn't raining. (It is raining.)
- I wish you weren't leaving tomorrow. (You are leaving tomorrow.)
 - ٧- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد Wish يأتي (المصدر + to)
- Please do not hesitate to contact me if you wish to discuss the matter.

EXercises

1 wish my flat big enough to have	a party.
a) is	b) would be
c) will be	d) were
2 Omnia wishes sheall that money	on new clothes.
a) will spend	b) could spend
c) hadn't spent	d) spends
3 Ali wishes hea basketball player, l	
a) is	b) were
c) had been	d) are
4 I wish I to Ahmed's wedding last w	veek as he is angry with me.
a) had gone	b) went
c) would go	d) will go
5 My hope is to be a doctor. I wish I	a doctor.
a) had been	b) am
c) would be	d) could be
6 I can't concentrate. I wish they this	music down.
a) had turned	b) have turned
c) would turn	d) turn
7 He is an engineer, but he wishes he	medicine at university.
a) studied	b) had studied
c) would study	d) will study
8 I missed the train to Assuit. I wish I	it.
a) had caught	b) caught
c) catch	d) would catch
9 I usually visit China, but I wish Ithe	eir local food.
a) had liked	b) like
c) would like	d) liked
10 I regret going to the final match. I wish I	there.
a) didn't go	b) wouldn't go
c) hadn't gone	d) won't go



had better/ would rather/ prefer

- had better + inf. = should/ought to/ had better not + inf.
 - نستخدم had better بمعنى يجب أن، وبعدها المصدر وفي النفي not + inf.
- He'd better book his flight early.
- I'd better not take out a loan; I won't be able to pay it back.
- Would rather = prefer +v-ing
- نستخدم would rather بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها المصدر وفي النفي not + inf وهي تفيد تفضيل شيء على شيء، لذلك يمكن
 - استخدام than ثم المصدر معها.

- I'd rather do my shopping tomorrow.
- I'd rather not have gone to the dinner party last night.
- I'd rather stay at home than go out. ('d rather + inf. than + inf.)
- إذا جاء اسم أو ضمير بعد rather نستخدم الماضي البسيط أو الماضي التام بنفس معنى <mark>wish</mark> نستخدم الماضي للتعبير عن المضارع والماضي التام للتعبير عن الماضي،
- I'd rather you stayed with us tonight. 'd rather + subject + past
- I'd rather Ramy hadn't taken his father's car yesterday.
- (Prefer + ing) form/ noun + (to + ing) form/ noun (general preference)
- I prefer playing tennis to playing football. I prefer tennis to football.
- Prefer + (to + inf.)/ noun + rather than + inf./ noun (general preference)
- I prefer to eat fish rather than (eat) meat.
- Would prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf. (specific preference)
- I'd prefer to walk home rather than take the bus.

PART 3

Exercises

We went to the theatre yesterday; today I wo	uld rather to the sine and
a) going	b) to go
c) go	d) went
2 It's such nice weather – I'd preferin	the garden rather than watch TV
a) to sitting	b) sitting
c) sit	d) to sit
3 It's such nice weather – I'd prefer to sit in the	
a) instead of	b) to
c) than	d) rather than
4 I'd rather youa taxi. It's not safe on t	
a) to take	b) take
c) took	d) not take
5 The film is quite violent. I'd rather our childre	nit.
a) watch	b) didn't watch
c) to watch	d) watched
6 I prefer using a keyboardwith a pen	
a) to writing	b) to write
c) rather write	d) than write
7 I'd rather speak to him in personthir	ngs over the phone.
a) to discussing	b) to discuss
c) than discussing	d) than discuss
8 If I had a choice, I think I'd ratherLor	ndon.
a) living in Paris to	b) live in Paris than in
c) live in Paris to	d) to live in Paris than
They'd rather have lunch inside, but I'd prefer	routside in the garden.
a) eat	b) eating
c) to eat	d) to eating
Although I love relaxing on beaches, I think I	preferin the mountains.
a) walk	b) not to walking
c) to walking	d) walking
-,	



Unreal Past

الماضي غير الحقيقي

- يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط للإشارة إلى الحاضر (الحاضر غير الواقعي) عندما نتحدث عن مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق في الوقت الحاضر،

- يمكن استخدام الماضي التام للإشارة إلى مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق في الماضي (الماضي غير الحقيقي).

Past Simple is used with:

- Conditionals Type 2
- If I were you, I would pay.
- wish (present)
- I wish he were here now.
- Suppose/ Supposing
- Suppose you were asked to move out, what would you do?
- I'd rather + sbuj. ... (present)
- I'd rather you went now.
- as if/ as though كما لو
- He isn't French but he speaks French as if he were from France.
- It's (about/high) time
- It's time you retired.

Past Perfect is used with:

- Conditionals Type 3
- If I had seen him, I would have told you.
- wish (past)
- I wish you had taken his advice when he gave it.
- Suppose/ Supposing
- Suppose you had seen the crime being committed, what would you have done?
- I'd rather + subj. ... (past)
- I'd rather you hadn't told all those lies.
- as if/ as though
- ▶ He hadn't been awarded the first prize but he behaved as if he had been awarded it.

PART 3

Exercises

a) would own c) owns d) owned Supposing you taking the money, what would you have done? a) were seen b) had been seen c) had seen d) saw I wish I to the concert last night. a) didn't go b) went c) had gone d) have gone It's high time you how to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn Suppose you someone getting mugged قيس, what would you do
2 Supposing you taking the money, what would you have done? a) were seen c) had seen d) saw 3 I wish I to the concert last night. a) didn't go b) went c) had gone d) have gone 4 It's high time you how to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn 5 Suppose you someone getting mugged يسرق what would you do
a) were seen c) had seen d) saw I wish I to the concert last night. a) didn't go b) went c) had gone d) have gone It's high time you how to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn Suppose you someone getting mugged يسرة, what would you do
a) were seen c) had seen d) saw I wish I to the concert last night. a) didn't go b) went c) had gone d) have gone It's high time you how to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn Suppose you someone getting mugged يسرة, what would you do
3 I wish I to the concert last night. a) didn't go b) went c) had gone d) have gone lt's high time you how to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn 5 Suppose you someone getting mugged يسرة, what would you do
a) didn't go b) went c) had gone d) have gone lt's high time youhow to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn 5 Suppose yousomeone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do
a) didn't go b) went c) had gone d) have gone lt's high time youhow to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn 5 Suppose yousomeone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do
الا It's high time youhow to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn 5 Suppose yousomeone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do
4 It's high time youhow to cook. a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn 5 Suppose yousomeone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do
a) learnt b) had learnt c) hadn't learnt d) learn 5 Suppose yousomeone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do
ق Suppose yousomeone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do
a) were seen b) saw
c) had seen d) can see
for It's about time wethe old printer.
a) replace b) had replaced
c) replaced d) have replaced
7 I'd rather you everyone my secret at the party last night.
a) hadn't told b) told
c) didn't tell d) had told
8 I would have prepared some sandwiches if I you were visiting.
a) know b) could know
c) knew d) had known
9 I'd rather youon the TV when I'm reading.
a) turn b) didn't turn
c) hadn't turned d) turned
o If only Imy dad's camera. He's very angry with me.
a) broke b) didn't break
c) hadn't broken d) had broken



Pronouns

الضمائر

الضمائر هي كلمات تشير إلى أسماء تنقسم إلى: ضمائر فاعل – ضمائر مفعول – صفات ملكية – ضمائر ملكية – ضمائر منعكسة

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive pronouns	Possessive adjectives	Reflexive pronouns
I	me	mine	my	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	hers	her	herself
It	it	-	its	itself
We	us	ours	our	ourselves
They	them	theirs	their	themselves
You	you	yours	your	yourself – yourselves
يأتى بعدها الفعل تأتى في بداية الجملة	ثأتى بعد الفعل ثأتى بعد حرف الجر	لا تتبع باسم	يأتى بعدها الاسم	تعود على فاعل الجملة الغرض منها التأكيد

- I play football with my friends.
- He will visit me tomorrow.
- Don't speak with them again.
- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- I took his book but I couldn't take hers.
- I did my homework (by) myself.
- She, herself, phoned me to tell the truth.

Exercises

① Our house is as big as	They are the same area.
a) your	b) you
c) yourself	d) yours
2 Trees protect from many	
a) us	b) we
c) our	d) ours
Ali is going to travel tomorrow	has booked the tickets.
a) His	b) Him
c) He	d) Himself
Makeat home and enjoy	your time.
a) yourself	b) yours
c) you	d) ourselves
I couldn't clean the house by	so I asked my sister's help.
a) my	b) myself
c) mine	d) me
6 Amal is sitting next to in t	the exam room.
a) me	b) mine
c) my	d) myself
7 I love English very much	my favourite subject.
a) Its	b) It's
c) There's	d) He's
When she came home, she made	husband a cup of coffee.
a) her	b) hers
c) herself	d) hers
This is Mona's car, it isn't	
a) my	b) her
c) mine	d) myself
You can take this present. I got it fo	•
a) your	b) you
c) yourself	d) yourselves
-, /	, , - = 1463

6

Question Tag

السؤال المذيل

يأتى السؤال المذيل في نهاية الجملة الخبرية بعد comma ويكون الغرض منه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟) يتكون السؤال المذيل من كلمتين (auxiliary verb + Subject pronoun). السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (يكون مثبتا إذا كانت الجملة منفية والعكس صحيح). النفى في السؤال المذيل يكون مختصرًا بمعنى (n't) و ليس (not).

- ▶ Ali is playing football, isn't he?
- ▶ They don't sleep late, do they?
- ▶ Mona always gets up early, doesn't she?
- ▶ I am happy, aren't !?
- I am not astonished, am !?
- You'd rather come early, wouldn't you?
- You'd better study hard, hadn't you?
- ▶ He'd studied his lessons, hadn't he?
- ▶ They'd study their lessons, wouldn't they?
- Open the door, will/won't you?
- Don't open the door, will you?
- Let's go out tonight, shall we?
- Let us go out tonight, will you?
- I think you will pass the exam, won't you?
- I don't think you will pass the exam, will you?
- I never watch plays on TV, do I?
- ▶ Someone is recording a video, aren't they?
- No one can come here today, can they?
- ▶This is a nice story, isn't it?
- ▶ Amazing, isn't it?



Exercises

?
b) do they
d) does he
?
b) are you
d) are we
l her leg,?
b) can't she
d) has she
long time with him,?
b) doesn't he
d) wasn't he
work,?
b) didn't he
d) had he
b) isn't he
d) hasn't he
?
b) amn't l
d) aren't l
b) does not she
d) does Hana
b) would you
c) will not you
b) do they
c) do I

Conjunctions

- 1. Although = though/even though (S + V +) كاملة كاملة (بالرغم من (ياتي بعدما جملة كاملة) روابط التناقض
- Although he's only 14, he's an expert at computers. فعل + فاعل + صفة + However
 - ▶ However fast he was, he couldn't catch the bus.
- فعل + فاعل + as + صفة .3
 - Fast as he was, he couldn't catch the bus.
- 4. Despite/in spite of (noun/ gerund = V + ing) بالرغم من (ياتي بعدما عبارة) Despite his illness, he passed his exams.
- 5. but =, however =, yet
 - ▶ She drove fast, however she missed the plane.
 - I studied so hard, but I didn't get the full mark.

- 🕜 روابط الإضافة
- 6. As well as = besides + in addition to (noun/ gerund) بالإضافة إلى
 - ▶ Besides cooking for 20 people, I did all the washing up.
- 7. in addition + عملة
 - ▶ He played very well in addition he scored a goal.
- فعل بتبع الفاعل الأول، فاعل as well as فاعل الأول،
 - I, as well as my friend, play football well.
- as well + جملة كاملة + but + صيغة استفهامية + as well
 - Not only have you got top marks but you've got a prize as well.
- 🞧 روابط السبب

- لأن (ياتي بعدهم جملة كاملة) (S + V) (الله بعدهم جملة كاملة)
 - ▶ Because /since we are early, I think we should wait outside.
 - My daughter got up early because she slept early.
- 11. Because of = owing to = due to (noun/ gerund) بسبب
 - Due to the bad weather, the match was cancelled.
 - ▶ He can answer any question because of being clever.

وابط الفرض

- 12. So as to = in order to = to + inf. 12
 - ▶ He opened the door in order to see who was there.
- 13. So that = in order that (S فاعل + can/may/could/might + verb)
 - ▶ He left early so that he could/ (might) catch the train.

وابط النتبحة

- 14. So = therefore =that's why = Consequently
 - My bike's broken, so I'll have to walk.
 - I missed the train. Consequently I was late for school.

PART 3

Exercises

He didn't expect to	winhe was	delighted when he won	the gold medal.
a) so	b) for	c) if	. d) as
They risked their live	vessave thei	r country.	
a) due to	b) so that	c) because	d) so as to
3writing a f	famous book, he trans	slated French literature ir	nto Arabic.
a) Because of	b) Beside		d) As well as
I want to buy a nice	e presentit i	s my mother's birthday.	
a) so	b) as		d) despite
I felt really tired thi	is morningl	slept early last night.	
a) because	b) but	c) although	d) so that
6 He tries to save mu	ich moneyh	e can buy a car.	
a) so that	b) to	c) in order to	d) because
7 old he is,	he can play tennis ver	ry well.	
a) However	b) Although	c) Despite	d) So
B He didn't do his be	est, he came	first in the final exam.	
a) so	b) because	c) However	d) however
I was very late for i	my work, I h	ad to take a taxi.	
	b) Occasionally		d) As well
10 My brother, as wel		•	
a) were	b) are		d) was
11 running a		missed the bus.	٠
a) However	b) As well as	c) Despite	d) Although
12 Hams had to chan	ge her opinion	the problems she had	
a) owing to	b) because	c) so	d) besides
13 Poor this	man is, he feels very l	nappy and satisfied.	
a) however	b) as	c) although	d) so
4 She didn't attend t	he wedding	she had promised me to	come.
a) so	b) though	c) because	d) but
15 Not only 1	to the party, but he b	rought a present as well.	
a) he came	b) he had come	c) did he come	d) will he com

8

so ... that/ such ... that/ enough/ too ... to

جملة + that + صفة – ظرف + so + فعل + فاعل .1

جدًا لعرجة أن

- Hams is so clever that she can answer any questions.
- 2. فعل + فعل علم 4.

جدًا لدرجة أن

- ▶ Hams is such a clever student that she can answer any question.
- جملة + that + صفة + اسم جمع اسم لا يعد + such + فعل + فاعل . 3
 - ▶ They are such clever students that they can answer any questions.
 - ▶ He gave me such useful information that we were so happy.
- 4. فعل + فاعل + adjective / adverb + enough + to + inf.

كاف

- ▶ Hana is clever enough to answer any question.
- ▶ She isn't tall enough to join the basketball team.
- . to + inf بسم + to + inf فعل + فاعل + فاعل
 - ▶ He has enough money to buy the car that he likes.
- . to +inf ضفة ظرف + too + فعل + فاعل .6 + to

جدًا لدرجة أن لا (تعطى معنى النفي)

- Ali is too lazy to do the homework.
- ▶ The question was too difficult to answer.

Exercises

1 He isclever student that he al	ways gets the full mark in his exams.
a) such	b) such a
c) so	d) too
Couldn't answer the question. It was	- ·
a) so difficult	b) difficult enough
c) too difficult	d) such difficult
(3) Ali is ill to go to school on his	•
	b) too
c) so	d) such an
The food was hot to eat.	
a) too	b) to
c) so	d) very
(5) I have work to do. it's hard to f	înish it.
a) so much	b) such much
c) too much	d) enough much
The water in the pool was to s	wim in.
a) cold enough	b) so cold
c) enough cold	d) too cold
That he could catch the	e bus before leaving.
a) Ali ran	b) did Ali run
c) Ali was run	d) Ali was
8 I don't have money to buy this	s wonderful car.
a) too much	b) such much
c) enough	d) many
He isstupid that he couldn't p	ass the simple test.
a) so	b) such
c) too	d) enough
1 think they are students that t	hey managed to pass all their exams.
a) so clever	b) such a clever
c) such clever	d) so a clever



Distributives

PART (3)

Exercises

•	Hams wants to stud	dy English or G	eology at school.	
	a) either	b) both	c) neither	d) half
2	There was a fire in t	he toy shop and		
	a) both	b) all	c) every	d) each
3	of my pare	ents are at home today b	pecause they are at work	<.
	a) Neither	b) Both	c) Either	d) All
4	My teacher gave	student in the cla	ass a small present.	
	a) all	b) each	c) either	d) both
(5	the rice tha	at you need is in the cup	oboard.	
	a) All	b) Both	c) Either	d) Each
6	I need to be good a	itspeaking and	writing English to get a	good job.
	a) each	b) both	c) every	d) half
7	I called both Hana a	and Mona, but	replied.	
	a) neither	b) either	c) both	d) every
8	He had an accident	and he was injured in	leg.	
	a) both	b) every	c) all	d) each
9	He had an accident	and he was injured in	legs.	
	a) both	b) every	c) all	d) each
10	He comes to visit hi	s parents three	days.	
	a) each	b) all	c) half	d) every
11	citizen has	the right to vote in the	elections.	
	a) Both	b) Every	c) Neither	d) All
12	Neither Dina nor he	r sisters to the	club.	•
	a) go	b) is going	b) goes	d) has gone
13	student in	the class knows the rigl	nt answer to this question	on. I am really
	shocked.		4230	J
	a) Every	b) Neither	b) All	d) Either
14	of the two	brothers were at the pa	irty yesterday.	d) Either
	a) All	b) Every	b) Half	d) Each
15		student in tur		u) Lacii
	a) all	b) each	b) neither	d) both
_				d) both

10 Adjectives

الصفة هي الكلمة التي تصف الاسم وتأتي:

١- قبل الاسم المفرد أو الجمع

٧-to be بعد ٧-to

٣- بعد الظرف

- Ali is a clever boy.
- I saw some wonderful animals yesterday.
- ▶ Hind is lazy.
- ▶ He was well-organized.

Ordinary and Extreme adjectives:

بعض الصفات عادية في حين أن بعض الصفات قوية: ` الصفات العادية نستخدم معها الظروف التالية:

▶ Very - quite - fairly - rather

الصفات القوية نستخدم معما الظروف التالية

▶ Absolutely – extremely – totally – completely – really – incredibly

Examples of ordinary and strong adjectives:

Ordinary	Strong	Ordinary	Strong
happy	excited	bad	awful
clever	brilliant	good	amazing
cold	freezing	angry	furious
interesting	fascinating	large	huge
hot	boiling	clean	spotless

Mona is very angry.

Verbs followed by adjectives

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها صفة:

(go - get - turn - fall - grow - come - become - feel)

The weather turned cold.

▶ He fell asleep while watching the film.



[▶] Mona is absolutely furious.

PART (3)

EXercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 can't stand dealing or even speaking with him.
 - a) bore

b) bored

c) boring

- d) boredom
- 2 The soup tasted, so I asked for some more.
 - a) wonderfully

b) wonder

c) wonderful

- d) wonders
- School kids are very during breaks.
 - a) noisy

b) nosily

c) noise

- d) nosiness
- Mona is absolutelywith her children who broke the vase.
 - a) angry

b) annoyed

c) angrily

- d) furious
- - a) wrong

b) wrongly

c) wronged

- d) wrongness
- 6 My son Mohammed isclever.
 - a) absolutely

b) terribly

c) very

- d) enough
- 7 I looked at the present that my dad bought.
 - a) happy

b) happily

c) happening

- d) happiness
- 8 The plane that I saw flew in the sky.
 - a) high

b) highness

c) highly

- d) higher
- 9 He was brought upso, he has good manners.
 - a) badly

b) bad.

c) good

- d) well
- 10 My brother is tall, so I advised him to join a basketball team.
 - a) extreme

b) extremely

c) extremism

d) an extreme

The Gerund and The Past Participle as Adjectives

i. The gerund is us	ed as an adjective for the doer of the action	
---------------------	---	--

(اسم القاعل)

- ▶ The film is amazing. (not amazed)

▶ He was very boring and I had no desire to talk to him. 2. The past participle adjective is used for the receiver of the action.

(اسم مفعول)

- تصف مستقبل الحدث (اسم مفعول)

- تصف المسبب للحدث (اسم الفاعل)

- I was amazed when I saw the film.
- I am really bored when I talk to this person.
- ومن هنا نلاحظ أنه من الخطأ الشائع أن نقول إن الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف الأشياء وإن الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف
- I was very frightened when I met that frightening man.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I was soand for that reason I went to bed early.
 - a) tiring

c) tired

- d) tiredness
- The dog got with the same food that it usually got.
 - a) boring

b) bored

c) boredom

- d) bore
- 3 I became on seeing the mountains in Sinai.
 - a) impressed

b) impressing

c) impressive

- d) impress
- Mido is sothat I always enjoy being with him.
 - a) interested

b) interest

c) interests

- d) interesting
- The match wasso we were so happy to attend it in the stadium.
 - a) fascinated

b) fascinating

c) fascinate

d) fascination

12 Adverbs

الظرف هو الكلمة التي تصف الفعل وتأتي:

بعد الفعل

قبل الصفة

في بداية الجملة أحيانا

- ▶ He runs quickly.
- ▶ Ali is badly injured.
- Interestingly, they won the match.

هناك عدة أشكال مختلفة للظرف و هي:

إضافة y اللصفة مثل:

slowly – quickly – interestingly – terribly – happily

high – late – early – hard – fast

ظروف و صفات بنفس الشكل

الصفات المنتهية بـ ly نستخدم الترتيب التالي:

in a/a + adj. + way in a friendly way – in an ugly way

ظروف التكرار مثل:

often – generally – sometimes – hardly – rarely – frequently

ظروف التأكيد والاحتمال:

certainly - definitely - probably - exactly - possibly - maybe

ظروف الدرجة:

almost - much - nearly - quite - really - very - too - fairly - extremely

ظروف شاذة مثل:

well - indoors - outdoors

Exercises

My mother was, so sh	e was taken to hospital
a) bad injury	b) bad injured
c) badly injured	d) injured bad
2 I shouted at my son w	then he broke his toys
a) angry	b) angrily
c) anger	
3 I haven't seen her	d) angrier
a) late	b) later
c) lately	d) late time
Teachers at schools treat stude	a contract of the contract of
a) in a friendly way	b) friendly
c) in friendly	d) in a friend way
5 I own a very wonderf	•
a) Current	b) In a current way
c) Current less	d) Currently
	terrible accident because of my broken leg
	b) hard
a) hardly	
c) harder	d) hardness
7 I always speak about o	
a) proud	b) pride
c) proudness	d) proudly

Comparative and Superlative

Comparative	Superlative
صفات الدرجة الثانية و هي المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين	التفضيل بين شخص أو شيء و بين مجموعته
adj. + er + than more + adj. + than less + adj. + than better + than worse + than	the + adj. + est the most + adj. the least + adj. the best the worst

- Mona is taller than Leila.
 - Mona is the tallest in the class
- ▶ Basma is more beautiful than Hams.
 - Basma is the most beautiful in the family.
- Ahmed is better than Ali.
 - Ahmed is the best student in the class.

as + adj. + as نستخدم equality عند المساواة as + adj. + as نستخدم as + adj. + as عند نفى التساوى نستخدم as + adj. + as

- Rasha is as clever as Noha.
- Rami isn't as (so) fast as Ali.

لاحظ الآتى:

The + comparative of two

▶ He is the taller of two friends.

The more you study, the higher marks you will get.

EXercises

interesting b	ook I have ever read.
a) more	b) most
c) as	d) the most
2 Maha is of the two	sisters.
a) fast	b) faster
c) the faster	d) the fastest
3 This question is not	the other one.
a) more difficult	b) most difficult
c) as difficult	d) so difficult as
The you run, the ear	rlier you arrive.
a) most	b) more
c) fastest	d) must
5 Who is Mona or Em	an?
a) young	b) the youngest
c) as younger	d) younger
6 No river in the world is	
a) as long as	b) longer than
c) the longest	d) longest
Of all the boys in my street, H	
a) clever	b) cleverest
c) cleverer	d) the most cleverest
l am good at cooking, but my	mother is
a) better	b) best
c) goodies	d) the better
9 I think running isuse	eful than walking.
a) much	b) much more
c) many	d) more much
This is one ofplaces	
a) hotter than	b) the hottest
c) as hot	d) the most hot





English

الصف (1) الثانوى نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسي الأول طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2021 - 2022

Final Test (1)



		Tillar Jes			40
	Choose Two of the	Five options:			
	1 Hala was angry w	hen she lost her mobil	e. The antonyms	of the word "angry	" are
	a) furious	b) satisfied	c) stingy	d) cruel	e) pleased
	2 Modern means of	transport make it easy	to reach remote	areas. The synony	ms of the word
	"remote" are	••••••			
	a) faraway	b) nearby	c) close	d) distant	e) near
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c oi	d:		
	3 Footballers often	a lot of money	because footbal	I has become the n	nost famous sport
	a) beat	b) earn	c) win		d) gain
	Each person shou	ld blood once	a year at least.		
	a) lend	b) transplant	c) donat	e	d) transmit
	She to Lor	ndon since last month.	She is still there.		
	a) has gone	b) has been	c) hasn't	been	d) hasn't gone
	6 The of the	ship consists of seven	sailors and the c	aptain.	
	a) staff	b) team	c) band		d) crew
	Some animals live	e in very parts o	of the world.		
,	a) isolated	b) insulated	c) insult	ed	d) installed
	You bought me a	theatre ticket yesterda	y, so Iyou	u some money.	
	a) lend	b) borrow	c) owe		d) own
	While I was revisir	ng my lesson, my moth	er dinne	r.	
	a) was preparing	b) preparing	c) is pre	paring	d) prepares
		the company he keeps			
	a) is known	b) knows	c) has kr		d) was known
		up early tomorrow. The			al) In according
	a) is going to leav		c) will le		d) leave
	a) an/The	tob) a/The	urantres c) the/Tl	_	d) the/a
		buy a new dress. She's	•		u) trie/a
	a) will	b) would	c) is goin		d) can
		at school. It has I	- 3	9	w/ curi
	TICTICTCI GIIOYY		Jud Circuly Oil Cil		

c) cyberbully

d) to bully

a) bully

b) bullying

F	inal	l Te	ete

15 The boy or	the wall when he fell	down.	
a) was walking	b) walked	c) walks	d) was walked
1 During the exam, I	a friend of mi	ne cheating.	
a) was seeing	b) was see	c) see	d) saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The <u>advantage</u> of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one herb that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	·	
	Natural remedies are attracting atte	ention because they
-	a) are used in Egypt	
	b) have side effects	
	c) are exported from Egypt	
	d) can treat a lot of diseases	
	Garlic is an example of	
	a) natural remedies	b) artificial herbs
	c) chemical medicines	d) modern drugs
	😉is a physical condition that s	hows you may have a particular disease.
	a) Prescription	b) Property
	c) Symptom	d) Remedy
	② A herbalist writes out a prescription	checking his reference books.
	a) during	b) after
	c) while	d) before
	The pronoun "his" in the last paragra	aph refers to the
	a) herbalist	b) shop
	c) customer	d) prescription

opportunities.	1/2		
Write an essay of abou	t (150) words on the	following topic:	
	"The importance	of charities in society"	6



Choose Two of the Five options:

- O Science fiction films are boring. The opposites of the word "boring" are
 - a) annoying

b) interesting

c) terrifying

d) exhausting

- e) exciting
- - a) ignored

b) cared for

c) left

d) nursed

e) found about

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- Germany is European country. It has an area of 357,021 square kilometers.
 - a) the

b) a

c) an

- d) no article
- 4 Manal hasn't phoned usthe summer holiday. It's unusual of her.
 - a) ago

b) since

c) already

d) for

- **5** We met a lot of our friendsour stay in Austria.
 - a) while
- b) in

c) since

- d) during
- 6 We always to school when we were young as the school wasn't far from our house.
- 6
- a) walk
- b) walked
- c) are walking
- d) were walking

- The police have so far failed todown the criminal.
 - a) track
- b) tick

c) trek

d) truck

- 3 It's the first time we have been to Naples.
 - a) ever
- b) never

c) since

- d) yet
- I don't know how to operate my tablet. Don't worry, Iyou.
 - a) show
- b) am showing
- c) am going to show
- d) will show

- O Do you think the words "dine" and "fine".....?
 - a) rhythm
- b) compose
- c) rhyme

d) belong

- 1 My grandfather died 84.
 - a) age

b) aging

c) aged

- d) ages
- (2) The bank lost a lot of money. They think their computer system had been into.
 - a) baked
- b) caked

c) backed

d) hacked

- (3) Use your mind and don't take anything granted.
 - a) at

b) for

c) with

- d) from
- (4) She certainly hasn't done anything that that cruel punishment.
 - a) reserved
- b) deserved
- c) observed
- d) reversed

- (5) Mum used delicious meals before she started her job.
 - a) cooking b) to cook
- c) to cooking
- d) that cooking

- 6 We should avoidinto troubles with people we love.
 - a) to get b) that get c) getting

d) to getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours streets are so blocked that it takes a driver age to get to his destination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) it is expensive
 - a) it is expensive
 b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
 - c) it is very slow d) bus drivers drive carelessly
- 18 The pronoun "they" refers to
 - a) taxi drivers b) taxis
 - c) buses d) passengers
- 1 Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep the long wait at the bus stop.
 - a) up b) away from
 - c) on d) down
- 20 Possessing a private car is to doctors and engineers.
- a) unnecessary b) kind
 - c) indispensable d) bad
- 2) The synonym of the word "complicated" is
 - a) complex b) simple
 - c) easy d) noncomplex

2	According to the writer, possessing a car car	n be a trouble because
	a) cars take a space in the garage	b) cars have to be left in the streets
	c) drivers are careless	d) traffic is incredible
23	The best title for this passage is "".	
	a) Traffic Rules	b) Types of Cars
	c) Driving carelessly	d) Transportation
2	According to the passage, it takes drivers a	long time to reach their destination when
7	a) the streets are empty	b) it's the rush hour
	c) the drivers drive slowly	d) the garages are full
25	According to the passage, some taxi drivers	
	a) greedy b) good	c) honest d) funny
-26	The sentence "it takes a driver age to get to	
	a) people don't know their destination	b) GPS always misleads people
	c) drivers can't drive	d) it takes long time
2	Translate into English:	
		عجب أن يتعاون كل أفراد المجتمع لمحاربة التنمر؛ فهو مشكلة اجتماعية
28	Translate into Arabic:	
		d have determination courses nationes as
	well as a sense of responsibility.	d have determination, courage, patience as 3
	well as a sense of responsibility.	
29	Write an essay of about (150) words on the	ne following topic:
	"Some young children spend a great amoun	t of their time practising sports. Discuss the advantages
		ons and examples to support your answer."
	J ,	1
(Q		

Final Test (3)



Choose Two of the Five options:



- a) observe
- b) look for
- c) monitor
- d) see off
- e) collect
- a) support
- b) decrease
- c) reduce
- d) raise
- e) strengthen

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- The rich should money to charities to help the poor.
 - a) donate
- b) steal

c) rob

d) take

- Firefighters should wear clothes while facing fires.
 - a) protection
- b) protected
-) protective
- d) protects
- - a) ground
- b) sky

c) earth

- d) moon
- Just as the dinner, my father was reading the newspaper.
 - a) was preparing

b) was being prepared

c) was prepared

- d) is preparing
- Iliving away from my family before travelling abroad.
 - a) wasn't used to
- b) used to
- c) didn't use to
- d) is used to

- - a) tricky
- b) tiny

- c) sustainable
- d) boring
- ② Ragab to the beach every summer when he was young.
 - a) went
- b) goes

c) go

- d) going
- 10 Most of the students feel when they start a new school as it isn't easy.
 - a) happy
- b) glad

c) stressed

- d) pleased
- 1 If you have a problem, you can me for advice by phone or email any time.
- a) contact
- b) conduct
- c) connect

- d) communicate
- 2 Mona doesn't mind to the cinema tonight as she is not busy.
 - a) go

b) to go

c) going

- d) goes
- 13 The best thing to do when you are thirsty is to drink glass of water.
- a) no article
- b) a

c) the

- d) an
- (4) I only bought my new car last week, but I 5000 km with it so far.
 - a) already driven

b) have already driven

c) had already driven

d) drove

	٩.	
\ _		

- (5) My trouserswell every week by the laundry. They are professional.
 - a) are wash b) is washed
- c) are washed
- d) is washing
- Our bus driverus to school on time. He is very punctual.
 - a) always drive b) always drives
- c) drive always
- d) drives always

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Advertising has become very specialised in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufactures of the same kind of product to persuade customers to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this by advertising. The manufacturer advertises in newspapers and on posters. He sometimes pays for songs to be sung about his product on commercial radio programmes. He employs attractive sales girls to distribute samples of it. He organises competitions with prizes for the winners. He often advertises on the screens of local cinemas. Most important of all is on television. He has advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible. Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements.

We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) the product is good
 - b) we don't need them
 - c) supply is greater than demand
 - d) we need them
- 10 One of the following is not mentioned and it is a way of advertising
 - a) newspapers and TV

b) posters

c) cinemas

- d) trains
- - a) advertisement

b) factory

c) product

- d) customer
- The best title of this text is ".....".
 - a) Ways of Advertising

b) Competition

c) A specialised activity

- d) Manufacturers
- 2) The antonym of the word "particular" is
 - a) choosy

b) unique

c) selective

d) common

	Manufacturers spend so much money on a	advertising	
a) because advertising needs lots of thinking			
	b) because there are lots of work to do		
	c) to persuade customers to buy their owr	n particular make	
	d) to distribute the largest amount of flyer	rs	
	According to the passage, advertisers use	beautiful girls to	
	a) distribute products	b) deceive people	
	c) buy products	d) attract more workers	
J	The main idea of the last paragraph is "		
Ĭ	a) The Power of Advertisements	b) How to Advertise in Newspapers	
	c) The TV Advertisements	d) The Good Marketing	
	Some manufacturers set competitions		
	a) to encourage people to be active	b) to sell their products	
	c) to advertise their products	d) to entertain people in the street	
	Some people don't care whether	• •	
	a) the material is good or not	b) the prices are good or not	
	c) the advertiser is truthful or not	d) the TV is on or not	
	·	.,	
	Translate into English:	إن مساعدة المعاقين هي مسئولية كل فرد في المجتمع؛ لذا يجب علينا أن	
		الاخرين.	
	3 Translate into Arabic:		3
	"Education is the principle of progress and world all the same the advanced and the d	development for all people and countries of the leveloping."	3
O)		
	Write an essay of about (150) words on "Y	the following topic: Your future job"	6



d) no article

Choose Two of the Five options:

- My room is always messy because of my little son. The synonyms of the word "messy" are
 - a) disordered b) disappointed c) tidy
 - d) unhappy e) untidy
- ② All my colleagues went to the laboratory. The class is empty. The antonyms of the word "empty" are
 - a) confused b) busy c) pleased
 - d) crowded e) delighted

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The horrible accident was the of high speed.a) causeb) resultc) reasond) affection
- Radi suffers from a heart disease. Doctors recommend an urgent heart operation.
- a) transmission b) transport c) transfusion d) transplant
- Sara sent me SMS just now. She told me that our exams had postponed.
- a) a b) an c) the

 6, which is dried grape, is much used in cooking.
 - a) Current b) Currency c) Current d) Curtain
- 7 Your blue jeanshung in the wardrobe. You always forget.
- a) is b) have c) are d) was
- Amir: I'm presently short of money.
 - Samir: Don't bother about that. I you a loan.
- a) will give b) am giving c) going to give d) give
- 1 Unlike now, I black coffee. I only drank tea and fruit juice.
 - a) use b) didn't use to c) used to d) wasn't used to
- 100 Be careful, the carhit you; it is very near!
- a) will b) would c) is d) is going to
- 1 He had a face as he had been working all day.
 - a) tiring looking b) tired looking c) tired looked d) tiring looked
- 2 The little girl missing down town. Her mother was very worried about her.
- a) got b) went c) found d) came
- a) pen name b) pseudonym c) nick name d) surname
- Sara has enjoyed reading ever since shevery young.
 - a) was b) is c) will be d) has been

- (5) The manager is going to the mechanic because his car every month.
 - a) is repairedb) is repairing
- c) was repaired
- d) repairs
- 6 The plumber managedthe tap and apologised for our neighbours.
 - a) fixing
- b) to fixing
- c) to fix

d) he fixes

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment. Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Desertification means a wide area of trees.
 - a) clearing

b) planting

c) irrigating

- d) spraying
- - a) desertification

b) global warming

c) environment

- d) CO
- (2) Scientists recommendfossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.
 - a) using

b) misusing

c) reducing

- d) reusing
- 20 Burning fossil fuels global warming.
 - a) causes of

b) results of

c) leads to

- d) results from
- - a) 30

b) 50

c) 70

d) 90

	•	ınderlined word " <u>eco</u>		-
	environmental	b) biological	c) chemical	d) material
	•	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	not safe because it	
	produces gases like	e carbon dioxide	b) can be stolen easi	•
C)	can be flamed		d) can't be moved fr	om a place to another
		sage, we the	destructive effects of the gl	obal warming.
	will face		b) faced	
c)	are already facing		d) have never faced	
	•	er, these problems a	re caused by	
	aircrafts		b) animal	
c)	humans		d) plants	
	•	passage is "" .		
	National Disasters		b) Global Disasters	
c)	Trees and Nature		d) Anthropogenic A	ctivities
27 T	ranslate into Englis	sh:		
	_		ر لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمى أنفسه	ر عض الحيوانات إلى تغيير
				في بيئته الخاصة.
28 T	ranslate into Arabi	c:		
N	lo one can avoid bei	ing old as aging is a i	natural process that gradual	ly happens with the
	assing of time.	9 0.14 43 499 13 4 1	natara process triat gradau	y happens mar are
D 2D W	/rite an essay of ab	out (150) words on	the following topic:	
			pollution and how to fight t	hem"
		Different forms of	political and now to right	

	•••••	•••••	••••••	
	•••••	***************************************		
••				
••				



Choose Two of the Five options:



- a) huge
- b) generous
- c) delighted
- d) gigantic
- e) modern
- - a) celebrated
- b) nameless
- c) well-built
- d) unknown
- e) well-known

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- O He felt lonely andafter his mother had passed away.
 - a) miser

- b) miserliness
- c) miserably
- d) miserable
- 4 Have you finished writing the essay? You are very quick!
 - a) just

b) yet

- c) ever
- d) already
- 6 His father him a good job as an accountant in a multi-national company.
 - a) is finding
- b) founded
- c) found
- d) has founded

- **6** She ran up theroad leading to the castle.
 - a) gravel

b) plot

- c) digging
- d) gravels
- In time, I will travel to London. I will stay for 2 weeks there.
 - a) two week
- b) two week's
- c) two weeks
- d) two weeks'
- Ilunch at home yesterday. My father invited me to have it outdoors.
 - a) haven't

b) used

- c) didn't have
- d) hadn't

- - a) was saying
- b) am saying
- c) will say
- d) says

- O Doctors after patients in hospitals. It is their job.
 - a) lock

- b) looked
- c) looking
- d) look

- - a) hacks

b) hack

- c) hacking
- d) hijack
- 2 You are no more than awho frightens people online.
 - a) cyberbullying
- b) cyberbully
- c) phishing
- d) terror
- [®] Sports stars arefor thousands of youngsters so they should behave well.
 - a) role games
- b) role models
- c) role makers
- d) role players
- The accident is a of one that happened to her three weeks ago.
 - a) reputation
- b) repetition
- c) revision
- d) religion

(5) As soon as I the key, I will set off very fast.

a) found

b) had found

c) was finding

d) have found

6 Ias a professor since I was 30, and this is the first time to see this theory.

a) worked

a) don't

a) little help

c) school

b) have worked

c) was working

d) work

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Bullying can take a variety of forms, from the verbal-being called hurtful names – to the physical-being kicked – as well as indirect forms, such as being excluded from social groups. A survey I conducted with Irene Whitney found that in British primary schools up to a quarter of pupils reported experience of bullying, which is about one in ten cases was persistent. There was less bullying in secondary schools, with about one in twenty-five suffering persistent bullying, but these cases may be particularly rebellious.

Bullying is clearly unpleasant and can make the child experiencing it feel unworthy and depressed. In extreme cases, it can even lead to suicide, though this is thankfully rare. Victimized pupils are more likely to experience difficulties with interpersonal relationships as adults, while children who persistently bully are more likely to grow up to be physically violent and convicted of anti-social offences.

Until recently, not much was known about the topic, and little help was available to teachers to deal with bullying. Perhaps, as a result, schools would often deny the problem. "There is no bullying at this school" has been a common refrain, almost certainly all true. Fortunately, more schools are now saying: There is not much bullying here, but when it occurs we have a clear for dealing with it.

b) didn't

b) bullying

d) refrain

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Teachersknow how to deal with bullying, but now they do.

c) had	d) hadn't
1 Being is an indirect form of bull	lying.
a) called hurtful names	b) kicked
c) excluded from social groups	d) slashed
① Children experiencing an extreme case	of bullying may commit
a) suicide	b) theft
c) tolerance	d) violence
A recent survey found that in British sec schools.	condary schools there wasbullying than in primary
a) more	b) less
c) loast	d) much more

	The synonym of the	underlined word "condu	cted"is	
	a) performed	b) attached	c) linked	d) ignored
	When a school has a	a case of bullying	•	
	a) they neglect it		b) they make up betv	veen students
	c) they deal with it	strictly	d) they report it to th	e police
	The the best title fo	r the passage is ""	•	
4	a) Bullying can be T	reated	b) Students are Disres	spectful
	c) Schools Need Ref	form	d) Bullying as a Social	Disease
	Teachers to	deal with bullying.		
	a) are ready	b) are supported	c) are not trained	d) can't be trained
	Being exposed to b	ullying, the child suffers f	rom	
	a) over happiness	b) depression	c) creativity	d) disrespect
	Translate into Engleع کید للنجاح فی الحیاة.		دك لكى تنفع نفسك وعائلتك وبلدك، ة	عليك أن تبذل قصارى جھ
			cause it creates job oppor must all work together to	\ 3 /
C	Write an essay of a	bout (150) words on the	e following topic:	
		"Somed	one you admire"	•
			••••••	



Chassa	Time	af tha	Einzo /	options:
Lnoose	IWO	oi me	rive	obuons:



- a) kept
- b) presented
- c) received
- d) asked
- e) gave

- a) denied
- b) regretted
- c) adapted
- d) concealed
- e) avoided

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- O He deniedthat bad thing. In fact, he was innocent.
 - a) to do
- b) did

c) doing

d) do

- are fully grown persons.
 - a) Children
- b) Old people
- c) Teenagers
- d) Adults

- (5) When I was young, I always before going to school.
 - a) crying
- b) cry

c) cried

- d) was crying
- (3) When I heard the of the gun parts, I know the man was about to shoot.
- (0.)
- a) direct
- b) object

c) check

- d) click
- We use friendly materials in ecotourism to keep the surroundings.
 - a) environment
- b) environmental
- c) environmentally
- d) environmentalist
- He had lost his job, so he couldn't pay back the money he
 - a) owned
- b) earned
- c) gave

- d) owed
- the flight, I was reading a book called "For Whom the Bell Tolls".
 - a) While
- b) During
- c) Just as

d) When

- My first computer didn't work, so they sent me a
 - a) replaced
- b) replacement
- c) replace

- d) replaces
- 1 Monaon holiday next Sunday. She's arranged to do so.
 - a) will go
- b) will have gone
- c) goes

d) is going

- @ There is plenty of meat, but there is not bread.
 - a) plenty
- b) many

c) much

d) a lot

- (3) Decision needs knowledge and experience.
 - a) doing
- b) having
- c) making

d) saying

- (4) I have passed this test
 - a) already
- b) yet

c) just

d) so far

- (5) The lesson at 10 o'clock, so we can have breakfast together.
- a) will start b) starts
- c) is going to start
- d) is starting

- 10 While, me sister fell off the bed and got injured.
 - a) sleep b) she was slept
- c) slept

d) sleeping

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



"Necessity is the mother of invention" is a famous common proverb which means that our needs always motivate our minds to create new things in order to manage well with a world full of speed changes.

Man's needs have often directed him to discover the natural resources around him, and to make with his own hands the things he wants.

Thus, he made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops. Those tools played an important part in establishing civilisation. Food, clothing and shelter are still considered to be man's basic needs. The progress of technology has enabled man to satisfy all these needs. It has helped him to take wide steps in developing agriculture, industry and public services.

Thus, we are now enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation. When civilisation developed and man lived in organised societies, he found himself in need of more than his necessities; Education is next to food in importance because it is the only way to acquire experience and the qualifications necessary to earn a living.

Education changed our style of living and led to higher thinking levels. He invaded space. He invented the computer. No wonder that man has great abilities which will enable him to create more inventions in the future.

(2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) require

b) demand

c) obtain

- d) contain
- According to the passage education is of great importance because
 - a) it gives us experience and making a living
 - b) it is pre to food in importance
 - c) it is natural resource before us
 - d) the tools played a role in our civilisation
- (1) Man needed more than his necessities when he
 - a) needed tools

b) lived in organised societies

c) discovered natural resources

- d) made the things he wanted
- - a) ignore

b) destroy

c) plant

d) abandon

According	to the passage if	the need for collecti	ng the crops led r	nan to			
	uge areas of land		b) invent agricu				
	c) buy machines		d) rent peasants to help him				
	•			·			
	2 In the last paragraph, invading the space and i			b) man has extraordinary abilities			
	a) man spends a lot of money			•			
	c) science is obtainable		a) the space ex	ploration is not impossibl	е		
	dea of the passa	•					
	ties can be postp		•	reate inventions			
2 * 4	ds are motivated	, .	_	are and civilisation			
👍 🕗 The word f	rom the passage	that means "run" is	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				
a) manage	p) c	liscover	c) means	d) enable			
45 Man inven	ted the compute	er because					
a) it was ea	asy		b) the educatio	n led to this			
c) the inte	rnet was free		d) sending ema	nils was a necessity			
		ntioned in the passa	_	,			
		in order to manage	•	rld			
	_	vate the land and ge					
		estroyed the planet.					
		•					
a) All of us	are enjoying the	e blessing of moderr	i civilisation.				
Translate	into English:						
		. ملا تخذ أن تتمال الحقيقة عما	تخلفها ولا تقل في الماد قا	ندما تعطى وعدًا لشخص فلا يجب أن ت			
سجرد اسدح.	ده هوه، وق صدح سخصا	، وق تخت ان تقول انجفیقه هف	عسه، ود نس غير انصدق.	ندها تعظی وعدا تشخص عبر پیب ان د	3		
*************		***************************************	***************************************	***************************************	***************************************		
***************************************			•••••				
28 Translate	into Arabic:						
\//la a.a	_:						
•	•		•	e a nation, but also you	3		
help him t	o think and crea	te to be a good citize	en.				
***************************************	•••••		•••••	••••••	***************************************		
	•••••						
(a)							
	_						
39 Write an e	ssay of about (1	150) words on the f	ollowing topic:				
		"Donation	and charities"		6		
***************************************			•••••		***************************************		
***************************************		***************************************	•••••		****************		
***************************************			***************************************		******************		

***************************************			•••••		***************************************		
***************************************			•••••		****************		
***************************************	•••••	***************************************	***************************************		*************		



d) no article

			40
Choose Two of the Fi	ve options:		
Maya likes wearing	fashionable clothes. T	he synonyms the word of "fas	shionable"
are			
a) old	b) cl	ean	c) stylish
d) expensive	e) co	ool	
2 Your question isn't	clear. Can you clarify w	hat you want? The antonyms	s of the word "clear"
are			
a) ambiguous	b) po	ure	c) bright
d) complicated	e) ok	oscure	
Choose the correct a	nswer from a. b. c or o	d:	14
		pinions and ideas, even if the	v are different from your
a) leader	b) friendship	c) diversity	d) punctuation
(4) A: We have not got	•	3 , and anonly	37 parrecolation
B: I know, I	•		
a) won't buy	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	b) am going to buy	
c) will be buying		d) will have bought	
5 He has been doing	three jobs to get out o		
a) debit	b) doubt	c) count	d) debt
3 The countryside is r	•	· ·	•
a) populated	b) population	c) unpopulated	d) pollution
We all recommende			
a) that read	b) that he read	c) to read	d) to reading
What is the correct	plural of the word "bel	ief"?	, and the second second
a) Believes.	b) Beliefs.	c) Beliefes.	d) Believe.
Finally, my mother.	how to use the	e internet. Now she can send	e-mails.
a) learns	b) has learnt	c) had learnt	d) was learning
① A/Anis som	neone who is legally re	sponsible for looking after so	omeone or something.
a) biologist	b) guardian	c) hunter	d) admirer
1 There ared	ifferences between pe	ople in Upper Egypt and thos	se in the Delta.
a) culture	b) cultural	c) cultured	d) culturally
2 Do not open the do	oor until Iyou.		
a) told	b) had told	c) tell	d) was told
My grandfather was	s a great	n we were children we would	d listen to his stories for
hours.			
a) storyteller	b) poet	c) playwright	d) dancer
My uncle arrived or	nSunday, after	my birthday.	

c) the

a) a

b) an

- (5) I've many countries but I like Egypt the most.
- a) been
- b) been to
- c) gone

- d) gone to
- 6 I boughtmp3 which can be connected to the car via Bluetooth.
 - a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness and the dark figure Sally.
 - a) screamed

b) scared

c) cared

- d) cracked
- (B) Sally reading ghost stories.
 - a) enjoyed

b) did not enjoy

c) feared

- d) avoided
- 19 Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?
 - a) The strange noise.

b) Sally.

c) Sally's brother.

- d) The ghost.
- 20 Sally realised it was not a ghost when her brother
 - a) stretched his hand

b) turned on the lights

c) walked down the steps

- d) laughed
- (a) "He couldn't help laughing" couldn't help means
 - a) couldn't stop

b) couldn't breathe

c) couldn't give a hand

d) couldn't sleep

mai lests			
Ken whe	n Sally started reading the	e story.	
a) had been outs	side	b) had been on the ro	oof
c) hadn't entered	d the house	d) had hidden under	the bed
Sally thought it w	vas a ghost because all of	her family	
a) were asleep		b) got out	
c) went shopping	g	d) didn't like tricks	
The best title to t	this passage is "".		
a) Reading is imp	portant	b) Scary Tales Effects	
c) Ken is coward		d) Sally's brother's tric	ck
What kind of text	ts is this passage?		
a) A Letter.	b) A short film.	c) A short story.	d) An Email
The word from th	ne passage which means "	discover" is	
a) turn on	b) walk into	c) find out	d) push
Translate into E	nglish:		
1.14 % 7.1 1 H 221 1 H		وتحصيل المعرفة النافعة في وقت الفراغ، و	9112011 9
Translate into A	tizens and creating a crea	tive society are the main ain	اط. ns of education.
Translate into A Building good ci This will teach th	tizens and creating a creanem self-reliance.		
Translate into A Building good ci This will teach th	tizens and creating a createm self-reliance. of about (150) words on the	the following topic:	
Translate into A Building good ci This will teach th	tizens and creating a createm self-reliance. of about (150) words on the		
Translate into A Building good ci This will teach th	tizens and creating a createm self-reliance. of about (150) words on the	the following topic:	
Translate into A Building good ci This will teach th	tizens and creating a createm self-reliance. of about (150) words on the	the following topic:	
Translate into A Building good ci This will teach th	tizens and creating a createm self-reliance. of about (150) words on the	the following topic:	
Translate into An Building good cire This will teach the Write an essay o	tizens and creating a creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of the adve	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.
Translate into An Building good cire This will teach the Write an essay o	tizens and creating a creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of the adve	the following topic:	ns of education.
Translate into An Building good cire This will teach the Write an essay o	tizens and creating a creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of the adve	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.
Building good ci This will teach th Write an essay o	tizens and creating a creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of the adve	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.
Building good ci This will teach th Write an essay o	tizens and creating a creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of the adve	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.
Building good ci This will teach th Write an essay o	tizens and creating a creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of the adve	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.
Translate into An Building good cire This will teach the Write an essay or a second control of the control of t	tizens and creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of th	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.
Translate into An Building good cire This will teach the Write an essay or a second control of the control of t	tizens and creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of th	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.
Translate into Al Building good cir This will teach the Write an essay o	tizens and creating a creatinem self-reliance. of about (150) words on the advertise of th	the following topic: antages of teamwork"	ns of education.



c) tame

c) losing

Choose Two of the Five options:

a) fierce

a) fishing



b) harmful d) domestic e) legal

b) hike

- - d) fabricating e) journey

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- As an, you should travel in a way that shows respect to nature. a) ecotourism b) ecotourist
- d) eco-friendly c) ecosystem
- emails usually targets your bank accounts.
- a) Fishing b) Phishing c) Cyber d) The internet
- 5 He was a great who wrote many poems.
- a) novelist b) author d) illustrator c) poet
- 6 You should have your sight regularly.
- a) checked b) shocked c) choked d) shook
- Tamilies should their children's internet activity.
 - b) click a) meet c) monitor d) scam
- My friend keeps photos all day.
 - a) logging in b) posting c) lighting d) connecting
- a) slept b) sleeping c) was sleeping d) has slept
- anybody need help?
- b) Does d) Are a) Do c) Is
- I haven't seen him since hea child.
- a) is b) has been c) been d) was
- He doesn't have money.
 - b) few d) much a) many c) a lot
- 16 years old.
 - a) is going to be b) going to be c) will be d) is being
- (1) He is looking forward to his friends.
 - a) meet b) meets c) met d) meeting

15 Physics m	y favourite subject. I like	Newton and Einstein very	much.
a) is	b) are	c) have been	d) is being
1 my aunt	eagerly last Friday. I can't	t stand waiting for the next	t month.
a) have visited	b) has visited	c) visited	d) visit

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dangerous substances discharged by factories cause toxic or poisonous air pollution. The emissions have serious effects on public health. Needless to say, exposure to high levels of these toxic emissions will cause a lot of human suffering through chest ailments and diseases.

Toxic chemicals, which do not break down easily in the atmosphere have been known to travel great distances and come down to earth. Moreover, pollutants emitted from automobiles, cars and other means of transport and dry cleaners are considered very dangerous. In this way, a huge quantity of cancer-causing chemicals are released into the air.

Benzene is known to cause leukemia in humans. This is a serious problem which is serious to human health. The World Health Organisation "W.H.O." reaffirms that the gap of the ozone layer has been widening. Two thirds of the layer that protects the globe have been completely destroyed. Ozone absorbs the harmful ultraviolet rays that cause skin cancer and damage eyesight.

Many countries are now taking action to reduce pollution. But this pollution problem may solve itself when the world oil wells have run out. Then we hope that alternative sources of energy will have been found.

Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, c or a:		
The ozone laye	er, being widened by pollutant	ts,	
a) prevents ult	raviolet rays from coming dov	wn to earth	
b) protects the	globe		
c) allows ultrav	riolet rays to come down to ea	arth and cause human suf	ffering
d) absorbs the	harmful pollutants		
1 Toxic chemical	S		
a) break down	easily in the atmosphere		
b) do not brea	k down easily in the atmosph	ere and don't come down	to earth
c) come down	to earth because they do not	break down easily in the	atmosphere
d) are emitted	from the atmosphere and cor	me down to earth	
Toxic emission	s sometimes cause		
a) ultraviolet ra	ays to break down easily	b) chest ailments and	d other diseases
c) ultraviolet ra	ays	d) the reduction of p	ollution
A suitable title	for the passage is "".		
a) Ultraviolet r	ays	b) Toxic air-pollution	
c) Leukemia in	humans	c) The World Health	Organisation
@ of the	layer that protects the globe i	s remaining.	
a) Two thirds	b) One third	c) Three fifths	d) Half

	 The ozone layer is important because	ne earth	
	 The industry is responsible for polluting the enal a factories don't pay taxes many people work in industry 	b) factories discharge	dangerous substances ries takes a lot of water
	 When the petrol runs out from the world,		
	The antonym of the underlined word "toxic" is .		Describ
	a) healthy b) creepy	c) unhealthy	d) weak
	According to the last paragraph of the passagea) ignore the case	, all countriesb) want to solve the p	rohlem
	c) dig more oil wells	d) create solar panels	Toblem
	Translate into English:		
	عو الاقتصاد المصرى من خلال اهتمامها بأسرتها ووظيفتها في نفس	ئا دورًا حيويئًا في تحسين المجتمع ون	لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دائم الوقت.
	② Translate into Arabic:		
	Egypt hosted the last Africa Cup of Nations in 2 the Cup for the second time.	2019 and the Algerian N	ational Team won 3
	Write an essay of about (150) words on the f	ollowing tonic	
<u></u>		llution"	6
Ī			



	Choose Two of the Five	options:			
	1 There is a major probl	em with parkir	ng in Londo	n. The antonyms of the w	ord "major"
	are				
	a) minor		b) trivial		c) fundamental
	d) remarkable		e) tremend	dous	
	2 "Exotic birds are seen	here in winter."	In this sent	ence, the word 'exotic' is a	synonym of
	a) native		b) unusual		c) unconventional
	d) foreign		e) original		
	Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b,	c or d:		14
	3 Children like to	new games a	and movies	from the internet.	
	a) upload	b) download		c) downside	d) destroy
	ahas made the	world a smalle	r place.		
	a) Any plane	b) Planes		c) The plane	d) The planes
	5 Luxor is considered a	main fo	or most tou	rists.	
	a) location	b) cooperation	on	c) destination	d) foundation
	6 I started my p	rofession, I hav	e met a lot	of excellent students.	
)	a) On	b) Before		c) After	d) Since
	The money saved for I	buying clothes	on	that table.	
	a) was	b) were		c) has	d) had
	Although he looks sm	art, he has a	acros	ss his forehead.	
	a) scar	b) scarce		c) scared	d) scare
(🧿 I was talking o	on the phone, t	he doorbel	l rang.	
	a) Since	b) During		c) While	d) After
(10 The set the pr	isoner free whe	en he realis	ed that he was innocent.	
	a) master	b) manager		c) magistrate	d) servant
	10 You should avoid	friends wit	h such bad	people.	
	a) to make	b) making		c) makes	d) to making
(Wicked young people	and media fan	s sometime	es try hard tothe a	ccounts of famous men.
	a) pack	b) hack		c) mock	d) highjack
(Good people never	or tell lie	s. They are	respected characters.	
	a) behave	b) beat		c) cheat	d) wear
	Twenty years from no	w, I think my ci	ty a	fantastic place to live in.	

c) is going to be

d) will be

a) is

b) is being

- ⑤ The coach advised me to practise more to get fit shortly.
- a) jogging b) to jog c) to jogging d) jog
- (6) Have you cleaned your room?

 a) just b) till now c) yet d) never

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Octopuses are extremely <u>intelligent</u>. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. Do you want to know how they do that? Well, the octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand. This colour change happens in less than a minute.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. It will change the colour of those arms to match a sea snake.

If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Don't worry though. The octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **10** Ais an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.
 - a) prey b) predator
 - c) chameleon d) magician
- - a) easy b) dangerous
 - c) covered in stick d) unable to move
- The synonym of the word "intelligent" is
 - a) smart b) dangerous
 - c) venomous d) visible
- - a) swim in the same way b) eat the same food
 - c) catch small fish d) can change their skin colour
- - a) distract the predator b) renew it
 - c) catch a prey d) lay eggs

2 Octopuses can squeeze themse	lves into small spaces between the rocks to
a) defend themselves	b) eat small fish
c) attack their predator	d) sleep
The octopus can shoot ink into to	·
a) kills the attackers	b) helps it hide from the attackers
c) pollutes the water	d) attracts preys
② Octopuses don't have teeth or s	sharp claws to defend themselves
a) so, they are eaten easily	
b) however, they have other wa	ys to keep enemies away
c) moreover, they are not brave	•
The best title for this passage is	• •
a) The Magician Octopuses	b) The Sea World and the Predator
c) The Seabed	d) The Sea Ink
The octopus has a remarkable a	dvantage which is its ability to
a) swim in the sea	b) kill small fish
c) renew its arms	d) breath underwater
Translate into English:	
مصريين. ونحن نهنئ مصرنا الغالية من أعماق	عند فاز المنتخب الأوليمبي المصرى لكرة القدم بكأس الأمم الإفريقية وأسعد الكثير من اله 📆
	قلوبنا.
Translata into Arabia	
Translate into Arabic:	3)
There is no doubt that education	on is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers,
people will suffer from the dark	ness of ignorance.
O)	
Write an essay of about (150)	words on the following topic:
"The differe	ent forms of pollution and how to fight them"
	on the state of th



	100	Se T	WO	of t	hef	ive o	nnti	ons:
•	100	36 1	440	VI L			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	VIII.

a) of

b) about

Choose I wo of the five	options:		
Voluntary work is of a	a great importan	nce. The antonyms of the word "volunt	ary" are
a) optional		b) exceptional	c) obligatory
d) compulsory		e) obligation	
2 "I admire your idea." I	n this sentence,	the word 'admire' is a synonym of	•
a) praise		b) approve	c) disapprove
d) appreciate		e) prove	
Choose the correct ans	swer from a, b,	c or d:	
		s them to do illegal things.	14
a) interesting	b) interested	c) interests	d) interest
He got his degree in	economics from	university in Finland.	
a) a	b) an	c) the	d) these
5 We should leave for v	vork early, or we	e might getin the traffic jams.	
a) struck	b) stock	c) stuck	d) through
3 He felt exhausted as	he isn't used to	such hard work.	
a) do	b) did	c) doing	d) done
He always listens to h	nis father's advice	e. He usually takes it for	
a) grants	b) granted	c) granting	d) grant
1 If you want to connect	ct to the interne	t,on this icon.	
a) kick	b) click	c) clock	d) block
Nader wishes he had	studied for his e	exams. He regrets	
a) to study	b) to studying	g c) studying	d) not studying
100 His colleagues and te	eachers like him	as he is	
a) behaves politely	b) usually pol	ite c) usual politely	d) usually politely
Before the operation	, the doctor sho	uld check the bloodof the pat	tient.
a) pleasure	b) treasure	c) pressure	d) measure
2 Money to Eg	ypt by the touris	sts, so we should keep our country cle	an and safe.
a) brings	b) is bringing	c) is brought	d) are brought
13 the last two	weeks, we have p	prepared for our graduation party.	
a) Since	b) At	c) For	d) While
Now and then we ask	cour parents	advice on what we should do.	

c) to

d) for

- children don't like schools because they want to play all the time.
- b) Lots of c) A lot a) Lots 6 Samy is a fantastic boy. I think he the record of the other class.
 - a) won't break b) isn't going to break c) is going to breaking d) will break

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



d) Any

Dear Mr. Reda,

I hope everything is Ok with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing tennis table and volleyball. But let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checked-colourful shirt. Ahmad and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transportation, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mum solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing. See you soon, my manager.

Best regards,

Anas

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What kind of passages is this one?
 - c) A letter. a) A short story. b) An email.
 - d) A diary.

- 13 To whom is this speech written?
 - a) Anas. b) Amgad. c) Ahmad.
 - d) Reda.
- - a) didn't like his appearance b) liked his appearance
 - c) made fun of his appearance d) were ashamed of his shoes
- - a) old b) ancient c) modern d) fast
- - b) vast c) boring d) old-fashioned a) narrow
- 2 What is the purpose of this passage?
 - a) The writer wants to tell a story. b) The writer is not going to work.
 - c) The writer is proud of his mum. d) The writer is showing his abilities.

Accord	ding to the pass	sage, the writer is	•	
a) care		b) punctual	c) careless	d) hard-working
		the writer to go home?		
	pounds.	b) 300 pounds.	c) 75 pounds.	d) 225 pounds.
		in the attachment. b) his shoes	s) bis photos	d) nathina
a) his		pay for the ride?	c) his photos	d) nothing
	paid by a visa c	. ,		
		r to return to his friend's	house.	
		im when he reached ho		
d) The	driver didn't ta	ke money.		
2 Trans	ate the follow	ing into English:		
		صر؛ فمصر تمتلك الكثير والكثير من ا	رًا من مصادر الدخل القومى في مد	عتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرًا مياث
				يرغب السياح في زيارتها.
				J O C J
dange	ers there. They a	re vulnerable to many k	inds of crimes.	
Write	an essay of ab	out (150) words on the	following topic:	
3)		"Friendship	is a precious thing."	6
***************************************	•••••••			

*********	***************************************			
400000000000000000000000000000000000000	***************************************			
*********	••••••		•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
*********	•••••			
**********	••••••	••••••••••••	••••••	

***********	•••••		••••••	
*******	***************************************			
*******	***************************************			





English

الصف 1 الثانوي

إجابات نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسي الأول

2021 - 2022

Answers To Final Tests

Final Test

Choose Two of the Five options:

- 1. b) satisfied / e) pleased
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- **3. b**) earn
- 4. c) donate
- 5. a) has gone
- **6. d)** crew
- 7. a) isolated
- **8. c)** owe
- 9. a) was preparing

- 2. a) faraway / d) distant
- 10. a) is known
- **11. b)** leaves
- **12.** a) an/The
- 13. c) is going to
- 14. b) bullying
- 15. a) was walking
- **16. d)** saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17.** d) can treat a lot of diseases
- 18. a) natural remedies
- 19. c) Symptom
- **20. b)** after
- 21. c) customer
- 22. c) it cures and protects from side effects
- 23. a) demerit
- 24. a) The herbal medicine benefits
- 25. c) It can be fried on fire to be served
- **26.** d) willow tree

27. Translate into English:

A lot of youth are keen on taking part in social work to develop their country. Young people are the basis of the development for any nation, so the developed countries pay special attention to youth.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن البطالة قنبلة موقوتة تعدد الأمن والاستقرار للمجتمع المصرى وحل هذه المشكلة سوف يجلب استثمارات جديدة والتي ستوفر المزيد من فرص العمل.



Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) interesting / e) exciting

2. b) cared for / d) nursed

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **3. b**) a
- **4. b**) since
- 5. d) during
- 6. b) walked
- 7. a) track
- **8.** a) ever
- 9. d) will show

- **10. c)** rhyme
- **11. c)** aged
- 12. d) hacked
- **13. b)** for
- 14. b) deserved
- **15. b)** to cook
- **16. c)** getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
- 18. a) taxi drivers
- 19. b) away from
- **20.** c) indispensable
- 21. a) complex
- 22. b) cars have to be left in the streets
- 23. d) Transportation
- **24.** b) it's the rush hour
- **25. a)** greedy
- **26.** d) it takes long time

27. Translate into English:

All members of society should cooperate to fight bullying as it is a bad social problem spread among youth and threatens people everywhere.

28. Translate into Arabic:

لتحقيق طموحاتك في الحياة يجب عليك أن تمتلك الإصرار والشجاعة والصبر بالإضافة إلى الشعور بالمسئولية.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) observe / c) monitor

2. b) decrease / c) reduce

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. a) donate
- 4. c) protective
- **5. d)** moon
- 6. b) was being prepared
- 7. a) wasn't used to
- 8. c) sustainable
- **9.** a) went

- 10. c) stressed
- 11. a) contact
- **12. c)** going
- **13. b**) a
- **14.** b) have already driven
- **15.** c) are washed
- **16.** b) always drives

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) we don't need them
- **18. d**) trains
- 19. c) product
- 20. a) Ways of Advertising
- **21. d)** common
- 22. c) to persuade customers to buy their own particular make
- 23. a) distribute products
- 24. a) The Power of Advertisements
- 25. c) to advertise their products
- **26.** c) the advertiser is truthful or not

27. Translate into English:

Helping the disabled is the responsibility of every one in society so we should do our best to make them mix with other members of society.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم على حد سواء المتقدمة والنامية.

Choose Two of the Five options:

- 1. a) disordered / e) untidy
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 3. b) result
- 4. d) transplant
- **5. b**) an
- 6. a) Currant
- **7. c)** are
- 8. a) will give
- 9. d) wasn't used to

- 2. b) busy / d) crowded
- 10. d) is going to
- 11. b) tired looking
- **12. b)** went
- 13. c) nick name
- **14.** a) was
- **15. a)** is fixed
- **16. c)** to fix

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. a) clearing
- **18.** b) global warming
- 19. c) reducing
- **20. c)** leads to
- **21. c)** 70
- 22. a) environmental
- 23. a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
- **24.** c) are already facing
- **25. c)** humans
- **26. b)** Global Disasters

27. Translate into English:

Some animals have to change their colours to match their surroundings to protect themselves from stronger animals. Each animal has characteristics that help it live in its own environment.

28. Translate into Arabic:

لا أحد يستطيع تجنب كبر السن لأنه عملية طبيعية تحدث تدريجيًا بمرور الوقت.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) huge / d) gigantic

2. b) nameless / d) unknown

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. d) miserable
- 4. d) already
- **5. c)** found
- 6. a) gravel
- 7. d) two weeks'
- 8. c) didn't have
- 9. a) was saying

- **10. d**) look
- 11. c) hacking
- 12. b) cyberbully
- 13. b) role models
- 14. b) repetition
- 15. d) have found
- 16. b) have worked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. b)** didn't
- **18.** c) excluded from social groups
- 19. a) suicide
- **20.** b) less
- 21. b) bullying
- 22. a) performed
- 23. c) they deal with it strictly
- **24.** d) Bullying as a Social Disease
- 25. c) are not trained
- **26.** b) depression

27. Translate into English:

You must do your best to benefit yourself and your country. Hard work and diligence are the only way to succeed in life.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن السياحة ضرورية جدًّا لمصر لأنها تخلق فرص عمل وتجلب العملة الصعبة للبلد؛ لذلك يجب أن نتعاون جميعا لتنميتها.



Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) presented / e) gave

2. a) denied / d) concealed

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. c) doing
- 4. d) Adults
- **5. c**) cried
- **6. d**) click
- 7. c) environmentally
- **8. d)** owed
- 9. b) During

- 10. b) replacement
- 11. d) is going
- **12.** a) much
- **13. c)** making
- 14. d) already
- **15. b)** starts
- 16. d) sleeping

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. c)** obtain
- 18. a) it gives us experience and making a living
- **19.** b) lived in organised societies
- **20.** c) plant
- **21.** b) invent agricultural tools
- 22. b) man has extraordinary abilities
- 23. b) Conditions create inventions
- 24. a) manage
- **25.** b) the education led to this
- **26.** c) Man made wars which destroyed the planet

27. Translate into English:

When you make a promise, you shouldn't break it, don't say nothing but truth, don't afraid to say the truth and don't praise someone for just praise.

28. Translate into Arabic:

عندما تعطى شخصـًا تعليمـًا قيمـًا فأنت لا تنعش الأمة فقط، بل أيضـًا تساعده على التفكير والإبداع ليكون مواطنًا صالحـًا.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) stylish / e) cool

2. a) ambiguous / d) complicated

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. c) diversity
- 4. b) am going to buy
- **5. d)** debt
- 6. a) populated
- 7. b) that he read
- 8. b) beliefs
- 9. b) has learnt

- 10. b) guardian
- 11. b) cultural
- **12. c)** tell
- 13. c) storyteller
- 14. d) no article
- **15. b)** been to
- **16.** b) an

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. b)** scared
- 18. a) enjoyed
- 19. c) Sally's brother.
- **20.** b) turned on the lights
- 21. a) couldn't stop
- 22. a) had been outside
- 23. a) were asleep
- 24. b) Scary Tales Effects
- 25. c) A short story
- **26. c)** find out

27. Translate into English:

Reading is a means to develop culture and getting knowledge in spare time and doing sport helps to keep fit and renew energy.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن بناء المواطنين الصالحين وخلق مجتمع مبدع هي الأهداف الأساسية للتعليم وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على النفس.

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) tame / d) domestic

2. b) hike / e) journey

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. b) ecotourist
- 4. b) Phishing
- **5. c)** poet
- 6. a) checked
- 7. c) monitor
- 8. b) posting
- 9. c) was sleeping

- **10. b)** Does
- **11. d)** was
- **12. d)** much
- **13. c)** will be
- 14. d) meeting
- **15.** a) is
- **16. c)** visited

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
- 18. c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
- 19. b) chest ailments and other diseases
- **20.** b) Toxic air-pollution
- 21. b) One third
- 22. b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
- 23. b) factories discharge dangerous substances
- **24.** b) the pollution will disappear
- **25.** a) healthy
- **26.** b) want to solve the problem

27. Translate into English:

The Egyptian woman has played a vital role in improving society and developing the Egyptian economy through her interest in her family and job at the same time.

28. Translate into Arabic:

استضافت مصر كأس الأمم الإفريقية الأخيرة عام ٢٠١٩ وفاز الفريق الجزائري بالكأس للمرة الثانية.

Final Test ⁹

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) minor / b) trivial

2. b) unusual / c) unconventional

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3. b) download
- 4. c) The plane
- 5. c) destination
- 6. d) Since
- **7.** a) was
- 8. a) scar
- **9. c)** While

- 10. c) magistrate
- **11. b)** making
- **12. b)** hack
- **13. c)** cheat
- **14. d)** will be
- 15. a) jogging
- **16. c)** yet

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17. b) predator
- 18. b) dangerous
- **19.** a) smart
- 20. d) can change their skin colour
- 21. a) distract the predator
- 22. a) defend themselves
- 23. b) helps it hide from the attackers
- **24.** b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
- 25. a) The Magician Octopuses
- **26.** c) renew its arms

27. Translate into English:

The Egyptian Olympic football team won the African Nation Cup and pleased a lot of Egyptians and we congratulate our dear Egypt from the bottom of our hearts.

28. Translate into Arabic:

بلا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري للتقدم العلمي وبدون المعلمين سيعاني الناس من ظلام الجهل.



Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) obligatory / d) compulsory

2. a) praise / d) appreciate

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **3. d)** interest
- **4.** a) a
- **5. c)** stuck
- **6. c)** doing
- 7. b) granted
- **8. b)** click
- 9. d) not studying

- 10. b) usually polite
- 11. c) pressure
- 12. c) is brought
- **13. c)** For
- **14. d)** for
- **15. b)** Lots of
- 16. d) will break

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- **17. b)** An email
- **18. d**) Reda
- 19. b) liked his appearance
- **20. c)** modern
- **21.** b) vast
- 22. b) The writer is not going to work
- 23. c) careless
- **24.** c) 75 pounds
- 25. c) his photos
- **26.** c) His mum paid for him when he reached home

27. Translate into English:

Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

- 28. Translate into Arabic:
 - يقضى بعض الشباب الكثير من وقتهم على الإنترنت هذه الأيام ولا يدرون المخاطر الكامنة هناك. فهم عرضة للعديد من أنواع الجرائم.
- 29. Student's own answer.